

# Amiga ROM Kernel Reference Manual

## DOS

THOMAS RICHTER

Copyright © 2023 by Thomas Richter, all rights reserved. This publication is freely distributable under the restrictions stated below, but is also Copyright © Thomas Richter.

Distribution of the publication by a commercial organization without written permission from the author to any third party is prohibited if any payment is made in connection with such distribution, whether directly (as in payment for a copy of the publication) or indirectly (as in payment for some service related to the Publication, or payment for some product or service that includes a copy of the publication “without charge”; these are only examples, and not an exhaustive enumeration of prohibited activities).

However, the following methods of distribution involving payment shall not in and of themselves be a violation of this restriction:

1. Distributing the Program on a physical data carrier (e.g. CD-ROM, DVD, USB-Stick, Disk...) provided that:
  - (a) the Archive is reproduced entirely and verbatim on such data carrier, including especially this licence agreement;
  - (b) the data carrier is made available to the public for a nominal fee only, i.e. for a fee that covers the costs of the data carrier, and shipment of the data carrier;
  - (c) a data carrier with the Program installed is made available to the author for free except for shipment costs, and
  - (d) provided further that all information on said data carrier is redistributable for non-commercial purposes without charge.

Redistribution of a modified version of the publication is prohibited in any way, by any organization, regardless whether commercial or non-commercial. Everything must be kept together, in original and unmodified form.

DISCLAIMER: THIS PUBLICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. FURTHER, THE AUTHOR DOES NOT WARRANT, GUARANTEE, OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATION REGARDING THE USE OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, THE INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN IN TERM OF CORRECTNESS, ACCURACY, RELIABILITY, CURRENTNESS, OR OTHERWISE; THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO ITS QUALITY AND ACCURACY IS ASSUMED SOLELY BY THE USER. SHOULD THE INFORMATION PROVE INACCURATE, THE USER (AND NOT THE AUTHOR) ASSUMES THE EITHER COST OF ALL NECESSARY CORRECTION. IN NO EVENT WILL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT OR INACCURACY IN THIS PUBLICATION, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME LAWS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIABILITIES FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY.

*Amiga* is a registered trademark, *Amiga-DOS*, *Exec* and *Kickstart* are registered trademarks of Amiga Intl. *Motorola* is a registered trademark of Motorola, inc. *Unix* is a trademark of the Open Group.



---

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	Purpose . . . . .	3
1.2	Language and Type Setting Conventions . . . . .	3
<b>2</b>	<b>Elementary Data Types</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	The dos.library . . . . .	5
2.2	Booleans . . . . .	5
2.3	Pointers and BPTRs . . . . .	6
2.4	C Strings and BSTRs . . . . .	7
2.5	Files . . . . .	7
2.6	Locks . . . . .	8
2.7	Processes . . . . .	8
2.8	Handlers and File Systems . . . . .	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Date and Time</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1	Elementary Time and Date Functions . . . . .	9
3.1.1	Obtaining the Time and Date . . . . .	9
3.1.2	Comparing two Times and Dates . . . . .	10
3.1.3	Delaying Program Execution . . . . .	10
3.2	Conversion Into and From Strings . . . . .	10
3.2.1	Converting a Time and Date to a String . . . . .	12
3.2.2	Convert a String to a Date and Time . . . . .	12
<b>4</b>	<b>Files</b>	<b>15</b>
4.1	What are Files? . . . . .	15
4.2	Interactive vs. non-Interactive Files . . . . .	15
4.3	Paths and File Names . . . . .	15
4.3.1	Devices, Volumes and Assigns . . . . .	16
4.3.2	Relative and Absolute Paths . . . . .	18
4.3.3	Maximum Path Length . . . . .	19
4.3.4	Flat vs. Hiearchical File Systems . . . . .	19
4.3.5	Case Sensitivity . . . . .	20
4.4	Opening Files . . . . .	20
4.5	Closing Files . . . . .	21
4.6	Types of Files and Handlers . . . . .	21
4.6.1	Obtaining the Type from a File . . . . .	21
4.6.2	Obtaining the Type from a Path . . . . .	22
4.7	Unbuffered Input and Output . . . . .	22
4.7.1	Reading Data . . . . .	22
4.7.2	Testing for Availability of Data . . . . .	23

4.7.3	Writing Data . . . . .	23
4.7.4	Adjusting the File Pointer . . . . .	23
4.7.5	Setting the Size of a File . . . . .	24
4.8	Buffered Input and Output . . . . .	25
4.8.1	Buffered Read From a File . . . . .	25
4.8.2	Buffered Write to a File . . . . .	26
4.8.3	Buffered Write to the Output Stream . . . . .	26
4.8.4	Adjusting the Buffer . . . . .	26
4.8.5	Synchronize the File to the Buffer . . . . .	27
4.8.6	Write a Character Buffered to a File . . . . .	28
4.8.7	Write a String Buffered to a File . . . . .	28
4.8.8	Write a String Buffered to the Output Stream . . . . .	28
4.8.9	Read a Character from a File . . . . .	29
4.8.10	Read a Line from a File . . . . .	29
4.8.11	Revert a Single Byte Read . . . . .	29
4.9	File Handle Documentation . . . . .	30
4.9.1	The struct FileHandle . . . . .	30
4.9.2	String Streams . . . . .	31
4.9.3	An FSkip() Implementation . . . . .	32
4.9.4	An FGet() Implementation . . . . .	33
4.10	Formatted Output . . . . .	33
4.10.1	Print Formatted String using C-Syntax to a File . . . . .	33
4.10.2	BCPL Style Formatted Print to a File . . . . .	34
4.10.3	Setting the Console Buffer Mode . . . . .	35
4.11	Record Locking . . . . .	36
4.11.1	Locking a Portion of a File . . . . .	36
4.11.2	Locking Multiple Portions of a File . . . . .	37
4.11.3	Unlocking a Portion of a File . . . . .	37
4.11.4	Unlocking Multiple Records of a File . . . . .	38
<b>5</b>	<b>Locks</b> . . . . .	<b>39</b>
5.1	Obtaining and Releasing Locks . . . . .	39
5.1.1	Obtaining a Lock from a Path . . . . .	39
5.1.2	Duplicating a Lock . . . . .	40
5.1.3	Obtaining the Parent of an Object . . . . .	40
5.1.4	Creating a Directory . . . . .	41
5.1.5	Releasing a Lock . . . . .	41
5.1.6	Changing the Type of a Lock . . . . .	41
5.1.7	Comparing two Locks . . . . .	42
5.1.8	Compare to Locks for the Device . . . . .	42
5.2	Locks and Files . . . . .	43
5.2.1	Duplicate the Implicit Lock of a File . . . . .	43
5.2.2	Obtaining the Directory a File is Located in . . . . .	43
5.2.3	Opening a File from a Lock . . . . .	44
5.2.4	Get Information on the State of the Medium . . . . .	44
5.2.5	The struct FileLock . . . . .	46

<b>6</b>	<b>Working with Directories</b>	<b>49</b>
6.1	Examining Objects on File Systems	49
6.1.1	Retrieving Information on an Directory Entry	51
6.1.2	Retrieving Information from a File Handle	52
6.1.3	Scanning through a Directory Step by Step	52
6.1.4	Examine Multiple Entries at once	53
6.1.5	Aborting a Directory Scan	55
6.2	Modifying Directory Entries	55
6.2.1	Deleting Objects on the File System	55
6.2.2	Rename or Relocate an Object	56
6.2.3	Set the File Comment	56
6.2.4	Setting Protection Bits	56
6.2.5	Set the Modification Date	57
6.2.6	Set User and Group ID	57
6.3	Working with Paths	57
6.3.1	Find the Path From a Lock	58
6.3.2	Find the Path from a File Handle	58
6.3.3	Append a Component to a Path	58
6.3.4	Find the last Component of a Path	59
6.3.5	Find End of Next-to-Last Component in a Path	59
6.3.6	Extract a Component From a Path	59
6.4	Links	60
6.4.1	Creating Links	62
6.4.2	Resolving Soft-Links	62
6.5	Notification Requests	63
6.5.1	Request Notification on File or Directory Changes	63
6.5.2	Canceling a Notification Request	65
<b>7</b>	<b>Administration of Volumes, Devices and Assigns</b>	<b>67</b>
7.1	The Device List and the Mount List	70
7.1.1	Keywords defining the DosList structure	70
7.1.2	Keywords controlling the FileSysStartupMsg	71
7.1.3	Keywords controlling the Environment Vector	71
7.2	Finding Handler or File System Ports	76
7.2.1	Iterate through Devices Matching a Path	76
7.2.2	Releasing DevProc Information	77
7.2.3	Legacy Handler Port Access	78
7.2.4	Obtaining the Current Console Handler	78
7.2.5	Obtaining the Default File System	78
7.3	Iterating and Accessing the Device List	79
7.3.1	Gaining Access to the Device List	79
7.3.2	Requesting Access to the Device List	80
7.3.3	Release Access to the Device List	80
7.3.4	Iterate through the Device List	80
7.3.5	Find a Device List Entry by Name	81
7.3.6	Accessing Mount Parameters	81
7.4	Adding or Removing Entries to the Device List	84
7.4.1	Adding an Entry to the Device List	84
7.4.2	Removing an Entry from the Device List	85
7.5	Creating and Deleting Device List Entries	85
7.5.1	Creating a Device List Entry	86

7.5.2	Releasing a Device List Entry . . . . .	86
7.6	Creating and Updating Assigns . . . . .	87
7.6.1	Create and Add a Regular Assign . . . . .	87
7.6.2	Create a Non-Binding Assign . . . . .	87
7.6.3	Create a Late Assign . . . . .	88
7.6.4	Add a Directory to a Multi-Assign . . . . .	88
7.6.5	Remove a Directory From a Multi-Assign . . . . .	89
7.7	File System Support Functions . . . . .	89
7.7.1	Adjusting File System Buffers . . . . .	89
7.7.2	Change the Name of a Volume . . . . .	90
7.7.3	Initializing a File System . . . . .	90
7.7.4	Inhibiting a File System . . . . .	91
7.7.5	Receive Information when a Volume is Request . . . . .	91
<b>8</b>	<b>Pattern Matching</b>	<b>93</b>
8.1	Scanning Directories . . . . .	94
8.1.1	Starting a Directory Scan . . . . .	97
8.1.2	Continuing a Directory Scan . . . . .	97
8.1.3	Terminating a Directory Scan . . . . .	98
8.2	Matching Strings against Patterns . . . . .	98
8.2.1	Tokenizing a Case-Sensitive Pattern . . . . .	98
8.2.2	Tokenizing a Case-Insensitive Pattern . . . . .	99
8.2.3	Match a String against a Pattern . . . . .	99
8.2.4	Match a String against a Pattern ignoring Case . . . . .	99
<b>9</b>	<b>Processes</b>	<b>101</b>
9.1	Creating and Terminating Processes . . . . .	104
9.1.1	Creating a New Process from a TagList . . . . .	104
9.1.2	Create a Process (Legacy) . . . . .	107
9.1.3	Terminating a Process . . . . .	107
9.2	Process Properties Accessor Functions . . . . .	108
9.2.1	Retrieve the Process Input File Handle . . . . .	108
9.2.2	Replace the Input File Handle . . . . .	108
9.2.3	Retrieve the Output File Handle . . . . .	109
9.2.4	Replace the Output File Handle . . . . .	109
9.2.5	Retrieve the Error File Handle . . . . .	109
9.2.6	Replace the Error File Handle . . . . .	109
9.2.7	Retrieve the Current Directory . . . . .	110
9.2.8	Replace the Current Directory . . . . .	110
9.2.9	Return the Latest Error Code . . . . .	110
9.2.10	Setting IoErr . . . . .	114
9.2.11	Select the Console Handler . . . . .	114
9.2.12	Select the Default File System . . . . .	114
9.2.13	Retrieve the Lock to the Program Directory . . . . .	115
9.2.14	Set the Program Directory . . . . .	115
9.2.15	Retrieve Command Line Arguments . . . . .	115
9.2.16	Set the Command Line Arguments . . . . .	115

<b>10 Binary File Structure</b>	<b>117</b>
10.1 Executable File Format	118
10.1.1 HUNK_HEADER	120
10.1.2 HUNK_CODE	120
10.1.3 HUNK_DATA	121
10.1.4 HUNK_BSS	121
10.1.5 HUNK_RELOC32	122
10.1.6 HUNK_RELOC32SHORT	122
10.1.7 HUNK_RELRELOC32	123
10.1.8 HUNK_NAME	123
10.1.9 HUNK_SYMBOL	124
10.1.10 HUNK_DEBUG	125
10.1.11 HUNK_END	126
10.2 The AmigaDOS Loader	126
10.2.1 Loading an Executable	126
10.2.2 Loading an Executable with Additional Parameters	126
10.2.3 Loading an Executable through Call-Back Functions	127
10.2.4 Unloading a Binary	128
10.2.5 UnLoading a Binary through Call-Back Functions	128
10.3 Overlays	129
10.3.1 The Overlay File Format	129
10.3.2 The Hierarchical Overlay Manager	130
10.3.3 HUNK_OVERLAY	130
10.3.4 HUNK_BREAK	133
10.3.5 Loading an Overload Node	133
10.3.6 Loading an Overlay Node through Call-Back Functions	133
10.3.7 Unloading Overlay Nodes	134
10.3.8 Unloading Overlay Binaries	135
10.3.9 Internal Working of the Overlay Manager	135
10.3.10 The MANX Overlay Manager	140
10.4 Structures within Hunks	142
10.4.1 The Version Cookie	142
10.4.2 The Stack Cookie	143
10.4.3 Runtime binding of BCPL programs	144
10.5 Object File Format	146
10.5.1 HUNK_UNIT	147
10.5.2 HUNK_RELOC16	147
10.5.3 HUNK_RELOC8	148
10.5.4 HUNK_DRELOC32	148
10.5.5 HUNK_DRELOC16	149
10.5.6 HUNK_DRELOC8	149
10.5.7 HUNK_EXT	149
10.6 Link Library File Format	151
10.6.1 HUNK_LIB	152
10.6.2 HUNK_INDEX	153
<b>11 Handlers, Devices and File Systems</b>	<b>155</b>
11.1 The DosPacket Structure	155
11.1.1 Send a Packet to a Handler and Wait for Reply	156
11.1.2 Send a Packet to a Handler Asynchronously	157
11.1.3 Waiting for a Packet to Return	158



11.1.4	Aborting a Packet . . . . .	158
11.1.5	Reply a Packet to its Caller . . . . .	158
11.2	Implementing a Handler . . . . .	159
11.2.1	Handler Startup . . . . .	159
11.2.2	Handler Main Processing Loop . . . . .	161
11.2.3	Handler Shutdown . . . . .	162
11.3	The CON-Handler . . . . .	163
11.3.1	CON-Handler Path for Graphical Consoles . . . . .	163
11.3.2	CON-Handler Path for Serial Consoles . . . . .	165
11.3.3	CON-Handler Line Buffer Modes . . . . .	165
11.3.4	CON-Handler Startup Parameters . . . . .	167
11.4	The Port-Handler . . . . .	168
11.4.1	Port-Handler Path . . . . .	169
11.4.2	Port-Handler Startup . . . . .	169
11.5	The Queue-Handler . . . . .	170
11.5.1	Queue-Handler Path . . . . .	170
11.5.2	Queue-Handler Startup . . . . .	171
11.6	The RAM-Handler . . . . .	171
11.7	The Fast File System . . . . .	171
11.7.1	Configuring the FFS . . . . .	172
11.7.2	The Boot Block . . . . .	172
11.7.3	Disk Keys and Sectors . . . . .	173
11.7.4	The Root Block . . . . .	173
11.7.5	The User Directory Block . . . . .	176
11.7.6	The File Header Block . . . . .	178
11.7.7	The Soft- and Hard-Link Block . . . . .	181
11.7.8	The File Extension Block . . . . .	183
11.7.9	The Bitmap Extension Block . . . . .	184
11.7.10	The Comment Block . . . . .	184
11.7.11	The Directory Cache Block . . . . .	185
11.7.12	The Data Block . . . . .	187
11.7.13	The Bitmap Block . . . . .	187
11.7.14	The Deleted Block . . . . .	189
<b>12</b>	<b>Packet Documentation</b>	<b>191</b>
12.1	Packets for File Interactions . . . . .	192
12.1.1	Opening a File for Shared Access . . . . .	192
12.1.2	Opening a File for Exclusive Access . . . . .	193
12.1.3	Opening or Creating a File for Shared Access . . . . .	193
12.1.4	Opening a File from a Lock . . . . .	194
12.1.5	Closing a File . . . . .	194
12.1.6	Reading from a File . . . . .	194
12.1.7	Writing to a File . . . . .	195
12.1.8	Adjusting the File Pointer . . . . .	196
12.1.9	Setting the File Size . . . . .	196
12.1.10	Locking a Record of a File . . . . .	197
12.1.11	Release a Record of a File . . . . .	197
12.2	Packets for Interacting with Locks . . . . .	198
12.2.1	Obtaining a Lock . . . . .	198
12.2.2	Duplicating a Lock . . . . .	199
12.2.3	Finding the Parent of a Lock . . . . .	200



<hr/>	
12.2.4	Duplicating a Lock from a File Handle . . . . . 200
12.2.5	Finding the Parent Directory of a File Handle . . . . . 200
12.2.6	Creating a new Directory . . . . . 201
12.2.7	Comparing two Locks . . . . . 201
12.2.8	Changing the Mode of a Lock or a File Handle . . . . . 202
12.2.9	Releasing a Lock . . . . . 202
12.3	Packets for Examining Objects . . . . . 203
12.3.1	Examining a Locked Object . . . . . 203
12.3.2	Scanning Directory Contents . . . . . 204
12.3.3	Examining Multiple Entries at once . . . . . 205
12.3.4	Aborting a Directory Scan . . . . . 206
12.3.5	Examining from a File Handle . . . . . 207
12.4	Packets for Working with Links . . . . . 208
12.4.1	Creating Links . . . . . 208
12.4.2	Resolving a Soft Link . . . . . 209
12.5	Packets for Adjusting Metadata . . . . . 213
12.5.1	Renaming or Moving Objects . . . . . 214
12.5.2	Deleting an Object . . . . . 214
12.5.3	Changing the Protection Bits . . . . . 215
12.5.4	Setting the Comment to an Object . . . . . 216
12.5.5	Setting the Creation Date of an Object . . . . . 216
12.5.6	Setting the Owner of an Object . . . . . 217
12.6	Packets for Starting and Canceling Notification Requests . . . . . 217
12.6.1	Registering a Notification Request . . . . . 217
12.6.2	Canceling a Notification Request . . . . . 218
12.7	Packets Operating on Entire Volumes . . . . . 219
12.7.1	Determining the Currently Inserted Volume . . . . . 219
12.7.2	Retrieving Information on a Volume from a Lock . . . . . 220
12.7.3	Retrieving Information on the Currently Inserted Volume . . . . . 221
12.7.4	Relabeling a Volume . . . . . 221
12.7.5	Initializing a New File System . . . . . 222
12.7.6	Make a Copied Disk Unique . . . . . 222
12.7.7	Write Protecting a Volume . . . . . 223
12.8	Packets for Interactive Handlers . . . . . 223
12.8.1	Waiting for Input Becoming Available . . . . . 224
12.8.2	Setting the Line Buffer Mode . . . . . 224
12.8.3	Retrieving IOREquest and the Window Pointer from the Console . . . . . 225
12.8.4	Releasing Console Resources . . . . . 229
12.8.5	Stack a Line at the Top of the Output Buffer . . . . . 229
12.8.6	Queue a Line at the End of the Output Buffer . . . . . 230
12.8.7	Force Characters into the Input Buffer . . . . . 231
12.8.8	Drop all Stacked and Queued Lines in the Output Buffer . . . . . 231
12.8.9	Bring the Console Window to the Foreground . . . . . 232
12.8.10	Change the Target Port to Receive BREAK signals . . . . . 232
12.9	Packets Controlling the Handler in Total . . . . . 233
12.9.1	Adjusting the File System Cache . . . . . 233
12.9.2	Inhibiting the File System . . . . . 234
12.9.3	Check if a Handler is a File System . . . . . 235
12.9.4	Write out all Pending Modifications . . . . . 235
12.9.5	Shutdown a Handler . . . . . 236
12.9.6	Do Nothing . . . . . 236



12.10 Handler Internal Packets . . . . .	237
12.10.1 Receive a Returning Read . . . . .	237
12.10.2 Receive a Returning Write . . . . .	237
12.10.3 Receive a Returning Timer Request . . . . .	238

### **13 The AmigaDOS Shell 239**

13.1 The Shell Syntax . . . . .	239
13.1.1 Input/Output Redirection . . . . .	239
13.1.2 Compound Commands and Binary Operators . . . . .	240
13.1.3 Unary Shell Operators . . . . .	241
13.1.4 Quoting and Escaping . . . . .	241
13.1.5 Variables and Variable Expansion . . . . .	242
13.1.6 Backtick Expansion . . . . .	243
13.1.7 Alias Substitution . . . . .	243
13.1.8 Command Execution . . . . .	243
13.1.9 The Execute Command . . . . .	244
13.2 Shell Process Control . . . . .	246
13.2.1 Execute Shell Scripts . . . . .	246
13.2.2 Execute Shell Scripts (Legacy) . . . . .	249
13.2.3 Run a Command Overloading the Calling Process . . . . .	250
13.2.4 Checking for Signals . . . . .	250
13.2.5 Request a Function of the Shell . . . . .	251
13.2.6 Find a Shell Process by Task Number . . . . .	252
13.2.7 Retrieve the Size of the Process Table . . . . .	253
13.3 The CLI Structure . . . . .	253
13.3.1 Obtaining the Name of the Current Directory . . . . .	253
13.3.2 Set the Current Directory Name . . . . .	254
13.3.3 Obtaining the Current Program Name . . . . .	254
13.3.4 Set the Current Program Name . . . . .	255
13.3.5 Obtaining the Shell Prompt . . . . .	255
13.3.6 Setting the Shell Prompt . . . . .	255
13.3.7 Retrieving the CLI Structure . . . . .	256
13.4 Access Shell Variables . . . . .	258
13.4.1 Read a Shell Variable . . . . .	258
13.4.2 Setting a Shell Variable . . . . .	259
13.4.3 Finding a Shell Variable . . . . .	260
13.4.4 Deleting a Shell Variable . . . . .	261
13.5 Command Line Argument Parsing . . . . .	261
13.5.1 Parsing Command Line Arguments . . . . .	261
13.5.2 Releasing Argument Parser Resources . . . . .	264
13.5.3 Reading a Single Argument from the Command Line . . . . .	265
13.5.4 Find an Argument in a Template . . . . .	266
13.6 Resident Segments . . . . .	266
13.6.1 Finding a Resident Segment . . . . .	267
13.6.2 Adding a Resident Segment . . . . .	268
13.6.3 Removing a Resident Segment . . . . .	268
13.7 Writing Custom Shells . . . . .	269
13.7.1 Initializing a new Shell . . . . .	271

---

<b>14 Miscellaneous Functions</b>	<b>275</b>
14.1 Object Constructors and Destructors . . . . .	275
14.1.1 Allocating a DOS Object . . . . .	275
14.1.2 Releasing a DOS Object . . . . .	276
14.2 Reporting Errors . . . . .	277
14.2.1 Display an Error Requester . . . . .	277
14.2.2 Generating an Error Message . . . . .	278
14.2.3 Printing an Error Message . . . . .	279
14.2.4 Printing a String to the Error Stream . . . . .	279
<b>15 The DOS Library</b>	<b>281</b>
15.1 The Library Structure . . . . .	281
15.2 The Root Node . . . . .	282
15.3 The DosInfo Structure . . . . .	283



---

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Purpose

The purpose of this manual is to provide a comprehensive documentation of the AmigaDOS subsystem of the Amiga Operation System. This subsystem is represented by the *dos.library*, and it provides services around files, file systems and stream-based input and output. While the Amiga ROM Kernel Reference Manuals [7] document major parts of the AmigaOs, they do not include a volume on AmigaDOS itself. This is due to the history of AmigaDOS which is nothing but a port of the TRIPOS to the Amiga, and thus its documentation became available as the AmigaDOS manual[1] separately. This book itself is, similar to AmigaDOS, based on the TRIPOS manual which has been augmented and updated to reflect the changes that were necessary to fit TRIPOS into AmigaOs. Unfortunately, the book is hard to obtain, and also leaves a lot to deserve.

Good third party documentation is available in the form of the Guru Book[10], though this source is out of print and even harder to obtain. It covers also other aspects of AmigaOs that go beyond AmigaDOS such that its focus is a bit different than this work.

This work attempts to fill this gap by providing a comprehensive and complete documentation of the AmigaDOS library and its subsystems in the style of the ROM Kernel Reference Manuals.

### 1.2 Language and Type Setting Conventions

The words *shall* and *shall not* indicate normative requirements software shall or shall not follow or in order to satisfy the interface requirements of AmigaOs. The words *should* and *should not* indicate best practise and recommendations that are advisable, but not strictly necessary to satisfy a particular interface. The word *may* provides a hint to a possible implementation strategy.

The word *must* indicates a logical consequence from existing requirements or conditions that follows necessarily without introducing a new restriction, such as in “if *a* is 2, *a + a must* be 4”.

**|** *Worth to remember!* Important aspects of the text are indicated with a bold vertical bar like this.

Terms are indicated in *italics*, e.g. the *dos.library* implements interface of *AmigaDOS*. Data structures and components of source code are printed in `courier` in fixed-width font, reassembling the output of a terminal, e.g.

```
typedef unsigned char UBYTE; /* an 8-bit unsigned integer */
typedef long LONG;          /* a 32-bit integer          */
```



---

## Chapter 2

# Elementary Data Types

### 2.1 The dos.library

*AmigaDOS* as part of the *Amiga Operating System* or short *AmigaOs* is represented by the ROM-based *dos.library*. This library is typically opened by the startup code of most compilers anyhow, and its base pointer is placed into `DOSBase` by this startup code:

```
struct DosLibrary *DOSBase;
```

Hence, in general, there is no need to open this library manually.

The structure *struct DosLibrary* is defined in `dos/dosextens.h`, but its layout and its members are usually not required and should rather not be accessed directly. Instead, the library provides accessor functions to read many objects contained within it.

If you do not link with compiler startup code, the base pointer of the *dos.library* can be obtained similar to that of any other library:

```
#include <proto/exec.h>
#include <proto/dos.h>
#include <exec/libraries.h>
#include <dos/dos.h>

...
if ((DOSBase = (struct DosLibrary *) (OpenLibrary(DOSNAME, 47))) ) {
    ...
    CloseLibrary((struct Library *)DOSBase);
}
```

Unlike many other operating system, the *dos.library* does not manage disks or files itself, neither does it provide access to hardware interface components. It rather implements a *virtual file system* which forwards requests to its subsystems, called *handlers* or *file systems*, see 2.8.

### 2.2 Booleans

AmigaDOS uses a convention for booleans that differs from the one imposed by the C programming language; it uses the following truth values defined in the file `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 1: DOS Truth Values**

Define	Value
DOSFALSE	0
DOSTRUE	-1

Note that the C language instead uses the value 1 for TRUE. Code that checks for zero or non-zero return codes will function normally, however code shall not compare to TRUE in boolean tests.

## 2.3 Pointers and BPTRs

AmigaDOS is a descendent of the *TRIPOS* system and as such originally implemented in the BCPL language. As of Kickstart 2.0, AmigaDOS was re-implemented in C and assembler, but this implementation had to preserve the existing interface based on BCPL conventions.

BCPL is a typeless language that structures the memory of its host system as an array of 32-bit elements enumerated contiguously from zero up. Rather than pointers, BCPL communicates the position of its data structures in the form of indices of the first 32-bit element of such structures. As each 32-bit group is assigned its own index, one can obtain this index by dividing the byte-address of an element by 4, or equivalently, by right-shifting the address by two bits. This has the consequence that (most) data structures passed into and out of the *dos.library* shall be aligned to 32-bit boundaries. Similarly, in order to obtain the byte-address of a BPCL structure, the index is multiplied by 4, or left-shifted by 2 bits.

**Not on the Stack!** Since BPCL structures must have an address that is divisible by 4, you should not keep such structures on the stack as the average compiler will not ensure long word alignment for automatic objects. In the absence of a dedicated constructor function such as *AllocDosObject()*, a safe strategy is use the *exec.library* memory allocation functions such as *AllocMem()* or *AllocVec()* to obtain memory for holding them.

These indices are called *BCPL pointers* or short *BPTRs*, even though they are not pointers in the sense of the C language, but rather integer numbers as indices to an array of LONG (i.e. 32-bit) integers. In order to communicate this fact more clearly, the *dos/dos.h* include file defines the following data type:

```
typedef long BPTR; /* Long word pointer */
```

Conversion from BCPL pointers to conventional C pointers and back are formed by the following macros, also defined in *dos/dos.h*:

```
/* Convert BPTR to typical C pointer */
#define BADDR(x) ((APTR) ((ULONG) (x) << 2))
/* Convert address into a BPTR */
#define MKBADDR(x) (((LONG) (x)) >> 2)
```

Luckely, in most cases callers of the *dos.library* do not need to convert from and to BPTRs but can rather use such “pointers” as *opaque values* or *handles* representing some AmigaDOS objects.

It is certainly a burden to always allocate temporary BCPL objects from the heap, and doing so may also fragment the AmigaOs memory unnecessarily. However, allocation of automatic objects from the stack does not ensure long-word alignment in general. To work around this burden, one can use a trick and instead request from the compiler a somewhat longer object of automatic lifetime and align the requested object manually within the memory obtained this way. The following macro performs this trick:

```
#define D_S(type,name) char a_##name[sizeof(type)+3]; \
                        type *name = (type *) ((ULONG) (a_##name+3) & ~3UL)
```



---

It is used as follows:

```
D_S (struct FileInfoBlock, fib);
```

At this point, `fib` is pointer to a properly aligned `struct FileInfoBlock`, e.g. this is equivalent to

```
struct FileInfoBlock _tmp;  
struct FileInfoBlock *fib = &tmp;
```

except that the created pointer is properly aligned and can safely be passed into the *dos.library*.

Similar to the C language, a pointer to a non-existing element is expressed by the special pointer value 0. While this is called the `NULL` pointer in C, it is better to reserve another name for it in BCPL as its pointers are rather indices. The following convention is suggested to express an invalid *BPTR*:

```
#define ZERO 0L
```

Clearly, with the above convention, the BCPL `ZERO` pointer converts to the C `NULL` pointer and back, even though the two are conceptionally something different: The first being the index to the first element of the host memory array, the later the pointer to the first address.

## 2.4 C Strings and BSTRs

While the C language defines *strings* as 0-terminated arrays of `char`, and AmigaOs in particular to 0-terminated arrays of `UBYTE`s, that is, unsigned characters, the BCPL language uses a different convention, namely that of a `UBYTE` array whose first element contains the size of the string to follow. They are not necessarily 0-terminated either. If BCPL strings are passed into BCPL functions, or are part of BCPL data structures, then typically in the form of a *BPTR* to the 32-bit element containing the size of the string its 8 most significant bits. The include file `dos/dos.h` provides its own data type for such strings:

```
typedef long BSTR; /* Long word pointer to BCPL string */
```

Luckely, functions of the *dos.library* take C strings as arguments and perform the conversion from C strings to their BCPL representation as *BSTR*s internally, such that one rarely gets in contact with this type of strings. They appear as part of some AmigaDOS structures to be discussed, and as part of the interface between the *dos.library* and its handlers, e.g. file systems. However, even though users of the *dos.library* rarely come in contact with *BSTR*s themselves, the *BCPL* convention has an important consequence, namely that (most) strings handled by the *dos.library* cannot be longer than 255 characters as this is the limit imposed by the BCPL convention.

**Length-Limited Strings** Remember that most strings that are passed into the *dos.library* are internally converted to *BSTR*s and thus cannot exceed a length of 255 characters.

Unfortunately, even as of the latest version of *AmigaDos*, the *dos.library* is ill-prepared to take longer strings, and will likely fail or mis-interpret the string passed in. If longer strings are required, e.g. as part of a *path*, it is (unfortunately) in the responsibility of the caller to take this path apart into components and iterate through the components manually, see also section 4.3.

## 2.5 Files

Files are streams of bytes together with a file pointer that identifies the next position to be read, or the next byte position to be filled. Files are explained in more detail in section 4.

---

## 2.6 Locks

Locks are access rights to a particular object on a file system. A locked object cannot be altered by any other process. Section 5 provides more details on locks.

## 2.7 Processes

AmigaDOS is a multi-tasking system operating on top of the *exec* kernel [7]. As such, it can operate multiple tasks at once, where the tasks are assigned to the CPU in a round-robin fashion. A *Process* is an extension of an AmigaOs *Task* that includes additional state information relevant to AmigaDOS, such as a *current directory* *Current Directory* it operates in, a *default file system*, a *console* it is connected to, and default input, output and error streams. Processes are explained in more detail in section 9.

## 2.8 Handlers and File Systems

*Handlers* are special processes that manage files on a volume, or that input or output data to a physical device. AmigaDOS itself delegates all operations on files to such handlers. Handlers are introduced in section 11.

*File systems* are special handlers that organize the contents of data carriers such as hard disks, floppies or CD-Roms in the form of files and directories, and provides access to such objects through the *dos.library*. File systems interpret paths (see 4.3) in order to locate objects such as files and directories on such data carriers.

---

## Chapter 3

# Date and Time

Due to its history, AmigaOs uses two incompatible representations of date and time. The `timer.device` represents a date as the number of seconds and microseconds since January 1<sup>st</sup> 1978. As AmigaDOS is based on TRIPOS as an independently developed operating system, the *dos.library* uses a different representation as `DateStamp` structure defined in `dos/dos.h`:

```
struct DateStamp {
    LONG    ds_Days;
    LONG    ds_Minute;
    LONG    ds_Tick;
};
```

The elements of this structure are as follows:

`ds_Days` counts the number of days since January 1<sup>st</sup> 1978.

`ds_Minute` counts the number of minutes past midnight, i.e. the start of the day.

`ds_Tick` counts the ticks since the start of the minute. The number of ticks per second is defined as `TICKS_PER_SECOND` in `dos/dos.h`.

***Ticking 50 Times a Second*** A system “tick” is always 1/50<sup>th</sup> of a second, regardless whether the system is an NTSC or PAL system. AmigaDOS detects the clock basis during setup and will scale times appropriately such that the definition of the “tick” is independent of the clocking of the system or the monitor refresh frequency.

### 3.1 Elementary Time and Date Functions

The functions in this section obtain the current system time, compare two times, or delay the system for a given time. They represent times — and dates if appropriate — in the `DateStamp` structure as a triple of days, minutes and ticks.

#### 3.1.1 Obtaining the Time and Date

The `DateStamp()` function obtains the current date and time from AmigaDOS:

```
ds = DateStamp( ds );
D0          D1
```

```
struct DateStamp *DateStamp(struct DateStamp *)
```

---

This function retrieves the current system time and fills it into a `DateStamp` structure pointed to by `ds`. It also returns a pointer to the structure passed in. This function cannot fail.

Unlike many other *dos.library* functions, there is no requirement to align `ds` to a long-word boundary.

### 3.1.2 Comparing two Times and Dates

The `CompareDates()` function compares two dates as given by `DateStamp` function and returns an indicator which of the dates are earlier.

```
result = CompareDates(date1, date2)
D0                      D1      D2

LONG CompareDates(struct DateStamp *, struct DateStamp *)
```

This function takes two pointers to `DateStamp` structures as `date1` and `date2` and returns a negative number if `date1` is later than `date2`, a positive number if `date2` is later than `date1`, or 0 if the two dates are identical.

### 3.1.3 Delaying Program Execution

The `Delay()` function delays the execution of the calling process by a specific amount of ticks.

```
Delay( ticks )
      D1

void Delay(ULONG)
```

This function suspends execution of the calling process by `ticks` AmigaDOS ticks. The delay is system-friendly and does not burn CPU cycles; instead, the process is suspended from the CPU the indicated amount of time, making it available for other processes. Thus, this function is the preferred way of delaying program execution. A tick is 1/50<sup>th</sup> of a second.

AmigaDOS variants below version 36 could not handle delays of 0 appropriately.

## 3.2 Conversion Into and From Strings

Functions in this section convert date and time in the (binary) AmigaDOS representation to human-readable strings, and in the reverse direction. Both the input and output of these functions are kept in the `DateTime` structure that is defined in `dos/datetime.h` and reads as follows:

```
struct DateTime {
    struct DateStamp dat_Stamp;
    UBYTE   dat_Format;
    UBYTE   dat_Flags;
    UBYTE   *dat_StrDay;
    UBYTE   *dat_StrDate;
    UBYTE   *dat_StrTime;
};
```

`dat_Stamp` contains the input or output date represented as a `DateStamp` structure.

`dat_Format` defines the format of the date string to create, and the order in which days, months and years appear within the string. The following formats are available, all defined in `dos/datetime.h`:

**Table 2: Date formatting options**

Format Definition	Description
FORMAT_DOS	The AmigaDOS default format
FORMAT_INT	International (ISO) format
FORMAT_USA	USA date format
FORMAT_CDN	Canadian and European format

FORMAT\_DOS represents the date as day of the month in two digits, followed by the month as three-letter abbreviation, followed by a two-digit year counting from the start of the century. An example of this formatting is 30-Sep-23.

FORMAT\_INT starts with a two-digit year, followed by the month represented as two digits starting from 01 for January, followed by two digits for the day of the month. An example of this string is 23-09-30.

FORMAT\_USA places the month first, encoded as two numerical digits, followed by two digits of the day of the month, followed by two digits of the year. An example of this formatting is 09-30-23.

FORMAT\_CDN follows the European convention and places the day of the month first, followed by the month represented as two numerical digits, followed by the year as two digits.

dat\_Flags defines additional flags that control the conversion process. They are also defined in dos/datetime.h:

**Table 3: Date conversion flags**

Flag	Description
DTF_SUBST	Substitute dates by relative description if possible
DTF_FUTURE	Reference direction for relative dates is to the future

The include file dos/datetime.h define in addition also bit numbers for the above flags that start with DTB instead of DTF. The meaning of these flags are as follows:

DTF\_SUBST allows, if set, the conversion to substitute dates nearby today's date by descriptions relative to today. This flag is only honored when converting a time and date in AmigaDOS representation to human-readable strings. In particular, the following substitutions are made:

If the date provided is identical to the system date, the output date is set to "Today".

If the date is one day later than the current system date, the output date is set to "Tomorrow".

If the date is one day before the current system date, the output date is set to "Yesterday".

If the date is in the past week, the function substitutes it by the name of the day of the week, e.g. "Saturday".

DTF\_FUTURE is only honored when converting a string to the AmigaDOS representation, that is into DateStamp structure. It indicates whether weekdays such as "Monday" are interpreted as dates in the past, i.e. "last Monday", or as dates in the future, i.e. "next Monday". If the flag is cleared, weekdays are interpreted as being in the past, same as the DateToStr() function would generate them. If the flag is set, weekdays are assumed as references into the future.

dat\_StrDay: This buffer is only used by converting DateStamps to strings, and — if present — is then filled by the week of the day, e.g. "Saturday".

dat\_StrDate: This element points to a buffer that is either filled with the human-readable date, or is input to the conversion then containing a human-readable date. The buffer is formatted, or expected to be formatted according to dat\_Format and dat\_Flags.

dat\_StrTime: This element points to a buffer that is either filled with a human-readable time, or is the input time to be converted. AmigaDOS expects here a 24h clock, hours, minutes and seconds in this order, separated by colon, e.g. 21:47:16.

---

The functions in this section are patched by the *locale.library* once it is loaded, and then replaced the English strings by the corresponding localized output. The localized versions may also accept (or provide) different formats, such as four-digit years.

### 3.2.1 Converting a Time and Date to a String

The `DateToStr()` function converts a date and time into a human readable string. The date and time, as well as formatting instructions are given by a `DateTime` structure.

```
success = DateToStr( datetime )
D0                      D1

BOOL DateToStr(struct DateTime *)
```

This function takes the date and time in the AmigaDOS binary representation contained in `dat_Stamp` of the passed in `DateTime` structure introduced in section 3.2 and converts it into human readable strings. The elements of this structure shall be populated as follows:

`dat_Stamp` shall be initialized to the date and time to be converted.

`dat_Format` defines the format of the date string to create. It shall be a value from table 2.

`dat_Flags` defines additional flags that control the conversion process. This function only honors the `DTF_SUBST` flag which indicates that `DateToStr()` is supposed to represent the date relative to the current system date if possible. That is, if possible, the date is represented as “today”, “tomorrow”, “yesterday” or a weekday. Week days always correspond to past days, e.g. “Friday” corresponds to the past Friday, not a day in the future.

`dat_StrDay`: If this pointer is non-NULL, it shall point to a string buffer at least `LEN_DATSTRING` bytes large into which the day of the week is filled, e.g. “Saturday”.

`dat_StrDate`: If this pointer is non-NULL, it shall point to a string buffer at least `LEN_DATSTRING` bytes large. This buffer will then be filled by a description for the date according to the format selected by `dat_Format` and `dat_Flags`.

`dat_StrTime`: This buffer, if the pointer is non-NULL, is filled by the time of the day, using a 24h clock. The format is always hours, minutes, seconds, separated by colon.

This function is patched by the *locale.library* once it is loaded, and then replaced the English output by the corresponding localized output.

The function returns 0 on error; the only source of error here is if `dat_Stamp` is invalid, e.g. the number of minutes is larger than  $60 \times 24$  or the number of ticks is larger than  $50 \times 60$ . This makes this function probably unsuitable to handle leap seconds correctly. This function does not touch `IoErr()`, even in case of failure.

### 3.2.2 Convert a String to a Date and Time

The `StrToDate()` function converts a date from a human-readable string to its binary AmigaDOS representation.

```
success = StrToDate( datetime )
D0                      D1

BOOL StrToDate( struct DateTime *)
```

---

This function takes a `DateTime` structure as defined in section 3.2 and converts the date and time strings in this structure to a `DateStamp` structure in `dat_Stamp`. In particular, the elements of the `DateTime` shall be initialized as follows:

`dat_DateTime` may remain uninitialized and is rather filled by this function with the converted date. In other words, this element is used to provide the result of this function.

`dat_Format` shall be initialized by the format that is used by the input date. Table 2 lists the available input formats. In particular, the ROM code within the *dos.library* only accepts two-digit years and interprets the anything between 78 and 99 as 1978 to 1999, and years between 00 and 45 as 2000 to 2045. It refuses all other numbers. However, `StrToDate()` is patched by the *locale.library* whose replacement implementation also accepts four-digit years.

`dat_Flags` shall be initialized by a combination of the flags from table 3. As `StrToDate()` always accepts relative dates such as “yesterday”, the `DTF_SUBST` flag is ignored and only `DTF_FUTURE` is honored. This flag indicates whether weekdays are considered a date in the past or in the future.

`dat_StrDay` is ignored by this function. If a relative date given by a day of a week is to be converted, this weekday goes directly into `dat_StrDate`.

`dat_StrDate`, if it is non-NULL, points to a string describing the date, in the format according to `dat_Format`. If this string is not given, the output date is taken from the system date, i.e. is today’s date.

`dat_StrTime`, if it is non-NULL, points to a human-readable string describing the time of the day. This time shall be formatted as a 24h clock, in the order hours, minutes and seconds, each separated by colon. If this pointer is NULL, the current system time is used.

This function returns non-zero on success, and 0 on error. It does not set `IoErr()` in case of error. Possible errors include ill-formatted input strings the function cannot interpret.

Also note that this function is patched by the *locale.library* once loaded. It adds conventions of the current locale how dates and times are supposed to be formatted. Interpretation of date and time will then follow the conventions of this library.





---

## Chapter 4

# Files

### 4.1 What are Files?

*Files* are streams of sequences of bytes that can be read from and written to, along with a file pointer that points to the next byte to be read, or the next byte to be written or overwritten. Files may have an *End-of-File position*, beyond which the file pointer can not advance when reading bytes from it.

### 4.2 Interactive vs. non-Interactive Files

AmigaDOS knows two types of files: *Interactive* and *non-interactive* files.

*Non-interactive* files are stored on some persistent data carrier; unless modified by a process, the contents of such non-interactive files does not change. They also have a defined *file size*. The file size is the number of bytes between the start of the file and the end-of-file position, or short *EOF position*. This file size does not change unless some process writes to the file, which may or may not be the same process that reads from the file.

Examples for non-interactive files are data on a disk, such as a floppy or a harddisk. Such files have a name, possibly a path within a hierarchical file system, and possibly multiple protection flags that define which type of actions can be applied to a file; such flags define whether the file can be read from, written to, and so on.

*Interactive* files depend on the interaction of the computer system with the outside world, and their contents can change due to such interaction. Interactive files may not define a clear end-of-file position, and an attempt to read from them or write to them may block an indefinite amount of time until triggered by an external event.

Examples for interactive files are the console, where reading from it depends on the user entering data in a console window and output corresponds to printing to the console; or the serial port, where read requests are satisfied by serial data arriving at the serial port and written bytes are transmitted out of the port. The parallel port is another example of an interactive file. Requests to read from it result in an error condition, while writing prints data on a printer connected to the port. Writing may block indefinitely if the printer runs out of paper or is turned off.

### 4.3 Paths and File Names

Files are identified by *paths*, which are strings from which AmigaDOS locates a process through which access to the file is managed. Such a process is called the *Handler* of the file, or, in case of files of on a data

---

carrier, also the *File System*. AmigaDOS itself does not operate on files directly, but delegates such work to its handler.

A *path* is broken up into two parts: An optional device or volume name terminated by a colon (“:”), followed by string that identifies the file within the handler identified by the first part.

The first part, if present, is interpreted by AmigaDOS itself. It relates to the name of a handler (or file system) of the given name, or a known disk volume, or a logical volume of the name within the AmigaDOS *device list*. These concepts are presented in further detail in section 7.

The second, or only part is interpreted by the handler identified by the first part.

### 4.3.1 Devices, Volumes and Assigns

The first part of a path, up to the colon, identifies the device, the volume or the assign a file is located in.

#### 4.3.1.1 Devices

A *device name* identifies the handler or file system directly. Handlers are typically responsible for particular hardware units within the system, for example for the first floppy drive, or the second partition of a harddisk. For example, `df0` is the name of the handler responsible for the first floppy drive, regardless of which disk is inserted into it.

Table 4 lists all devices AmigaDOS mounts itself even without a boot volume available. They can be assumed present any time.

**Table 4: System defined devices**

Device Name	Description
DF0	First floppy drive
PRT	Printer
PAR	Parallel port
SER	Serial port
CON	Line-interactive console
RAW	Character based console
PIPE	Pipeline between processes
RAM	RAM-based file handler

If more than one floppy drives are connected to the system, they are named DF1 through DF3. If a hard disk is present, then the device name(s) of the harddisk partitions depend on the contents of Rigid Disk Block, see [8]. These names can be selected upon installation of the harddisks, e.g. through *HDToolBox*. The general convention is to name them DH0 and following.

The following device names have a special meaning and do not belong to a particular device:

**Table 5: System defined devices**

Name	Description
*	the console of the current process
CONSOLE	the console of the current process
NIL	the data sink

The NIL device is a special device without a handler that is maintained by AmigaDOS itself. Any data written into it vanishes completely, and any attempt to read data from it results in an end-of-file condition.

The \*, if used as complete path name without a trailing colon, is the current console of the process, if such a console exists. Any data output to the file named \* will be printed on the console. Any attempt to read from \* will wait on the user to input data on the console, and will return such data.

---

**Not a wildcard!** Unlike other operating systems, the asterisk `*` is *not* a wildcard under AmigaDOS. It rather identifies the current console of a process, or is used as escape character in AmigaDOS shell scripts.

The `CONSOLE` device is the default console of the process. Unlike `*`, but like any other device name, it shall be followed by a colon, and an optional job name. Such job names form *logical consoles* that are used by the shell for job control purposes.

**Prefer the stars** The difference between `*` and `CONSOLE` is subtle, and the former should be preferred as it identifies the process as part of a particular shell job. An attempt to output to `CONSOLE:` may block the current process as it does not identify it properly as part of its job, but rather denotes the job started when creating the shell. Thus, in case of doubt, use the `*` without any colon if you mean the console.

Additional devices can be loaded into the system by the *Mount* command, see section 11.

#### 4.3.1.2 Volumes

A *volume name* identifies a particular data carrier within a physical drive. For example, it may identify a particular floppy disk, regardless of the drive it is inserted in. For example, the volume name “Workbench3.2” relates always to the same floppy, regardless of whether it is inserted in the first `df0` or second `df1` drive.

#### 4.3.1.3 Assigns

An *assign* or *logical volume* identifies a subset of a files within a file system under a unique name. Such assigns are created by the system or by the user helping to identify portions of the file system containing files that are of particular relevance for the system. For example, the assign `C` contains all commands of the boot shell, and the assign `LIBS` contains dynamically loadable system libraries. Such assigns can be changed or redirected, and by that the system can be instructed to take system resources from other parts of a file system, or entirely different file systems.

Assigns can be of three types: *Regular assigns*, *non-binding assigns* and *late assigns*. *Regular assigns* bind to a particular directory on a particular volume. If the *assign* is accessed, and the original volume the bound directory is not available, the system will ask to insert this particular volume, and no other volume will be accepted.

*Regular assigns* can also bind to multiple directories at once, in which case a particular file or directory within such a *multi-assign* is searched in all directories bound to the assign. A particular use case for this is the `FONTS` assign, containing all system-available fonts. Adding another directory to `FONTS` makes additional fonts available to the system without losing the original ones.

*Regular assigns* have the drawback that the volume remains known to the system, and the corresponding volume icon will not vanish from the workbench. They also require the volume to be present at the time the assign is created.

*Non-binding assigns* avoid these problems by only storing the symbolic path the assign goes to; whenever the assign is accessed, any volume of the particular name containing the particular path will work. However, if this also implies that the target of the assign is not necessarily consistent, i.e. if the assign is accessed later on, another volume with different content will be accepted by the system.

*Late assigns* are a compromise between *regular assigns* and *non-binding assigns*. AmigaDOS initially only stores a target path for the assign, but when the assign is accessed the first time, the assign is converted to a *regular assign* and thus then binds to the particular directory of the particular volume that was inserted at the time of the first access.

Table 6 lists the assigns made by AmigaDOS automatically during bootstrap; except for the `SYS` assign, they all go to a directory of the same name on the boot volume. They are all *regular assigns*, except for `ENVARC`, which is *late assign*.

**Table 6: System defined assigns**

Assign Name	Description
C	Boot shell commands
L	AmigaDOS handlers and file systems
S	AmigaDOS Scripts
LIBS	AmigaOs libraries
DEVS	AmigaOs hardware drivers
FONTS	AmigaOs fonts
ENVARC	AmigaOs preferences (late)
SYS	The boot volume

In addition to the above table, the following assigns are handled by AmigaDOS internally and are not part of the *device list*, (see section 7):

**Table 7: System defined assigns**

Assign Name	Description
PROGDIR	Location of the executable

Thus, PROGDIR is the directory the currently executed binary was loaded from. Note that PROGDIR does not exist in case an executable file was not loaded from disk, probably because it was either taken from ROM or was made resident. More on resident executables is found in section 13.6.

Additional assigns can become necessary for a fully operational system, though these assigns are created through the *Startup-sequence*, a particular AmigaDOS script residing in the S assign which is executed by the boot shell. Table 8 lists some of them.

**Table 8: Assigns made during bootstrap**

Assign Name	Description
ENV	Storage for active preferences and global variables
T	Storage for temporary files
CLIPS	Storage for clipboard contents
KEYMAPS	Keymap layouts
PRINTERS	Printer drivers
REXX	ARexx scripts
LOCALE	Catalogs and localization

Additional assigns can always be made with the *Assign* command, see section 11.

### 4.3.2 Relative and Absolute Paths

As introduced in section 4.3, a path consists either of an device, volume or assign name followed by a colon followed by a second part, or the second part alone. If a device, volume or assign name is present, such a path is said to be an *absolute path* because it identifies a location within a logical or physical volume.

If no first part is present, or if it is empty, i.e. the colon is the first part of the path, AmigaDOS uses information from the calling process to identify a suitable handler. Details on this are provided in section 9. Such a path is called a *relative path*.

This second part is forwarded to the handler and is not interpreted by the *dos.library*. It is then within the responsibility of the handler to interpret this path and locate a file within the data carrier it manages, or to configure an interface to the outside world according to this path.

In general, the *dos.library* does not impose a particular syntax on how this second part looks like. However, several support functions of AmigaDOS implicitly define conventions file systems should follow to make these support functions workable and it is therefore advisable for file system implementors to follow these conventions.

---

### 4.3.3 Maximum Path Length

The *dos.library* does not enforce a limit on the size of file or directory names, except that the total length of a path including all of its components shall not be larger than 255 characters. This is because it is converted to a BSTR within the *dos.library*. How large a component name can be is a matter of the file system itself. The *Fast File System* includes variants that limit file names to 30, 56 or 106 characters.

File systems typically do not report an error if the maximum file name is exceeded; instead, the name is clamped to the maximum size without further notice, which may lead to undesired side effects. For example, a file system may clip or remove a trailing `.info` from a workbench icon file name without ever reporting this, resulting in unexpected side effects. The *icon.library* and *workbench.library* of AmigaOs take care to avoid such file names and double check created objects for correct names.

### 4.3.4 Flat vs. Hierarchical File Systems

A flat file system organizes files as a single list of all files available on a physical data carrier. For large amounts of files, such a representation is clearly burdensome as files may be hard to find and hard to identify.

For this reason, all file systems provided by AmigaOs are *hierarchical* and organize files in nested sets of *directories*, where each directory contains files or additional directories. The topmost directory of a volume forms the *root directory* of this volume.

While AmigaDOS itself does not enforce a particular convention, all file systems included in AmigaDOS follow the convention that a path consists of a sequence of zero or more directory names separated by a forwards slash (“/”), and a final file or directory name.

#### 4.3.4.1 Locating Files or Directories

When attempting to locate a particular file or directory, the *dos.library* first checks whether an absolute path name is present. If so, it starts from the root directory on the device, physical or logical volume identified by the device or volume name and delegates the interpretation of the path to the handler.

Otherwise, it uses the *current directory* of the calling process to locate a handler responsible for the interpretation of the path name. If this current directory is `ZERO` (see section 2.3), it uses the *default file system* of the process, which by itself, defaults to the boot file system.

The second part of the path interpretation is up to the file system identified by the first step and is performed there, outside of the *dos.library*. If the path name includes a colon (“:”), then locating a file starts from the root of the inserted volume. This also includes the special case of an absent device or volume name, though a present colon, i.e. “:” represents the root directory of the volume to which the current directory belongs.

The following paragraphs describe a recommended set of operations an AmigaDOS file system should follow. A path consists of a sequence of components separated by forward slashes (“/”).

To locate a file, the file system should work iteratively through the path, component by component: A single isolated “/” without a preceding component indicates the parent directory of the current directory. The parent directory of the root directory is the root directory itself.

Otherwise, a component followed by “/” instructs the handler to enter the directory of given by the component, and continue searching there.

Scanning terminates when the file system reaches the last component. The file or directory to find is then the given by the last component reached during the scan.

As scanning through directories starts with the current directory and stops when the end of the path has been reached, the empty string indicates the current directory.

---

**No Dots Here** Unlike other operating systems, AmigaDOS does not use “.” and “..” to indicate the current directory or the parent directory. Rather, the current directory is represented by the empty string, and the parent directory is represented by an isolated forwards slash without a preceding component.

Thus, for example, “:S” is a file or directory named “S” in the root directory of the current directory of the process, and “//Top/Hi” is a file or directory named “Hi” two directories up from the current directory, in a directory named “Top”.

### 4.3.5 Case Sensitivity

The *dos.library* does not define whether file names are case-sensitive or insensitive, except for the device or volume name which is case-insensitive. Most if not all AmigaDOS file-systems are also case-insensitive, or rather should. Some variants of the *Fast File System* do not handle case-insensitive comparisons correctly on non-ASCII characters, i.e. ISO-Latin code points whose most-significant bit is set, see section 11.7.4 for details. These variants should be avoided and the “international” variants should be preferred.

## 4.4 Opening Files

To read data from or write data to a file, it first needs to be opened by the `Open()` function:

```
file = Open( name, accessMode )  
D0          D1      D2
```

```
BPTR Open(STRPTR, LONG)
```

The `name` argument is the *path* the file to be opened, which is interpreted according to the rules given in section 4.3. The argument `accessMode` identifies how the file is opened. The function returns a BPTR to a *file handle* on success, or `ZERO` on failure. A secondary return code can be retrieved from `IoErr()` described in section 9.2.9. It is 0 on success, or an error code from `dos/dos.h` in case opening the file failed.

The access mode shall be one of the following, defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 9: Access Modes for Opening Files**

Access Name	Description
MODE_OLDFILE	Shared access to existing files
MODE_READWRITE	Shared access to new or existing files
MODE_NEWFILE	Exclusive access to new files

**Length Limited** As this function needs to convert the path argument from a C string to a BSTR, path names longer than 255 characters are not supported and results are unpredictable if such names are passed into `Open()`. If such long path names cannot be avoided, it is the responsibility of the caller to split the path name accordingly and potentially walk through the directories manually if necessary. Note that this strategy may not be suitable for interactive files or handlers that follow conventions for the path name that are different from the conventions described in section 4.3.4.1.

The access mode `MODE_OLDFILE` attempts to find an existing file. If the file does not exist, the function fails. If the file exists, it can be read from or written from, though simultaneous access from multiple processes is possible and does not create an error condition. If multiple processes write to the same file simultaneously, the result is undefined and no particular order of the write operations is imposed.

---

The access mode `MODE_READWRITE` first attempts to find an existing file, but if the file does not exist, it will be created under the name given by the last component of the path. The function does not attempt to create directories within the path if they do not exist. Once the file is opened, access to the file is shared, even if it has been just created. That is, multiple processes may then access it for reading or writing. If multiple processes write to the file simultaneously, the order in which the writes are served is undefined and depends on the scheduling of the processes.

The access mode `MODE_NEWFILE` creates a new file, potentially erasing an already existing file of the same name if it already exists. The function does not attempt to create directories within the path if they do not exist. Access to the file is exclusive, that is, any attempt to access the file from a second process fails with an error condition.

**No Wildcards** The `Open()` function, similar to most *dos.library* functions, does not attempt to resolve wild cards. That is, any character potentially reassembling a wild card, such as “?” or “#” will be taken as a literal and will be used as part of the file name. While these characters are valid, they should be avoided as they make such files hard to access from the Shell.

## 4.5 Closing Files

The `Close()` function writes all internally buffered data to disk and makes an exclusively opened file accessible to other processes again.

```
success = Close( file )
D0                      D1
```

```
BOOL Close(BPTR)
```

The `file` is a BPTR to a *FileHandle* identifying the file. The return code indicates whether the file system could successfully close the file and write back any data. If the result code is `DOSFALSE`, an error code can be obtained through `IoErr()` described in section 9.2.9. Otherwise, `IoErr()` will not be altered.

Unfortunately, not much can be done if closing a file fails and no general advice is possible how to handle this situation.

Attempting to close the `ZERO` file handle returns success immediately.

## 4.6 Types of Files and Handlers

As introduced in 4.2, AmigaDOS distinguishes between non-interactive files managed by file systems and interactive files that interact with the outside world. Typically, *file systems* create non-interactive files; all other *handlers* create interactive or non-interactive files, depending on the nature of the handler.

### 4.6.1 Obtaining the Type from a File

A file can be either interactive, in which case attempts to read or write data to the file may block indefinitely, or non-interactive where the amount of available data is determined by file itself. The `IsInteractive()` function returns the nature of an already opened file.

```
status = IsInteractive( file )
D0                      D1
```

```
BOOL IsInteractive(BPTR)
```

---

The `IsInteractive()` function returns `TRUE` in case the *file handle* passed in is interactive, or `FALSE` in case it corresponds to a non-interactive stream of bytes, potentially on a file system. This function cannot fail and does not alter `IoErr()`.

## 4.6.2 Obtaining the Type from a Path

A *handler* that manages physical data carriers and allows to access named files on such data carriers is a *file system*. The `IsFileSystem()` function determines the nature of a handler given a path (see 4.3) to a candidate handler.

```
result = IsFileSystem(name)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BOOL IsFileSystem(STRPTR)
```

The `name` argument is a path that does not need to identify a physically existing object. Instead, it is used to identify a handler that would be responsible to such a hypothetical object regardless whether it exists or not.

It is of advisable to provide a path that identifies the handler uniquely, i.e. a string that is terminated by a colon (":"). Otherwise, the call checks whether the *handler* responsible for the current directory of the calling process is a file system.

The returned result is `DOSTRUE` in case the handler identified by the path is a file system, and as such allows access to multiple files on a physical data carrier and examining directories. Otherwise, it returns `DOSFALSE`.

## 4.7 Unbuffered Input and Output

The functions described in this section read bytes from or write bytes to already opened files. These functions are *unbuffered*, that is, any request goes directly to the handler. Since a request performs necessarily a task switch from the caller to the handler managing the file, these functions are inefficient on small amounts of data and should be avoided. Instead, files should be read or written in larger chunks, either by buffering data manually, or by using the buffered I/O functions described in section 4.8.

### 4.7.1 Reading Data

The following function reads data from an opened file by directly invoking the handler for performing the read:

```
actualLength = Read( file, buffer, length )
D0                                     D1      D2      D3
```

```
LONG Read(BPTR, void *, LONG)
```

The `Read()` function reads `length` bytes from an opened file identified by the *file handle* `file` into the buffer pointed to by `buffer`. The buffer is a standard C pointer, not a `BPTR`.

The return code `actualLength` is the amount of bytes actually read, or -1 for an error condition. A secondary return code can be retrieved from `IoErr()` described in section 9.2.9. It is 0 on success, or an error code from `dos/dos.h` in case reading failed.

The amount of data read may be less data than requested by the `length` argument, either because the *EOF* position has been reached (see section 4.2) for non-interactive files, or because the interactive source is depleted. Note that for interactive files, the function may block indefinitely until data becomes available.



---

### 4.7.2 Testing for Availability of Data

An issue of the `Read` function is that it may block indefinitely on an interactive file if the user does not enter any data. The `WaitForChar()` tests for the availability of a character on an interactive file for limited amount of time and returns if no data becomes available.

```
status = WaitForChar( file, timeout )
      D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL WaitForChar(BPTR, LONG)
```

This function waits for a maximum of `timeout` microseconds for the availability of input on `file`. If data is already available, or becomes available within this time, the function returns `DOSTRUE`. Otherwise, the function returns `DOSFALSE`.

A secondary return code can be obtained from `IoErr()`. If it is 0, the handler was able check the availability of a byte from the given file. Otherwise, an error code from `dos/dos.h` indicates failure of the function.

This function requires an interactive file to operate, file systems will typically not implement this function as they do not block.

### 4.7.3 Writing Data

The following call writes an array of bytes unbuffered to a file, interacting directly with the corresponding handler:

```
returnedLength = Write( file, buffer, length )
      D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
LONG Write (BPTR, void *, LONG)
```

The `Write` function writes `length` bytes in the buffer pointed to by `buffer` to the *file handle* given by the `file` argument. On success, it returns the number of bytes written as `returnedLength`, and advances the file pointer of the file by this amount. Note that this amount of bytes may even be 0 in case the file cannot absorb any more bytes. On error, `-1` is returned.

A secondary return code can be retrieved from `IoErr()` described in section 9.2.9. It is 0 on success, or an error code from `dos/dos.h` in case writing failed.

For interactive files, this function may block indefinitely until the corresponding handler is able to take additional data.

### 4.7.4 Adjusting the File Pointer

The `Seek()` adjusts the file pointer of a non-interactive file such that subsequent reading or writing is performed from an alternative position of the file.

```
oldPosition = Seek( file, position, mode )
      D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
LONG Seek(BPTR, LONG, LONG)
```

This function adjusts the file pointer of `file` relative to the position determined by `mode` by `position` bytes. The value of `mode` shall be one of the following options, defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 10: Seek Modes**

Mode Name	Description
OFFSET_BEGINNING	Seek relative to the start of the file
OFFSET_CURRENT	Seek relative to the current file position
OFFSET_END	Seek relative to the end of the file

**Undefined on Interactive Files** The `Seek` function will typically indicate failure if applied to interactive files. Some handlers may assign this function, however, a particular meaning. See the handler definition for details.

If mode is `OFFSET_BEGINNING`, then the new file pointer is placed `position` bytes from the start of the file, i.e. the new file pointer is equal to `position`.

If mode is `OFFSET_CURRENT`, then `position` is added to the file pointer. That is, the file pointer is advanced if `position` is positive, or rewinded if `position` is negative.

If mode is `OFFSET_END`, then the end-of-file position is determined, and `position` is added to this position. This, in particular, requires that `position` should be negative.

The `Seek()` function returns the file pointer before its adjustment, or `-1` in case of an error.

A secondary return code can be retrieved from `IoErr()` described in section 9.2.9. It is 0 on success, or an error code from `dos/dos.h` in case adjusting the file pointer failed.

**Not 64bit safe** Unfortunately, it is not quite clear how `Seek` operates on files that are larger than 2GB, and it is file system dependent how such files could be handled. `OFFSET_BEGINNING` can probably only reach the first 2GB of a larger file as the file system may interpret negative values as an attempt to reach a file position upfront the start of the file and may return an error. Similarly, `OFFSET_END` may possibly only reach the last 2GB of the file. Any other position within the file may be reached by splitting the seek into chunks of at most 2GB and perform multiple `OFFSET_CURRENT` seeks. However, whether such a strategy succeeds is pretty much file system dependent. Note in particular that the return code of the function does not allow to distinguish between a file pointer just below the 4GB barrier and an error condition. A zero result code of `IoErr()` should be then used to learn whether a result of `-1` indicates a file position of `0xffffffff` instead. Most AmigaDOS file systems may not be able to handle files larger than 2GB.

Even though `Seek()` is an unbuffered function, it is aware of a buffer and implicitly flushes the file system internal buffer. That is, it can be safely used by buffered and unbuffered functions.

### 4.7.5 Setting the Size of a File

The `SetFileSize()` function truncates or extends the size of an opened file to a given size. Not all handlers support this function.

```
newsize = SetFileSize(fh, offset, mode)
D0                      D1      D2      D3

LONG SetFileSize(BPTR, LONG, LONG)
```

This function extends or truncates the size of the file identified by the *file handle* `fh`; the target size is determined by the current file pointer, `offset` and the mode. Interpretation of mode and `offset` is similar to `Seek()`, except that the end-of-file position of the file is adjusted, and not the file pointer.

The mode shall be selected from to table 10. In particular, it is interpreted as follows:

---

If mode is `OFFSET_BEGINNING`, then the file size is set to the value of `offset`, irrespective of the current file pointer.

If mode is `OFFSET_CURRENT`, then the new end-of-file position is set `offset` bytes relative to the current file pointer. That is, the file is truncated if `offset` is negative, and extended if `offset` is positive.

If mode is `OFFSET_END`, the new file size is given by the current file size plus `offset`. That is, the file is extended by `offset` bytes if positive, or truncated otherwise. The value of the current file pointer is irrelevant and ignored.

If the current file pointer of any *file handle* opened on the same file is, after a potential truncation, beyond the new end-of-file, it is clamped to the end-of-file. They remain unchanged otherwise.

If the file is enlarged, the values within the file beyond the previous end-of-file position are undetermined.

The return value `newsize` is the size of the file after the adjustment, i.e. the position of the end-of-file location.

**Not 64bit safe** Similar to `Seek()`, `SetFileSize()` cannot be assumed to work properly if the (old or new) file size is larger than 2GB. What exactly happens if an attempt is made to adjust the file by more than 2GB depends on the file system performing the operation. A possible strategy to adjust the file size to a value above 2GB is to first seek to the closest position, potentially using multiple seeks of maximal size, and then perform one or multiple calls to `SetFileSize()` with the mode set to `OFFSET_CURRENT`. However, whether this strategy succeeds is file system dependent.

## 4.8 Buffered Input and Output

AmigaDOS also offers buffered input and output functions that stores data in an intermediate buffer. AmigaDOS then transfers data only in larger chunks between the buffer and the handler, minimizing the task switching overhead and offering better performance if data is to be read or written in smaller units.

**Performance Improved** While buffered I/O functions of AmigaOs 3.1.4 and below were designed around single-byte functions and thus caused massive overhead in the buffered functions described in this section, the functions in this section were redesigned in AmigaOs 3.2 and now offer significantly better performance. Unfortunately, the default buffer size AmigaDOS uses is quite small and should be significantly increased by `SetVBuf()`. A suggested buffer size is 4096 bytes which corresponds to a disk block of modern hard drives.

### 4.8.1 Buffered Read From a File

The `FRead()` function reads multiple equally-sized records from a file through a buffer, and returns the number of records retrieved.

```
count = FRead(fh, buf, blocklen, blocks)
      D0          D1  D2      D3      D4
```

```
LONG FRead(BPTR, STRPTR, ULONG, ULONG)
```

This function reads `blocks` records each of `blocklen` bytes from the file `fh` into the buffer `buf`. It returns the number of complete records retrieved from the file. If the file runs out of data, the last record may be incomplete.

---

From AmigaOs 3.2 onwards, `FRead()` first attempts to satisfy the request from the file handle internal buffer, but if the number of remaining bytes is larger than the buffer size, the handler will be invoked directly for “bursting” the data into the target buffer, bypassing the file buffer.

This function does not modify `IoErr()` in case the request can be satisfied completely from the file handle buffer. It neither returns `-1` in case of an error. Callers should instead use `SetIoErr(0)` to clear the error state before calling this function, and then use `IoErr()` to learn if any error occurred if the number of records read is smaller than the number of records requested.

### 4.8.2 Buffered Write to a File

The `FWrite()` function writes multiple equally-sized records to a file through a buffer, and returns the number of records it could write.

```
count = FWrite(fh, buf, blocklen, blocks)
D0                      D1  D2      D3      D4

LONG FWrite(BPTR, STRPTR, ULONG, ULONG)
```

This function write `blocks` records each of `blocklen` bytes from the buffer `buf` to the file `fh`. It returns the number of complete records written to the file. On an error, the last record written may be incomplete.

From AmigaOs 3.2 onwards, `FWrite()` first checks whether the file handle internal buffer is partially filled. If so, the file handle internal buffer is filled from `buf`. If any bytes remain to be written, and the number of bytes is larger than the internal buffer size, the handler will be invoked to write the data in a single block, bypassing the buffer. Otherwise, the data will be copied to the internal buffer.

This function does not modify `IoErr()` in case the request can be satisfied completely by using the file handle buffer. It neither returns `-1` in case of an error. Callers should instead use `SetIoErr(0)` to clear the error state before calling this function, and then use `IoErr()` to learn if any error occurred if the number of records written is smaller than the number of records passed in.

### 4.8.3 Buffered Write to the Output Stream

The `WriteChars()` writes an array of bytes buffered to the output stream.

```
count = WriteChars(buf, buflen)
D0                      D1  D2

LONG WriteChars(STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function is equivalent to `FWrite(Output(), buf, 1, buflen)`, that is, the bytes in the buffer `buf` of size `buflen` is writing to the output stream, and the number of characters written is returned. Therefore, this function has similar quirks concerning error reporting as `FWrite()`: It does not set `IoErr()` consistently, namely only when the buffer is written to the stream. It neither returns `-1` on an error. It is therefore recommended to reset the error upfront with `SetIoErr(0)`.

### 4.8.4 Adjusting the Buffer

The `SetVBuf()` function allows to adjust the internal buffer size for buffered input/output functions such as `FRead()` or `FWrite()`. It also sets the buffer mode. The default buffer size is 204 characters, which is too low for many applications.

```
error = SetVBuf(fh, buff, type, size)
D0          D1    D2    D3    D4
```

```
LONG SetVBuf(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG, LONG)
```

This function sets the internal buffer of the *file handle* `fh` to `size` bytes. Sizes smaller than 204 characters will be rounded up to 204. If `buff` is non-NULL, it is a pointer to a user-provided buffer that will be used for buffering. This buffer shall be aligned to a 32-bit boundary. A user provided buffer will not be released when the file is closed.

Otherwise, if `buff` is NULL AmigaDOS will allocate the buffer for you, and will also release it when the file is closed.

The `type` argument identifies the type of buffering according to Table 11; the modes there are defined in the include file `dos/stdio.h`.

**Table 11: Buffer Modes**

Buffer Name	Description
BUF_LINE	Buffer up to end of line
BUF_FULL	Buffer everything
BUF_NONE	No buffering

The buffer mode `BUF_LINE` automatically flushes the buffer when writing a line feed (0x0a), carriage return (0x0c) or ASCII NUL (0x00) character to the buffer, and the target file is interactive. Otherwise, the characters remain in the buffer until it either overflows or is flushed manually, see `Flush()`.

The buffer mode `BUF_FULL` buffers all characters until the buffer either overflows or is flushed.

The buffer mode `BUF_NONE` effectively disables the buffer and writes all characters to the target file immediately.

On reading, `BUF_LINE` and `BUF_FULL` are equivalent and fill the entire buffer from the file; `BUF_NONE` disables buffering.

The function returns non-zero on success, or 0 on error. Error conditions are either out-of-memory, an invalid buffer mode or an invalid file handle. Unfortunately, `IoErr()` is only set on an out-of-memory condition and remains otherwise unchanged.

## 4.8.5 Synchronize the File to the Buffer

The `Flush()` function flushes the internal buffer of a *file handle* and synchronizes the file pointer to the buffer position.

```
success = Flush(fh)
D0          D1
```

```
LONG Flush(BPTR)
```

Synchronizes the file pointer to the buffer, that is, if bytes were written to the buffer, writes out buffer content to file. If bytes were read from the file and non-read bytes remained in the buffer, such bytes are dropped and the function attempts to seek back to the position of the last read byte. This can fail for interactive files.

The return code is currently always `DOSTRUE` and thus cannot be used as an indication of error, even if not all bytes could be written, or if seeking failed. If error detection is desired, the caller should first use `SetIoErr(0)` to erase an error condition, then call `flush`, and then use `IoErr()` to check whether an error occurred.

---

**Flush when switching between reading and writing** The `Flush()` function shall be called when switching from writing to a file to reading from the same file, or vice versa. The internal buffer logic is unfortunately not capable to handle this case correctly. Also, `Flush()` shall be called when switching from buffered to unbuffered input/output.

#### 4.8.6 Write a Character Buffered to a File

The `FPutC()` function writes a single character to a file, using the *file handle* internal buffer.

```
char = FPutC(fh, char)
D0          D1  D2
```

```
LONG FPutC(BPTR, LONG)
```

This function writes the single character `char` to the *file handle* `fh`. Depending on the buffer mode, the character and the type of file, the character may go to the buffer first, or may cause the buffer to be emptied. See `SetVBuf()` for details on buffer modes and conditions for implicit buffer flushes.

It returns the character written, or `ENDSTREAMCH` on an error. The latter constant is defined in the include file `dos/stdio.h` and equals to `-1`.

This function does not touch `IoErr()` if the character only goes into the internal buffer.

#### 4.8.7 Write a String Buffered to a File

The `F_puts()` function writes a NUL-terminated string to a file, using the *file handle* internal buffer.

```
error = F_puts(fh, str)
D0          D1  D2
```

```
LONG F_puts(BPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function writes the NUL-terminated (C-style) string `str` to the *file handle* `fh`. The terminating NUL character is not written.

Depending on the buffer mode, the string will first go into the buffer, or may be written out immediately. See `SetVBuf()` for details on buffer modes and conditions for implicit buffer flushes.

This function returns 0 on success, or `ENDSTREAMCH` on an error. The latter constant is defined in `dos/stdio.h` and equals to `-1`. The error code `IoErr()` is only adjusted when the buffer is flushed.

#### 4.8.8 Write a String Buffered to the Output Stream

The `PutStr()` function writes a NUL-terminated string to the output. No newline is appended.

```
error = PutStr(str)
D0          D1
```

```
LONG PutStr(STRPTR)
```

This function is equivalent to `F_puts(Output(), str)`, that is, it writes the NUL-terminated string pointed to by `str` to the output. It returns 0 on success and `-1` on error. The `IoErr()` is only adjusted when the buffer of the `Output() FileHandle` is flushed. When this happens depends on the buffer mode installed by `SetVBuf()`.

---

### 4.8.9 Read a Character from a File

The `FGetC()` function reads a single character from a file through the internal buffer of the *file handle*.

```
char = FGetC(fh)
D0          D1

LONG FGetC(BPTR)
```

This function attempts to read a single character from the *file handle* `fh` using the buffer of the handle. If characters are present in the buffer, the request is satisfied from the buffer first, then the function attempts to refill the buffer from the file and tries again.

The function returns the character read, or `ENDSTREAMCH` on an end-of-file condition or an error. The latter constant is defined in `dos/stdio.h` and equals to `-1`.

To distinguish between the error and the end-of-file case, the caller should first reset the error condition with `SetIoErr(0)`, and then check `IoErr()` when the function returns with `ENDSTREAMCH`.

### 4.8.10 Read a Line from a File

The `FGets()` function reads a newline-terminated string from a file, using the *file handle* internal buffer.

```
buffer = FGets(fh, buf, len)
D0          D1  D2  D3

STRPTR FGets(BPTR, STRPTR, ULONG)
```

This function reads a line from the *file handle* into the buffer pointed to by `buf`, capable of holding `len` characters.

Reading terminates either if `len-1` characters have been read, filling up the buffer completely; or a line-feed character is found, which is copied into the buffer; or if an end-of-file condition or an error condition is encountered. In either event, the string is NUL terminated.

The function returns `NULL` in case not even a single character could be read. Otherwise, the function returns the buffer passed in.

To distinguish between the error and end-of-file condition, the caller should first use `SetIoErr(0)`, and then test `IoErr()` in case the function returns `NULL`.

### 4.8.11 Revert a Single Byte Read

The `UnGetC()` function reverts a single byte read from a stream and makes this byte available for reading again.

```
value = UnGetC(fh, ch)
D0          D1  D2

LONG UnGetC(BPTR, LONG)
```

The character `ch` is pushed back into the *file handle* `fh` such that the next attempt to read a character from `fh` returns `ch`. If `ch` is `-1`, the last character read will be pushed back. If the last read operation indicated an error or end-of-file condition, `UnGetC(fh, -1)` pushes an end-of-file condition back.

This function returns non-zero on success or 0 if the character could not be pushed back. At most a single character can be pushed back after each read operation, an attempt to push back more characters can fail.

---

## 4.9 File Handle Documentation

So far, the *file handle* has been used as an opaque value bare any meaning. However, the BPTR, once converted to a regular pointer, is a pointer to FileHandle structure:

```
BPTR file = Open("S:Startup-Sequence,MODE_OLDFILE");
struct FileHandle *fh = BADDR(file);
```

In the following sections, this structure and its functions are documented.

### 4.9.1 The struct FileHandle

A file is represented by a FileHandle structure; the Open() function returns a BPTR to such a structure. It is allocated by the *dos.library* through AllocDosObject(), and then forwarded to the file system or handler for second-level initialization. It is defined by the include file dos/dosextens.h as replicated here:

```
struct FileHandle {
    struct Message *fh_Link;
    struct MsgPort *fh_Port;
    struct MsgPort *fh_Type;
    BPTR fh_Buf;
    LONG fh_Pos;
    LONG fh_End;
    LONG fh_Funcs;
#define fh_Func1 fh_Funcs
    LONG fh_Func2;
    LONG fh_Func3;
    LONG fh_Args;
#define fh_Arg1 fh_Args
    LONG fh_Arg2;
};
```

fh\_Link is actually not a pointer, but an AmigaDOS internal value that shall not be interpreted or touched, and of which one cannot make productive use.

fh\_Port is similarly not a pointer, but a LONG. If it is non-zero, the file is interactive, otherwise it is a file system. IsInteractive() makes use of this member. The file system or handler shall initialize this value when opening a file and shall initialize it according to the nature of the handler.

fh\_Type points to the MsgPort of the handler or file system that implements all input and output operations. Section 11 provides additional information on how handlers and file systems work. If this pointer is NULL, no handler is associated to the file handle. This is also the value AmigaDOS will deposit here when opening a file to the NIL: (pseudo-)device. Attempting to Read() from this handle results in an end-of-file situation, and calling Write() on such a handle does nothing, ignoring any data written.

fh\_Buf is a BPTR to the file handle internal buffer all buffered I/O function documented in this section use.

fh\_Pos is the next read or write position within this buffer.

fh\_End is the size of the buffer in bytes.

fh\_Func1 is a function pointer that is called whenever the buffer is to be filled through the handler. Users shall not call this function itself, and the function prototype is intentionally not documented.

fh\_Func2 is a second function pointer that is called whenever the buffer is full and is to be written by the handler. Users shall not call this function itself, and the function prototype is intentionally undocumented.



---

`fh_Func3` is a final function pointer that is called whenever the file handle is closed. This function then potentially writes the buffer content out when dirty, releases the buffer if it is system-allocated, and finally forwards the close request to the handler.

`fh_Arg1` is a file-system internal value the handler or file system uses to identify the file. The interpretation of this value is to the file system or handler, and the *dos.library* does not attempt to interpret it. The handler deposits the file identification here when opening a file, and the *dos.library* forwards it to the handler on `Read()` and `Write()`. See section 11 for details.

`fh_Arg2` is currently unused.

## 4.9.2 String Streams

It is sometimes useful to provide programs with (temporary) input not coming from a file system or handler directly, even though the program uses a file interface to access it. One solution to this problem is to deposit the input data on the RAM disk, then opening this file and providing it as input to such a program. The drawback of this approach is that additional tests are necessary to ensure that the file name is unique, and to avoid that other than the intended program accesses it.

AmigaDOS uses the technique documented here itself, for example to provide the command to be executed by the `Run` command. There, the string stream contains the command to be run in background, which is then provided as input file to the shell. The `System()` function of the *dos.library* makes use of the same trick to feed the command to be executed as input file. Thus, even though the shell can only execute commands from a file, AmigaDOS can generate *file handles* that do not correspond to a handler, but to a string in memory containing the commands.

The shell itself is using the same technique to pass arguments to the commands it executes; it deposits the command arguments in the file handle buffer of the input stream where `ReadArgs()` collects them.

The idea is to allocate a `struct FileHandle` and initialize its buffer to contain the string within the file. For this `fh->Buf` needs to point to the buffer containing the string, and `fh->End` needs to be its size. The function pointers in the *file handle* remain 0 such as to avoid that the *dos.library* reads, writes or flushes the buffer. The `FileHandle` shall be allocated by `AllocVec()` as the *dos.library* releases the handle through `FreeVec()`.

The following program demonstrates this technique:

```
#include <exec/memory.h>
#include <dos/dos.h>
#include <dos/stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <proto/dos.h>
#include <proto/exec.h>

int main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *test = "Hello World!\n";
    const int len = strlen(test)+1;
    struct FileHandle *fh;
    BPTR file;

    fh = AllocVec(sizeof(struct FileHandle) + len,
                  MEMF_PUBLIC|MEMF_CLEAR);
    if (fh) {
        UBYTE *c = (UBYTE *) (fh + 1);
        file = MKBADDR(fh);
```

```

memcpy(c, test, len);
fh->fh_Buf = MKBADDR(c);
fh->fh_End = len;
{
    BPTR out = Output();
    LONG ch;
    while((ch = FGetC(file)) >= 0) {
        FPutC(out, ch);
    }
}
Close(file);
}
return 0;
}

```

Here the buffer is allocated along with the file handle, and thus released along with it. Setting `MEMF_PUBLIC` is of utter importance as it clears all function pointers, and in particular the `fh_Link` field to zero; the latter is an indication to the *dos.library* that this structure was not allocated through itself.

### 4.9.3 An FSkip() Implementation

Unlike most unbuffered functions, `Seek()` can be safely mixed with buffered input and output functions. However, this function is not very efficient, and seeking should be avoided if buffer manipulation is sufficient. Buffer manipulation has the advantage that small amounts of bytes can be skipped easily without going through the file system; skipping over larger amounts of bytes can be performed by a single function without requiring to read bytes.

The following function implements an `FSkip()` function that selects the most viable option and is more efficient than `Seek()` for buffered reads.

```

LONG FSkip(BPTR file, LONG skip)
{
    LONG res;
    struct FileHandle *fh = BADDR(file);
    if (fh->fh_Pos >= 0 && fh->fh_End > 0 && fh->fh_Func3) {
        LONG newpos = fh->fh_Pos + skip;
        if (newpos >= 0 && newpos < fh->fh_End) {
            fh->fh_Pos = newpos;
            return DOSTRUE;
        }
    }
    skip += fh->fh_Pos - fh->fh_End;
    fh->fh_Pos = -1;
    fh->fh_End = -1;
    if (Seek(fh, skip, OFFSET_CURRENT) != -1)
        return DOSTRUE;
    return DOSFALSE;
}

```

The first if-condition checks whether the buffer is actually present. Then, the new buffer position is computed. If it is within the buffer, the new buffer position is installed as the work is done.

Otherwise, the skip distance is adjusted by the buffer position. Initializing the buffer size and position to `-1` ensures that the following `Seek()` does not attempt to call `Flush()` internally.

---

There is one particular catch, namely that the `file` needs to be initialized for reading immediately after opening the file, or the buffer will not be in the right state for the trick:

```
BPTR file = Open(filename,MODE_OLDFILE);
UnGetC(file,-1); /* initialize buffer */
```

This is only necessary if the first access to the file is an `FSkip()`.

#### 4.9.4 An FGet() Implementation

While the `FRead()` function already provides a buffered read function, it is not very efficient prior release 47 of AmigaDOS. The following simple function provides in such cases a faster implementation that even allows inlining:

```
LONG FGet(BPTR f,void *buf, LONG size)
{
    struct FileHandle *cis = BADDR(f);

    if (cis->fh_Pos) {
        LONG end = cis->fh_Pos + size;
        if (end < cis->fh_End) {
            memcpy(buf, (UBYTE *)BADDR(cis->fh_Buf) +
                    cis->fh_Pos, (size_t) (size));
            cis->fh_Pos = end;
            return size;
        }
    }

    return FRead(f,buf,1,size);
}
```

It reads `size` bytes from the file `fh` into the buffer `buf`, and returns the number of bytes read.

As seen from this implementation, the function attempts to satisfy the read if a partial buffer is present. If not, the above implementation runs into the operating system function. As for the `FSkip()` implementation presented in section 4.9.3, the file handle requires some preparation by a dummy `UnGetC()`, see there.

### 4.10 Formatted Output

The functions in this section print strings formatted to a file. Both files use the internal buffer of the *file handle*.

#### 4.10.1 Print Formatted String using C-Syntax to a File

The `VFPrintf()` function prints multiple datatypes using a format string that closely resembles the syntax of the C syntax. `FPrintf()` is based on the same entry point of the *dos.library*, though the prototype for the C language is different and thus arguments are expected directly as function arguments instead of requiring them to be collected in an array upfront.

```
count = VFPrintf(fh, fmt, argv)
D0          D1  D2  D3

LONG VFPrintf(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG *)
```

```
count = FPrintf(fh, fmt, ...)

LONG FPrintf(BPTR, STRPTR, ...)
```

This function uses the `fmt` string to format an array of arguments pointed to by `argv` and outputs the result to the file `fh`. The syntax of the format string is identical to that of the `exec` function `RawDoFmt()`, and shares its problems. In particular, format strings indicating integer arguments such as `%d` and `%u` assume 16bit integers, independent of the integer model of the compiler. On compilers working with a 32bit integer models, the format modifier `l` should be used, e.g. `%ld` for signed and `%lu` for unsigned integers.

As `RawDoFmt()` is also patched by the *locale.library*, syntax elements from the `FormatString()` function of this library become available for `VFPrintf()` and `FPrintf()`.

The result `count` delivers the number of characters written to the file, or `-1` for an error. In the latter case, `IoErr` provides an error code.

#### 4.10.2 BCPL Style Formatted Print to a File

The `VFWritef()` function formats its arguments according to a format string similar to `VFPrintf()`, but uses the formatting syntax of the BCPL language. The main purpose of this function is to offer formatted output for legacy BCPL programs where this function appears as an entry of the BCPL *Global Vector*. New code should not use this function but rather depend on `VFPrintf()` which also gets enhanced by the *locale.library*.

The `FWritef()` uses the same entry point of the *dos.library*, though the compiler prototype imposes a different calling syntax where the objects to be formatted are directly delivered as function arguments rather requiring the caller to collect them in an array upfront.

```
count = VFWritef(fh, fmt, argv)
D0          D1  D2  D3

LONG VFWritef(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG *)

count = FWritef(fh, fmt, ...)

LONG FWritef(BPTR, STRPTR, ...)
```

This function formats the arguments from the array pointed to by `argv` according to the format string in `fmt` and writes the output to the file `fh`. The format string follows the syntax of the BCPL language. The following format identifiers are supported:

- `%S` Write a NUL terminated string from the array to the output.
- `%Tx` Writes a NUL terminated string left justified in a field whose width is given by the character `x`. The length indicator is always a single character; a digit from 0 to 9 indicates the field widths from 0 to 9 directly. Characters A to Z indicate field widths from 10 onwards.
- `%C` Writes a single character whose ISO-Latin-1 code is given as a 32-bit integer on the `argv` array.
- `%Ox` Writes an integer in octal to the output where `x` indicates the maximal field width. The field width is a single character that is encoded similarly to the `%T` format string.
- `%Xx` Writes an integer in hexadecimal to the output in a field that is at most `x` characters long. `x` is a single character and encodes the width similar to that `%T` format string.

- 
- `%Ix` Writes a (signed) integer in decimal to the output in field that is at most `x` characters long. The field length is again indicated by a single character.
  - `%N` Writes a (signed) integer in decimal to the output without any length limitation.
  - `%Ux` Writes an unsigned integer in decimal to the output, limiting the field length to at most `x` characters, where `x` is encoded in a single character.
  - `%%` Ignores the next argument, i.e. skips over it.

This function is *not* patched by the *locale.library* and therefore is not localized or enhanced.

While the same function can also be found in the BPCL *Global Vector*, it there takes BSTRs instead of regular C strings for the format string and arguments of the `%S` and `%T` formats.

### 4.10.3 Setting the Console Buffer Mode

The `SetMode()` function sets the behaviour of a handler. It is typically used in conjunction with the graphical or serial console, i.e. the CON-Handler and the AUX-Handler, and there sets the input buffer mode of the console. Depending on this mode, the console either waits for an entire line to be completed to satisfy an input, or provides each individual key as input to programs, or provides a line buffer with the exception of some special control keys that are transmitted immediately.

```
success = SetMode(fh, mode)
D0                      D1  D2
```

```
BOOL SetMode(BPTR, LONG)
```

This function sets the mode of the handler addressed by the *FileHandle* `fh` to the `mode` provided as second argument. The meaning of the modes is specific to the handler; however, this function is typically used in conjunction with both consoles provided by the system, the graphical console of the `CON:` and `RAW:` device, and the serial console corresponding to the `AUX:` device. All three devices are, actually, implemented by the CON-Handler, while the AUX-Handler is just a simple wedge to the first for historical reasons.

For the console(s), the interpretation of the `mode` argument is as follows:

**Table 12: Console Modes**

Buffer Mode	Description
0	Cooked mode
1	Raw mode
2	Medium mode
All other values	Reserved for future use

In the *cooked mode*, the console buffers entire lines, provides line-editing features, but only makes the input data available when the user terminates the input with the `RETURN` key. The `CON:` and `AUX:` devices operate by default in this mode, but can be switched to any other buffer mode with this function.

In the *raw mode*, every single keystroke is made available immediately, including control sequences corresponding to all cursor and function keys. That implies, however, that line editing is not available and pressed keys are not echoed on the console, but rather transmitted directly. If echoing is desired, it needs to be performed manually by the application. This mode corresponds to the `RAW:` device which is nothing but a console operating in this mode by default.

In the *medium mode*, the console also buffers lines, but some keystrokes are directly transmitted without requiring the user to press the `RETURN` key. In specific, key-combinations of the up- and down cursor keys and the `TAB` key are reported immediately to the caller through control sequences. The Amiga Shell uses this

mode to offer a history and provides through it TAB expansion of commands and command line arguments. No device name corresponds to this mode; instead, the Shell switches a regular CON: window to this mode in order to offer additional services. Section 11.3 provides details.

Both the CON-Handler and the AUX-Handler implement this function, supporting all three modes. However, there is — unless explicitly mounted by the user — no device name that corresponds to the *medium mode* and no device name that corresponds to an AUX: console in the *raw mode*.

## 4.11 Record Locking

While locks control access to a *file system* object in total, record locks provide access control on portions of a file. Unlike locks, however, the *file system* does not block read or write access to the locked region. Instead, a record lock on a portion of a file only prevents another record lock on a region that overlaps with the locked region. Record locks therefore require the locking processes to follow the same locking protocol.

Record locks are a relatively modern protocol not all file systems implement. The Ram-Handler and the Fast File System support it.

### 4.11.1 Locking a Portion of a File

The `LockRecord` function locks a single region of a file, potentially waiting for a timeout for the region to become available.

```
success = LockRecord(fh, offset, length, mode, timeout)
```

```
BOOL LockRecord(BPTR, ULONG, ULONG, ULONG, ULONG)
```

This function attempts to lock the region of the file identified by `fh` starting from the byte offset `offset` and the byte size `length`. The `mode` shall be taken from the constants defined in `dos/record.h`:

**Table 13: Record Locking Modes**

Record Locking Mode	Description
REC_EXCLUSIVE	Exclusive access to a region, honoring the timeout
REC_EXCLUSIVE_IMMED	Exclusive access to a region, ignoring the timeout
REC_SHARED	Shared access to a region, honoring the timeout
REC_SHARED_IMMED	Shared access to a region, ignoring the timeout

While the same byte within a file can be included in multiple regions locked through a shared record lock, only a single exclusive lock can be held on each byte of a file. Or put differently, shared regions can overlap with each other without failure, exclusively locked regions cannot overlap with shared locked regions or with each other.

For the `REC_EXCLUSIVE` and `REC_SHARED` modes, the `timeout` value provides a time limit in ticks, i.e.  $1/50^{\text{th}}$  of a second, after which an attempt to obtain a lock times out. This time limit may also be 0 in which case an attempt to lock a region fails immediately.

The `REC_EXCLUSIVE_IMMED` and `REC_SHARED_IMMED` modes ignore the timeout, i.e. they act as if the timeout is 0 and fail as soon as they can determine that the requested record cannot be locked.

This function returns 0 in case of failure and then returns a non-zero error code with `IoErr()`. In case the record lock cannot be obtained because the region overlaps with another locked region, the error will be `ERROR_LOCK_COLLISION`. If the region can be locked, the call returns a non-zero result code and sets `IoErr()` to 0.

---

### 4.11.2 Locking Multiple Portions of a File

The `LockRecords()` function locks multiple records at once, potentially within multiple files.

```
success = LockRecords(record_array, timeout)
D0          D1          D2
```

```
BOOL LockRecords(struct RecordLock *, ULONG)
```

This function attempts to lock multiple records at once that are included in the `RecordLock` structure. This structure is defined in `dos/record.h` and looks as follows:

```
struct RecordLock {
    BPTR    rec_FH;          /* filehandle */
    ULONG    rec_Offset;     /* offset in file */
    ULONG    rec_Length;     /* length of file to be locked */
    ULONG    rec_Mode;       /* Type of lock */
};
```

The `record_array` is a pointer to an array of the above structure that is terminated by a `RecordLock` structure with `rec_FH` equal to `NULL`. The elements of this structure correspond to the arguments of the `LockRecord()` function:

`rec_FH` is the file handle to the file within which a record is to be locked. It shall be `NULL` for the last element in the array.

`rec_Offset` and `rec_Length` specify the region in the file to be locked.

`rec_Mode` specifies the type of the lock that is to be obtained. It shall be one of the modes listed in table 13; the modes are all defined in `dos/record.h`.

The `timeout` specifies how long each of the attempts to obtain a lock is supposed to wait for a record to become available if a non-immediate record lock is requested. The `timeout` is applied to each of the records in the `RecordLock` array sequentially until either all records could be locked, or until locking one of the records fail. In such a case, the call unlocks all locks obtained so far, and then returns with failure.

On failure, i.e. if one of the records cannot be locked, the function returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to an error code. On success, the function returns a non-zero result and sets `IoErr()` to 0.

Unlike what the function prototype suggests, this function is *not atomic*. Instead, it attempts to lock the records sequentially one after another, applying the same timeout for each call. Thus, it can happen that another task attempts for a lock of a conflicting region while the first caller is executing this function. It is therefore recommended to establish an order in which records within a file are locked, e.g. from smallest to largest start offset. Note that this also implies that the maximal time this function may take is given by the number of elements in the `record_array` times `timeout`.

### 4.11.3 Unlocking a Portion of a File

The `UnLockRecord()` function unlocks a region of a file, releasing it for further locks. The provided region shall be identical to one of the regions locked before, i.e. it is not possible to partially unlock a region and leave the remaining bytes of the region locked.

```
success = UnLockRecord(fh, offset, length)
D0          D1    D2    D3
```

```
BOOL UnLockRecord(BPTR, ULONG, ULONG)
```

---

This function unlocks a region of a file locked before by `LockRegion()` or `LockRegions()`. The region starts `offset` bytes within the file identified by `fh` and is `length` bytes large.

This function returns 0 on failure and sets an error code that can be obtained by `IoErr()`. A possible error code is `ERROR_RECORD_NOT_LOCKED` if an attempt is made to unlock a record that is actually not locked, or to partially unlock a record. On success, the function returns a non-zero result code and sets `IoErr()` to 0.

#### 4.11.4 Unlocking Multiple Records of a File

The `UnLockRecords()` function unlocks multiple records provided in an array of `RecordLock` structures at once, sequentially releasing one record after another.

```
success = UnLockRecords(record_array)
D0                      D1

BOOL UnLockRecords(struct RecordLock *)
```

This function releases multiple records provided in an array of `RecordLock` structures. The last element of the structure is indicated by its `rec_FH` element set to `NULL`. This structure is defined in section 4.11.2.

The function calls `UnLockRecord()` in a loop, and is therefore *not atomic*. In case unlocking any of these records fails, the function returns 0 but attempts to unlock also any remaining records in the array. On success, it returns a non-zero result code and sets `IoErr()` to 0. Unfortunately, the function does not set `IoErr()` consistently in case of failure as the error code is not saved on a failed unlock.



---

## Chapter 5

# Locks

*Locks* are access rights to objects, such as files or directories, on a file system. Once an object has been locked, it can no longer be deleted, or in case of files, it can no longer be altered either. Depending on the file system, locks may also prevent other forms of changes of the object.

Locks come in two types: *Exclusive* and *shared locks*. Only a single exclusive lock can exist on a file system object at a time, and no other locks on an exclusively locked object can exist. An attempt to lock an exclusively locked object results in failure, and attempting to exclusively lock an object that is already shared locked will also fail.

Multiple *shared locks* can be kept on the same object at the same time, though once a shared lock has been obtained, any attempt to lock the same object exclusively fails.

One particular use case of *locks* is to serve as an identifier of a particular directory or file on a file system. Since paths are limited to 255 characters, see 4.3, locks are the preferred method of indicating a position within a file system. Even though paths are length limited, there is no restriction on the depth within the directory structure of a file system. The `ZERO` lock identifies the boot volume, also known as `SYS :`, see also section 4.3.1.3.

*Locks* are also the building stone of files; in fact, every file is internally represented by a lock on the corresponding object, even if the file system does not expose this lock to the caller.

As long as at least a single lock is held of an object on a particular volume, the file system will keep the volume within the *device list* of the *dos.library*, see section 7. This has, for example, the consequence that the workbench will continue to show an icon representing the volume in its window.

## 5.1 Obtaining and Releasing Locks

*Locks* can be obtained either explicitly from a path, or can be derived from another lock or file. As locks block altering accesses to an object of a file system, locks need to be released as early as possible to allow other accesses to the locked object.

### 5.1.1 Obtaining a Lock from a Path

The `Lock()` function obtains a lock on an object given a path to the object. The path can be either absolute, or relative (see section 4.3) to the current directory of the calling process.

```
lock = Lock( name, accessMode )
D0          D1          D2
```

```
BPTR Lock(STRPTR, LONG)
```

---

This function locks the object identified by `name`, which is the path to the object. The type of the lock is identified by `accessMode`. This mode shall be one of the two following modes, defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 14: Lock Access Modes**

Access Mode	Description
SHARED_LOCK	Lock allowing shared access from multiple sources
ACCESS_READ	Synonym of the above, identical to SHARED_LOCK
EXCLUSIVE_LOCK	Exclusive lock, only allowing a single lock on the object
ACCESS_WRITE	Synonym of the above, identical to EXCLUSIVE_LOCK

The access mode `SHARED_LOCK` or `ACCESS_READ` allows multiple shared locks on the same object. This type of lock should be preferred. The access mode `EXCLUSIVE_LOCK` or `ACCESS_WRITE` only allows a single, exclusive lock on the same object.

The return code `lock` identifies the lock. It is non-ZERO (see 2.3) on success, or ZERO on failure. In either case, `IoErr()` is set to 0 indicating success, or an error code on failure.

**No Wildcards Here!** Note that this function does not attempt to resolve wild cards, similar to `Open()`. All characters in the path are literals.

### 5.1.2 Duplicating a Lock

The `DupLock()` function replicates a given *lock*, returning a copy of the *lock* given as argument. This requires that the original *lock* is a *shared lock*, and it returns a *shared lock* if successful.

```
lock = DupLock( lock )
D0                                D1
```

```
BPTR DupLock(BPTR)
```

This function copies the (shared) lock passed in as `lock` and returns a copy of it in `lock`. In case of error, it returns ZERO, and then `IoErr()` returns an error code identifying the error. On success, `IoErr()` is reset. It is not possible to copy an *exclusive lock*.

### 5.1.3 Obtaining the Parent of an Object

The `ParentDir()` function obtains a *shared lock* on the directory containing the locked object passed in. For directories, this is the parent directory, for files, this is the directory containing the file.

```
newlock = ParentDir( lock )
D0                                D1
```

```
BPTR ParentDir(BPTR)
```

The `lock` argument identifies the object whose parent is to be found; the function returns a *lock* on the directory containing the object. If such parent does not exist, or an error occurs, the function returns ZERO. The former case applies to the topmost directory of a file system, or the ZERO lock itself.

To distinguish the two cases, the caller should check the `IoErr()` function; if this function returns 0, then no error occurred and the passed in object is topmost and no parent exists. If it returns a non-zero error code, then the file system failed to identify the parent directory.

---

### 5.1.4 Creating a Directory

The `CreateDir()` object creates a new empty directory whose name is given by the last component of the path passed in. It does not create any intermediate directories between the first component of the path and its last component, such directories need potentially be created manually by multiple calls to this function.

```
lock = CreateDir( name )
D0                      D1
```

```
BPTR CreateDir(STRPTR)
```

The `name` argument is the path to the new directory to be created; that is, the directory given by the last component of the path (see section 4.3) will be created. If successful, the function returns an *exclusive lock* in `lock`, otherwise it returns `ZERO`.

In either case, `IoErr()` is set to either an error code, or to 0 in case the function succeeds.

Note that not all file systems support directories, i.e. flat file systems (see section 4.3.4) do not.

### 5.1.5 Releasing a Lock

Once you are done with a *lock* and no part of your program is using it anymore, you should release it to allow other processes or functions to access or modify the locked object. Note that setting the `CurrentDir()` to a particular lock implies usage of the lock, i.e. the lock installed as `CurrentDir()` shall not be unlocked.

```
UnLock( lock )
D1
```

```
void UnLock(BPTR)
```

This function releases the *lock* passed in as `lock` argument. Passing `ZERO` as a lock is fine and performs no activity.

### 5.1.6 Changing the Type of a Lock

Once a *lock* has been granted, it is possible to change the nature of the lock, either from `EXCLUSIVE_LOCK` to `SHARED_LOCK`, or — if this is the only *lock* on the object — vice versa.

```
success = ChangeMode( type, object, newmode )
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL ChangeMode(ULONG, BPTR, ULONG)
```

This function changes the access mode of `object` whose type is identified by `type` to the access mode `newmode`. The relation between `type` and the nature of the object shall be as in table 15, where the types are defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 15: Object Types for ChangeMode()**

type	object Type
CHANGE_LOCK	object shall be a <i>lock</i>
CHANGE_FH	object shall be a <i>file handle</i>

---

The argument `newmode` shall be one of the modes indicated in Table 14, i.e. `SHARED_LOCK` to make either the file or the lock accessible for shared access, and `EXCLUSIVE_LOCK` for exclusive access.

On success, the function returns a non-zero result code, and `IoErr()` is set to 0. Otherwise, the function returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to an appropriate error code.

Unfortunately, this function may not work reliable for *file handles* under all versions of AmigaDOS. In particular, the *RAM-Handler* does not interpret `newmode` correctly for `CHANGE_FH`.

### 5.1.7 Comparing two Locks

The `SameLock()` function compares two locks and returns information whether they are identical, or at least correspond to objects on the same volume.

```
value = SameLock(lock1, lock2)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
LONG SameLock(BPTR, BPTR)
```

This function compares `lock1` with `lock2`. The return code, all of them defined in `dos/dos.h`, can be one of the following:

**Table 16: Lock Comparison Return Code**

Return Code	Description
<code>SAME_LOCK</code>	Both locks are on the same object
<code>SAME_VOLUME</code>	Locks are on different objects, but on the same volume
<code>LOCK_DIFFERENT</code>	Locks are on different volumes

This function does not set `IoErr()` consistently, and callers cannot depend on its value. Furthermore, the function does not compare a `ZERO` lock with lock on the boot volume, e.g. `SYS:` as identical. It is recommended not to pass in the `ZERO` lock for either `lock1` or `lock2`.

### 5.1.8 Compare to Locks for the Device

The `SameDevice()` function attempts to check whether two locks refer to two file systems that reside on the same physical device, even if on potentially different partitions.

```
same = SameDevice(lock1, lock2)
D0      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL SameDevice(BPTR, BPTR)
```

The `SameDevice()` function takes two *Locks* `lock1` and `lock2` and checks whether they were created by file systems that operate on the same physical device, even if the two *Locks* refer to different file systems or different partitions. Only the *exec device* and the corresponding unit is compared, that is, this function is not able to determine whether the locks refer to file systems on the same or different physical volumes.

This function returns a non-zero result if the resonsible file systems operate on the same *exec device*, and it returns 0 otherwise. If the function is not able to identify the file systems, or cannot identify the lower level *exec device* on which the file systems operate, the function also returns 0.

A possible use case of this function is to determine whether the involved *file systems* can operate in parallel without imposing speed penalties due to conflicting medium accesses. Thus, copy functions may be optimized depending on the result as no intermediate buffering need to be used if source and destination are on different physical devices.

This function does not set `IoErr()`, even if it cannot determine the device a file system operates on.

---

## 5.2 Locks and Files

Each *file handle* is associated to a lock to the file that has been opened. The type of the *lock* depends on the access mode the file has been opened with, table 17 for how lock types and access modes relate.

**Table 17: Lock and File Access Modes**

Access Mode	Lock Type
MODE_OLDFILE	SHARED_LOCK
MODE_READWRITE	SHARED_LOCK
MODE_NEWFILE	EXCLUSIVE_LOCK

The association of `MODE_READWRITE` to `SHARED_LOCK` is unfortunate, and due to a defect in the *RAM-Handler* implementation in AmigaDOS 2.0 which was then later copied into the *Fast File System* implementation. Exclusive access to a file without deleting its contents can, however, be established through the `OpenFromLock()` function passing in an *exclusive lock* to the function as argument.

### 5.2.1 Duplicate the Implicit Lock of a File

The `DupLockFromFH()` function performs a copy of a lock implicit to a *file handle* of an opened file. For this to succeed, the file must be opened in the mode `MODE_OLDFILE` or `MODE_READWRITE`. Files opened with `MODE_NEWFILE` are based on an implicit *exclusive lock* that cannot be copied.

```
lock = DupLockFromFH(fh)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BPTR DupLockFromFH(BPTR)
```

This function returns a copy of the lock the *file handle* `fh` is based on and returns it in `lock`. In case of failure, `ZERO` is returned. In either case, `IoErr()` is set to either 0 in case of success, or an error code on failure.

### 5.2.2 Obtaining the Directory a File is Located in

The `ParentOfFH()` function obtains a *shared lock* on the parent directory of the file associated to the *file handle* passed in. That is, this function it is roughly equivalent to first obtaining a lock on the file through `DupLockFromFile()`, and then calling `ParentDir()` on it, except that this function also applies to files opened in the `MODE_NEWFILE` mode.

```
lock = ParentOfFH(fh)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BPTR ParentOfFH(BPTR)
```

This function returns in `lock` a shared lock on the directory containing the file opened through the *file handle*. It returns `ZERO` on failure or in case there is no parent directory because `fh` already represents the root directory.

In either case, `IoErr()` is set, namely to 0 in case of success or to an error code on failure. Attempting to obtain the parent of the root directory is not a failure case, and thus `IoErr()` is set to 0 in this case.

---

### 5.2.3 Opening a File from a Lock

The `OpenFromLock()` function uses a *lock* and opens the locked file, returning a *file handle*. If the lock is associated to a directory, the function fails. The *lock* passed in is then absorbed into the *file handle* and shall not be unlocked. It will be released by the file system upon closing the file.

```
fh = OpenFromLock(lock)
D0                                D1
```

```
BPTR OpenFromLock(BPTR)
```

This function attempts to open the object locked by *lock* as file, and creates the *file handle* *fh* from it. It fails in case the *lock* argument belongs to a directory and not a file.

In case of success, the *lock* becomes an implicit part of the *file handle* and shall not be unlocked by the caller anymore. In case of failure, the function returns `ZERO` and the *lock* remains available to the caller, and also needs to be unlocked at a later time. In either case, `IoErr()` is set, to an error code in case of failure, or 0 on success.

This function allows to open files in exclusive mode without deleting its contents. For that, obtain an *exclusive lock* on the file to be opened, and then call `OpenFromLock()` as second step.

### 5.2.4 Get Information on the State of the Medium

The `Info()` function returns information on the medium on which the locked object is located, and fills an `InfoData` structure with the status of the *file system*. If it is instead intended to retrieve information on the currently inserted volume, i.e. without requiring a *lock*, direct communication with the *file system* on the packet level is required by sending a packet type of `ACTION_DISK_INFO`, see section 12.7.3.

```
success = Info(lock, parameterBlock)
D0 D1    D2
```

```
BOOL Info(BPTR, struct InfoData *)
```

The *lock* is a *lock* to an arbitrary object on the volume to be queried; its only purpose is to identify it. The function fills out an `InfoData` structure that shall be aligned to long-word boundaries.

This structure is defined in `dos/dos.h` and reads as follows:

```
struct InfoData {
    LONG    id_NumSoftErrors;
    LONG    id_UnitNumber;
    LONG    id_DiskState;
    LONG    id_NumBlocks;
    LONG    id_NumBlocksUsed;
    LONG    id_BytesPerBlock;
    LONG    id_DiskType;
    BPTR    id_VolumeNode;
    LONG    id_InUse;
};
```

The elements of this structure are interpreted as follows:

`id_NumSoftErrors` counts the number of read or write errors the file system detected during its life-time. It is not particularly bound to the currently inserted medium.

`id_UnitNumber` is the unit number of the exec device on which the *file system* operates, and hence into which the volume identified by the *lock* is inserted.

`id_DiskState` identifies the status of the file system, whether the volume is writable and whether it is consistent. Disk states are also defined in `dos/dos.h` and set according to the following table:

**Table 18: Disk States**

Disk State	Description
ID_WRITE_PROTECTED	The volume is write protected
ID_VALIDATING	The volume is currently validating
ID_VALIDATED	The volume is consistent and read- and writeable

A volume in the state `ID_WRITE_PROTECTED` has been identified as consistent, but does not accept modifications, either because the medium is physically write-protected, or because it has been locked by software, see section 12.7.7.

A volume gets the state `ID_VALIDATING` if its *file system* detected inconsistencies; some file systems, including the Fast File System, then trigger a consistency check of the volume. The Fast File System rebuilds the bitmap of the volume that describes which blocks are allocated and which are free. It cannot fix more severe errors and then presents a requester to the user indicating the problem. During validation, file systems typically refuse to accept write requests. If validation cannot bring the volume into a consistent state, the disk state will remain `ID_VALIDATING`.

A volume in state `ID_VALIDATED` is consistent and read- and writeable.

`id_NumBlocks` is the total number of blocks into which the medium is divided. This includes both free and occupied blocks, and thus indicates the total capacity of the volume. This number is not necessarily constant. The RAM-Handler adjusts this value according to the available memory; RAM-Handler versions prior version 45 set this to 0. In means, in particular, that care needs to be taken when the disk fill state in percent is computed by a dividing the number of used blocks by this number.

`id_NumBlocksUsed` is the number of blocks occupied by file system on the disk. As it is dependent on the file system how many blocks it needs in addition to the actual payload data, no conclusion can be derived from this number whether a particular file fits on the volume. RAM-Handlers prior to release 45 did not even fill this with a useful value.

`id_BytesPerBlock` is the number of bytes available for payload in a physical block of the medium, and not necessarily the physical block size into which the storage medium is divided. Some file systems require additional bytes of the physical block for administrating files. Even the RAM-Handler segments data into blocks and provides in this member the number of data bytes stored there.

`id_DiskType` identifies whether the *file system* that generated the `lock` argument can identify the disk structure and claims responsibility for it. Unlike what the name suggests, it is *not* a general identifier of the type *file system* itself and shall not be used to identify a particular file system. For legacy reasons, the various flavours of the Fast File System also leave their identifier here, though this principle should not be carried over to new designs. Instead, a file system should rather return the generic `ID_DOS_DISK` if it finds a medium for which it claims responsibility. Even if the file system recognizes the disk structure as one of its own, it is possible that the structure is considered inconsistent by setting `id_DiskState` to `ID_VALIDATING`.

AmigaDOS currently defines the following disk types in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 19: Disk Types**

Disk Type	Description
ID_NO_DISK_PRESENT	No disk is inserted
ID_UNREADABLE_DISK	Reading disk data failed at exec device level
ID_DOS_DISK	The disk is in a format the file system attempts to interpret
ID_NOT_REALLY_DOS	While physically accessible, the disk structure is invalid
ID_KICKSTART_DISK	A disk containing an A1000 kickstart

' BUSY '	The file system is currently inhibited
' CON\0 '	Not a file system, but the Con-Handler
' RAW\0 '	Not a file system, but the Con-Handler
All others	The first long word of the first block of the medium

As mentioned above `ID_DOS_DISK` is the `id_DiskType` *file systems* should return in case they recognize the structure and attempt to interpret them. Despite this fact, the Fast File System returns erroneously the `dostype` as reported in table 28.

**Not the DosType** While mount lists include a `DOSTYPE` field that identifies the *file system* uniquely, the `id_DiskType` member *does not* represent this `DOSTYPE`. That it coincides with the `DOSTYPE` for the variants of the FFS is a historical error that shall not be mirrored by new *file system* designs. It is therefore advisable to check the first 3 bytes of the `id_DiskType` for the characters `DOS`, and if so, assume that the disk is valid and can be interpreted by the *file system*. Unfortunately, some third-party designs do not follow this convention.

`ID_NOT_REALLY_DOS` and `ID_UNREADABLE_DISK` both indicate disks the file system cannot make use of. The first because the logical structure of the disk content cannot be interpreted, and the second because the underlying exec device cannot gain access to the contents of the blocks, i.e. the physical layer of the disk is not readable.

' BUSY ' is a four-character constant that is not documented in `dos/dos.h`, but returned whenever a file system has been inhibited, i.e. its access to the physical layer has been stopped. Thus, any attempt to access this file system is currently suspended, probably because some program attempts to operate on the medium on a lower level. Disk editors or disk salvage programs will typically make use of this practise to avoid file systems from touching the medium while they work on it.

' CON\0 ' and ' RAW\0 ' are indicators left by the Con-Handler (or console-type handlers) which use the `InfoData` structure for other purposes, see section 11.3. As they do not (in general) hand out locks, the `Info()` function will usually not return these two types, but direct handler communication with a packet type of `ACTION_DISK_INFO` can.

All other types are returned in case the *file system* cannot interpret the disk structure, and are then copied from the first 4 bytes of the medium or partition into `id_DiskType`. In case these bytes are all 0, it is changed to `ID_NOT_REALLY_DOS`.

`id_VolumeNode` in the `InfoData` structure is a `BPTR` to the `DosList` structure corresponding to the volume on which the object identified by the `lock` is located. For this structure, see section 7.

`id_InUse` counts the number of locks and files currently open on the medium identified by `lock`.

This function returns a non-zero result code on success and sets then `IoErr()` to 0. On failure, it returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to an error code.

## 5.2.5 The struct FileLock

*Locks* have been so far been opaque identifiers; in fact, they are *BPTRs* to a `struct FileLock` that is defined in `dos/dosextens.h`.

```
#include <dos/dosextens.h>
lock = Lock("S:Startup-Sequence", SHARED_LOCK);
struct FileLock *flock = BADDR(lock);
```

While this structure is defined there, it is not allocated by the *dos.library* but by the *file system* itself. The file system may therefore allocate a structure that is somewhat larger and can have additional members that are not shown here.



---

```
struct FileLock {
    BPTR          fl_Link;
    LONG          fl_Key;
    LONG          fl_Access;
    struct MsgPort * fl_Task;
    BPTR          fl_Volume;
};
```

Most of the members of this structure are of no practical value, and they should not be interpreted in any way. What is listed here is the information callers can depend upon.

The `fl_Link` member has no practical value for users; the *file system* can use it to keep multiple links on object on the same volume in a list. This is particularly important if the volume is ejected from its drive and another file system needs to take over the *locks* if the volume is later inserted into another drive.

The `fl_Key` member can be used by the file system to identify the object that has been locked. It may not necessarily be an integer, but can be any data type, potentially a pointer to some internal management object. It shall not be interpreted in any particular way.

The `fl_Access` member keeps the access type of the lock and reflects the `accessMode` parameter of the `Lock()` function. It is either `SHARED_LOCK` or `EXCLUSIVE_LOCK`.

The `fl_Task` member points to the message port of the file system for processing requests on the lock. Any activity on the lock goes through this port.

The `fl_Volume` is a *BPTR* to the *volume node* on the *Device list*. The *volume node* identifies the volume the locked object is located on. Section 7 provides further information on this list and its entries.



---

## Chapter 6

# Working with Directories

As objects on a file system can be identified by a name, these names need to be stored somewhere on the data carrier. This object is called a *directory*. While a flat file system only contains a single, topmost directory which then contains all files, a directory of a hierarchical file system can contain other directories, thus creating a *tree* of nested objects, see also section 4.3.4.

AmigaDOS provides functions to list the directory contents, to move objects in the file system hierarchy or change their name, and to access adjust their metadata, such as comments, protection bits, or creation dates.

AmigaDOS also supports *links*, that is, entries in the file system that point to some other object in the same, or some other file system. Therefore, links circumvent the hierarchy otherwise imposed by the tree structure of the file system.

### 6.1 Examining Objects on File Systems

Given a lock on a file or a directory, further information on such an object can be requested by the `Examine()` function of the `dos.library`. To read multiple directory entries at once and minimizing the calling overhead, `ExAll()` provides an advantage that is, however, harder to use, but also provides options to filter entries.

**May go away while you look!** As AmigaDOS is a multitasking operating system, the directory may change under your feed while scanning; in particular, entries you received through the above functions may not be up to date, may have been deleted already when the above functions return, or new entries may have been added the current scan will not reach. While a *Lock* on a directory prevents that this directory goes away, it does *not* prevent other processes to add or remove objects to this directory, so beware.

While `ExAll()` seems to provide an advantage by reading multiple directory entries in one go, the AmigaOS ROM file system does usually not profit from this feature, at least not unless a directory cache is used. The latter has, however, other drawbacks and should be avoided for different reasons, see section 11.7. Actually, `ExAll()` is (even more) complex to implement, and it is probably not surprising that multiple file systems have issues. The `dos.library` provides an `ExAll()` implementation for those file systems that do not implement it themselves, but even this (ROM-based) implementation had issues in the past. Therefore, `ExAll()` has probably less to offer than it seems.

`Examine()` and `ExNext()` fill a `FileInfoBlock` structure that collects information on an examined object in a directory. It is defined in `dos/dos.h` and reads as follows:

```
struct FileInfoBlock {  
    LONG    fib_DiskKey;
```

```

LONG    fib_DirEntryType;
char    fib_FileName[108];
LONG    fib_Protection;
LONG    fib_EntryType;
LONG    fib_Size;
LONG    fib_NumBlocks;
struct DateStamp fib_Date;
char    fib_Comment[80];
UWORD   fib_OwnerUID;
UWORD   fib_OwnerGID;
char    fib_Reserved[32];
};

```

The meaning of the members of this structure are as follows:

`fib_DiskKey` is a file system internal identifier of the object. It shall not be used, and programs shall not make any assumptions on its meaning.

`fib_DirEntryType` identifies the type of an object. Object types are defined in `dos/dosextens.h`, replicated in table 20:

**Table 20: Directory Entry Types**

Value of <code>fib_DirEntryType</code>	Description
<code>ST_SOFTLINK</code>	Object is a soft link to another object
<code>ST_LINKDIR</code>	Object is a hard link to a directory
<code>ST_LINKFILE</code>	Object is a hard link to a file

All other types  $> 0$  indicate directories, and all other types  $< 0$  indicate files. Section 6.4 provides more details on soft links and hard links.

`fib_FileName` is the name of the object as NUL terminated string.

`fib_Protection` are the protection bits of the object. It defines which operations can be performed on it. The following protection bits are currently defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 21: Protection Bits**

Protection Bits	Description
<code>FIBB_DELETE</code>	If this bit is 0, the object can be deleted.
<code>FIBB_EXECUTE</code>	If this bit is 0, the file is an executable binary.
<code>FIBB_WRITE</code>	If this bit is 0, the file can be written to.
<code>FIBB_READ</code>	If this bit is 0, the file content can be read.
<code>FIBB_ARCHIVE</code>	This bit is set to 0 on every write access.
<code>FIBB_PURE</code>	If 1, the executable is reentrant and can be made resident.
<code>FIBB_SCRIPT</code>	If 1, the file is a script.
<code>FIBB_HOLD</code>	If 1, the executable is made resident on first execution.

The flags `FIBB_DELETE` to `FIBB_READ` are shown inverted in the output of most tools, i.e. they are shown active if the corresponding flag is 0, i.e. a particular protection function is *not* active. The `FIBB_READ` and `FIBB_WRITE` bits were ignored by early implementations of the ROM *file system*. This was fixed in release 36.

The `FIBB_EXECUTE` flag is only interpreted by the *Shell* (see section 13) and the Workbench; if the bit is 1, the *Shell* and the Workbench refuse to load the file as command or program.

The `FIBB_ARCHIVE` flag is typically used by archival software. Such software will set this flag upon archiving the flag, whereas the file system will reset the flag when writing to or modifying a file, or when

---

creating new files. The archiving software is thus able to learn which files had been altered since the last backup.

The `FIBB_PURE` flag indicates an additional property of executable binaries; if the flag is set, the binaries do not alter their segments and their code can be loaded in *RAM* and stay there to be executed from multiple processes in parallel. This avoids loading the binary multiple times. The *Shell* command `resident` can load such binaries into *RAM* for future usage.

The `FIBB_SCRIPT` flag indicates whether a file is a *Shell* or an *ARexx* script. If this flag is set, and the script is given as command to the *Shell*, it will forward this file to a suitable script interpreter, such as *ARexx* or *Execute*.

The `FIBB_HOLD` flag indicates whether a command shall be made resident upon loading it the first time. If the flag is 1, and the shell loads the file as executable binary, and the `FIBB_PURE` bit is also set, the file is kept in *RAM* and stays there for future execution.

The `fib_EntryType` member shall not be used; it can be identical to the `fib_DirEntryType`, but its use is not documented.

The `fib_Size` member indicates the size of the file in bytes. It should have probably be defined as an unsigned type. Its value is undefined for directories.

The `fib_NumBlocks` member indicates how many blocks a file occupies on the storage medium, if such a concept applies. Disks and harddisk organize their storage into blocks of equal size, and the file system manages these blocks to store data on the medium. The number of blocks can be meaningless for directories.

The `fib_Date` member indicates when the file was changed last; depending on the file system, the date may also indicate when the last modification was made for a directory, such as creating or deleting a file within. Which operations exactly trigger a change of a directory is file system dependent. The `DateStamp` structure is specified in section 3.1.1.

The `fib_Comment` member contains a NUL terminated string to a comment on the file. Not all file systems support comments. The comment has no particular meaning, it is only shown by some *Shell* commands or utilities and can be set by the user.

The `fib_OwnerUID` and `fib_OwnerGID` are filled in by some multi-user aware file systems. The AmigaDOS ROM file systems do not support these fields, and no provision is made to moderate access to a particular file according to an owner or its group. The two concepts are alien to AmigaDOS itself.

The `fib_Reserved` field is currently unused and shall not be accessed.

### 6.1.1 Retrieving Information on an Directory Entry

The `Examine()` function retrieves information on the object identified by a *lock* and fills a `FileInfoBlock` from it.

```
success = Examine( lock, FileInfoBlock )
D0                      D1          D2

BOOL Examine(BPTR, struct FileInfoBlock *)
```

This function fills out the `FileInfoBlock` providing information on the object identified by *lock*. The structure is discussed in section 6.1 in more detail. The function returns non-zero in case of success, and 0 for failure. In either case, `IoErr()` is filled, by 0 on success, on an error code on failure.

**Keep it Aligned!** As with most BCPL structures, the `FileInfoBlock` shall be aligned to a long-word boundary. For that reason, it should be allocated from the heap. Section 2.3 provides some additional hints on how to allocate such structures.

---

## 6.1.2 Retrieving Information from a File Handle

While `Examine()` retrieves information a locked object, `ExamineFH()` retrieves the same information from a *file handle*, or rather from the *lock* implicit to the handle.

```
success = ExamineFH(fh, fib)
D0                      D1  D2
```

```
BOOL ExamineFH(BPTR, struct FileInfoBlock *)
```

This function examines the object accessed through the *file handle* `fh`, and returns the information in the *FileInfoBlock*. Note that the file content and thus its change can be changed any time, and thus the information returned by this function may not be fully up-to-date, see also the general information in section 6.1.

This function returns non-zero in case of success, or 0 on error. In either case, `IoErr()` is set, namely to 0 on success and to an error code otherwise.

As for `Examine()`, the *FileInfoBlock* shall be aligned to a 4-byte boundary.

## 6.1.3 Scanning through a Directory Step by Step

The `ExNext()` function iterates through entries of a directory, retrieving information on one object after another contained in this directory. For scanning through a directory, first `Lock()` the directory itself. Then use `Examine()` on the *lock*. This provides information on the directory itself.

To learn about the objects in the directory, iteratively call `ExNext()` on the same *lock* and on the same *FileInfoBlock* until the function returns `DOSFALSE`. Each iteration provides then information on the subsequent element in the directory of the *lock*.

```
success = ExNext( lock, FileInfoBlock )
D0                      D1  D2
```

```
BOOL ExNext(BPTR, struct FileInfoBlock *)
```

This call returns information on the subsequent entry of a directory identified by *lock* and deposits this information in the *FileInfoBlock* described in 6.1. The *lock* shall be a *lock* on a directory, in particular.

On success, `ExNext()` returns non-zero. If there is no further element in the scanned directory, or on an error, it returns `DOSFALSE`. In either event, `IoErr()` is set, namely to 0 in case of success, or to an error code otherwise.

At the end of the directory, the function returns `DOSFALSE`, and the error code as obtained from `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`.

**Same Lock, Same FIB** To iterate through a directory, a *lock* to the same directory as passed into `Examine()` shall be used. Actually, the same *lock* should be used, and the same *FileInfoBlock* should be used. As important state information is associated to the *lock* and *FileInfoBlock*, `UnLock()`ing the original *lock* and obtaining a new *lock* on the same directory loses this information; using a different *FileInfoBlock* also loses this state information, requiring the *file system* to rebuild this state information, which is not only complex, but also slows down scanning the directory. In particular, you shall *not* use the same *FileInfoBlock* you used for scanning one directory for scanning a second, different directory as this can confuse the *file system*. Also, as for `Examine()`, the *FileInfoBlock* shall be aligned to a long-word boundary.

---

### 6.1.4 Examine Multiple Entries at once

While scanning a directory with `ExNext()` requires one interaction with the *file system* for each entry and is therefore potentially slow, `ExAll()` retrieves as many entries as possible in one go. Whether a particular file system can take advantage of such a block transfer is a matter of its original organization, however.

```
continue = ExAll(lock, buffer, size, type, control)
D0                D1      D2      D3      D4      D5
```

```
BOOL ExAll(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG, LONG, struct ExAllControl *)
```

This function examines as many directory entries belonging to the directory identified by `lock` as fit into the buffer `buffer` of `size` bytes. This buffer is filled by a linked list of `ExAllData` structures, see below for their layout. `type` determines which elements of `ExAllData` is filled.

The `lock` shall be a lock on the directory to be examined. It shall not be `ZERO`.

To start a directory scan, first allocate a `ExAllControl` structure through `AllocDosObject()`, see 14.1.1. This structure looks as follows:

```
struct ExAllControl {
    ULONG    eac_Entries;
    ULONG    eac_LastKey;
    UBYTE    *eac_MatchString;
    struct Hook *eac_MatchFunc;
};
```

`eac_Entries` is provided by the *file system* upon returning from `ExAll` and then contains the number of entries that fit into the `buffer`. Note that this number may well be 0, which does not need to indicate termination of the scan. Callers shall instead check the return code of `ExAll()` to learn on whether scanning may continue or not.

`eac_LastKey` is a *file system* internal identifier of the current state of the directory scanner. This member shall not be interpreted nor modified in any way.

`eac_MatchString` filters the directory entry names, and returns only those that match the wild card pointed to by this member. This entry shall be either `NULL`, or a pre-parsed pattern as generated by `ParsePatternNoCase()`.

`eac_MatchFunc` is a even more flexible option to filter directory entries. It shall be either `NULL` or point to a `struct Hook` as defined in `utility/hooks.h`. If set, then for each directory entry the hook function `h_Entry` is called as follows:

```
match = (hook->h_Entry)(struct Hook *hook, LONG *datap,
D0                                a0                a2

                        struct ExAllData *buf )
                                a1
```

that is, register `a0` points to the called hook, register `a1` to the data buffer that is part of the buffer supplied by the caller of `ExAll()` and which is already filled in with a candidate `ExAllData` structure to be checked for acceptance. Register `a2` points to a `LONG`, which is a copy of the `type` argument supplied to `ExAll()`. If the hook function returns non-zero, a match is assumed and the directory entry remains in the output buffer. Otherwise, the data is discarded.

`eac_MatchFunc` and `eac_MatchString` shall not be filled in simultaneously, only one of the two shall be non-`NULL`. If both members are `NULL`, all entries match.

The buffer supplied to `ExAll()` is filled by a singly linked list of `ExAllData` structures that look as follows:

```

struct ExAllData {
    struct ExAllData *ed_Next;
    UBYTE  *ed_Name;
    LONG    ed_Type;
    ULONG   ed_Size;
    ULONG   ed_Prot;
    ULONG   ed_Days;
    ULONG   ed_Mins;
    ULONG   ed_Ticks;
    UBYTE  *ed_Comment;    /* strings will be after last used field */
    UWORD   ed_OwnerUID;   /* new for V39 */
    UWORD   ed_OwnerGID;
};

```

The members of this structure are as follows:

`ed_Next` points to the next `ExAllData` structure within buffer, or `NULL` for the last structure filled in.

`ed_Name` points to the file name of a directory entry, and supplies the same name as `fib_FileName` as in the `FileInfoBlock`.

`ed_Type` identifies the type of the entry. It identifies directory entries according to table 20 and corresponds to `fib_DirEntryType`.

`ed_Size` is the size of the directory element for files. It is undefined for directories. It corresponds to `fib_Size`.

`ed_Prot` collects the protection bits of the directory entry according to table 21 and by that corresponds to `fib_Protection`.

`ed_Days`, `ed_Mins` and `ed_Ticks` identifies the date of the last change to the directory element. It corresponds to `fib_Date`. Section 6.2.5 defines these elements more rigorously.

`ed_Comment` points to a potential comment on the directory entry and corresponds to `fib_Comment`.

`ed_OwnerUID` and `ed_OwnerGID` contain potential user and group IDs if the file system is able to provide such information. All the AmigaDOS native file systems do not.

Which members of the `ExAllData` structure are filled in is selected by the `type` argument. It shall be selected according to table 22, whose elements are defined in `dos/exall.h`:

**Table 22: Type Values**

Type	Filled Members
ED_NAME	Fill only <code>ed_Next</code> and <code>ed_Name</code>
ED_TYPE	Fill all members up to <code>ed_Type</code>
ED_SIZE	Fill all members up to <code>ed_Size</code>
ED_PROTECTION	Fill all members up to <code>ed_Prot</code>
ED_DATE	Fill all members up to <code>ed_Ticks</code> , i.e. up to the date
ED_COMMENT	Fill all members up to <code>ed_Comment</code>
ED_OWNER	Fill all members up to <code>ed_OwnerGID</code>

The return code `continue` is non-zero in case the directory contents was too large to fit into the supplied buffer completely. In such a case, either `ExAll()` shall be called again to read additional entries, or `ExAllEnd()` shall be called to terminate the call and release all internal state information.

If `ExAll()` is called again, the `lock` shall be identical to the `lock` passed into the first call, and not only a copy on the same directory as for the first call.



---

The return code `continue` is `DOSFALSE` in case the scan result fit entirely into `buffer` or in case an error occurred.

Regardless of the return code, `IoErr()` is set to 0 in case `continue` is non-zero, or to an error code otherwise. If the error code is `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`, then `ExAll()` terminated because all entries have been read and scanning the directory completed. In this case, `ExAllEnd()` should not be called.

Not all file systems — actually, none delivered with AmigaOs — support `ED_OWNER`. If `continue` is `DOSFALSE` and `IoErr()` is `ERROR_BAD_NUMBER`, try to reduce `type` and call `ExAll()` again.

Some file systems do not implement `ExAll()` themselves; in such a case, the *dos.library* provides a fallback implementation keeping `ExAll()` workable regardless of the completeness of the target *file system*.

### 6.1.5 Aborting a Directory Scan

To abort an `ExAll()` scan through a directory, `ExAllEnd()` shall be called to explicitly release all state information associated to the scan. This is unlike an item-by-item scan through `ExNext()` which does not require explicit termination.

```
ExAllEnd(lock, buffer, size, type, control)
          D1      D2      D3      D4      D5
```

```
void ExAllEnd(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG, LONG, struct ExAllControl *)
```

This function aborts an `ExAll()` driven directory scan before it terminates due to an error or due to the end of the directory, i.e. whenever `ExAll()` returns with a non-zero result code which would indicate that the function should be called again.

`ExAll()` may also be the fastest way to terminate a directory scan once it is running, for example on network file systems where the scan may proceed offline on a separate server. The arguments to `ExAllEnd()` shall be exactly those supplied to `ExAll()` which it is supposed to terminate. Note in particular that the `lock` shall be identical to the `lock` passed into `ExAll()`, and not just a `lock` to the same object.

## 6.2 Modifying Directory Entries

While the functions in section 6.1 read directory entries, the functions listed here modify the directory and its entries.

### 6.2.1 Deleting Objects on the File System

The `DeleteFile()` function removes — despite its name — not only files, but also directories and links from a directory. For this to succeed, the object need to allow deletion through its protection bits (see section 6.1), and no *locks* are held on the object (see section 5). To be able to delete a directory, this directory needs to be empty in addition.

```
success = DeleteFile( name )
          D0              D1
```

```
BOOL DeleteFile(STRPTR)
```

This function deletes the object given by the last component of the path passed in as `name`. It returns non-zero in case of success, or 0 in case of error. In either case, `IoErr()` is set, namely 0 on success or an error code in case of failure.

---

## 6.2.2 Rename or Relocate an Object

The `Rename()` function changes the name of an object, or even relocates it from one directory to another.

```
success = Rename( oldName, newName )
               D0          D1      D2
```

```
BOOL Rename (STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function renames and optionally relocates an object between directories. The `oldName` is the current path to the object, and its last component is the current name of the object to relocate and rename; `newName` is the target path and its last component the target name of the object. The target directory may be different from the directory the object is currently located in, and the target name may be different from the current name. However, current path and target path shall be on the same volume, and the target directory shall not already contain an object of the target name; otherwise, current and target path may be either relative or absolute paths.

A third condition is that if the object to relocate is a directory, then the target path shall not be a position within the object to relocate, i.e. you cannot move a directory into itself.

This function returns a boolean success indicator. It is non-zero on success, or 0 on error. In either case, `IoErr()` is set, to 0 on success, or to an error code otherwise.

## 6.2.3 Set the File Comment

The `SetComment()` function sets the comment of an directory entry, provided the *file system* supports comments.

```
success = SetComment( name, comment )
               D0          D1      D2
```

```
BOOL SetComment (STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function sets the comment of the *file system* object whose path is given by `name` to `comment`. It depends on the file system whether or how long comments can grow. The maximum comment length AmigaDOS supports is 79 characters, due to the available space in the `FileInfoBlock` structure.

This function returns non-zero on success and 0 on error. In either case, the function sets `IoErr()` to 0 on success or to an error code otherwise.

## 6.2.4 Setting Protection Bits

The `SetProtection()` function modifies the protection bits of a *file system* object, i.e. either a file or a directory.

```
success = SetProtection( name, mask )
               D0  D1      D2
```

```
BOOL SetProtection (STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function sets the protection bits of the file system object `name` in the current directory to the combination given by `mask`. The protection bits are defined in `dos/dos.h` and their function is listed in table 21. The mask value corresponds to what `Examine()` returns in the `FileInfoBlock` structure in `fib_Protection`, see also section 6.1.

This function returns a non-zero result code on success, or zero on error. In either case, `IoErr()` is altered, either to 0 on success or to an error code otherwise.

---

### 6.2.5 Set the Modification Date

The `SetFileDate()` function sets the modification date of an object of a *file system*. Despite its name, the function can also set the modification date of directories and links if the file system supports them.

```
success = SetFileDate(name, date)
D0                      D1      D2

BOOL SetFileDate(STRPTR, struct DateStamp *)
```

This function adjusts the modification date of the *file system* object identified by path as given by `name` to date. The `DateStamp` structure is specified in section 3.1.1.

This function returns 0 on error or non-zero on success. In either case, `IoErr()` is set, either to 0 on success or to an error code otherwise.

Note that not all file systems may be able to set the date precisely to ticks, e.g. FAT has only a precision of 2 seconds. Some file systems may refuse to set the modification date if an object is exclusively locked, this is unfortunately not handled consistently.

### 6.2.6 Set User and Group ID

The `SetOwner()` function sets the user and group ID of an object within a *file system*. Both are concatenated to a 32-bit ID value. While this function seems to imply that the file system or AmigaDOS seems to offer some multi-user capability, this is not the case. User and group ID are purely metadata that is returned by the functions discussed in section 6.1, they usually ignore them. AmigaDOS has no concept of the current user of a *file system* and thus cannot decide whether a user is privileged to access an object on a file system. In fact, all ROM based file systems delivered with AmigaDOS do not support setting the user or group ID.

```
success = SetOwner( name, owner_info )
D0                      D1      D2

BOOL SetOwner (STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function sets the user and group ID of the *file system* object identified by the path in `name` to the value `owner_info`. How exactly the `owner_info` is encoded is *file system* specific. Typically, the owner is encoded in the topmost 16 bits, and the group in the least significant 16 bits.

This function returns a boolean success indicator which is non-zero on success and 0 on error. This function always sets `IoErr()`, either to 0 on success or to an error code otherwise.

## 6.3 Working with Paths

The *dos.library* contains a couple of support functions that help working with paths, see also section 4.3. What is different from the remaining functions is that the paths are not interpreted by the file system, but rather by the *dos.library* itself. This has several consequences: First, there is no 255 character limit as the path is never communicated into the *file system* as it was stated in section 4.3.3. Second, as the paths are constructed or interpreted by the library and not the *file system*, the syntax of the path is also that imposed by the library.

That is, for these functions to work, the separator between component must be the forwards slash ('/') and the parent directory must be indicated by an isolated single forward slash without a component upfront. This implies, in particular, that the involved file systems follow the conventions of AmigaDOS.

---

### 6.3.1 Find the Path From a Lock

The `NameFromLock()` function constructs a path to the locked object, i.e. if the constructed path is used to create a lock, it will refer to the same object.

```
success = NameFromLock(lock, buffer, len)
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL NameFromLock(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function constructs in `buffer` an absolute path that identifies the object locked by `lock`. At most `len` bytes will be filled into `buffer`, including NUL termination of the string. The created string is always NUL-terminated, even if the buffer is too short. However, in such a case the function returns 0, and `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`.

If the path cannot be constructed due to an error, `success` is also set to 0 and `IoErr()` is set to an error code. However, on success, `IoErr()` is not set consistently and cannot be depended upon. Possible cases of failure are that the volume the locked object is located on is currently not inserted in which case it will be requested. The `ZERO` lock is correctly interpreted, and resolves into the string `SYS:`. The `lock` remains valid after the call.

### 6.3.2 Find the Path from a File Handle

The `NameFromFH()` function constructs a path name from a *file handle*, i.e. it finds a path that is suitable to identify the file identified by the passed in *file handle*.

```
success = NameFromFH(fh, buffer, len)
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL NameFromFH(BPTR, STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function takes a *file handle* in `fh` and from that constructs an absolute path of the opened file in the supplied `buffer` capable of storing `len` bytes, including a terminating NUL byte.

On success, the function returns a non-zero return code and sets `IoErr()` to 0. On error, it returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to an error code. In particular, if the supplied buffer is not large enough, it is set to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`. Even in the latter case, the created path is NUL terminated, though not useful.

### 6.3.3 Append a Component to a Path

The `AddPart()` adds an absolute or relative path to an existing path; the resulting path is constructed as if the input path is a directory, and the attached (second) path identifies an object relative to this given directory. The function handles special cases such as the colon (':') and one or multiple leading slashes ( '/') correctly and are interpreted according to the rules explained in section 4.3: The colon identifies the root of the volume, and a leading slash the parent directory, upon which the trailing component of the input path is removed.

```
success = AddPart( dirname, filename, size )
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL AddPart( STRPTR, STRPTR, ULONG )
```

This function attaches to the existing path in `dirname` another path in `filename`. The constructed path will overwrite the buffer in `dirname`, which is able to hold `size` bytes, including a terminating NUL byte.

---

If the required buffer for the constructed path, including termination, is larger than `size` bytes, then the function returns 0 and `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`, and the input buffers are not altered. Otherwise, the function returns non-zero, and `IoErr()` is not altered.

This function does not interact with a *file system* and does not check whether the paths passed in correspond to accessible objects. The output path is constructed purely based on the AmigaDOS syntax of paths.

### 6.3.4 Find the last Component of a Path

The `FilePart()` function finds the last component of a path; the function name is a bit misleading since the last component does not necessarily correspond to a file, but could also correspond to a directory once identified by a *file system*. If there is only a single component in the path passed in, this component is returned. If the path passed in terminates with at least two slashes (‘/’) indicating that the last component is at least one level above, a pointer to the terminating slash is returned.

```
fileptr = FilePart( path )
D0                                     D1

STRPTR FilePart( STRPTR )
```

This function returns in `fileptr` a pointer to the last component of the path passed in as `path`, or a pointer to ‘/’ in case the input path terminates with at least two slashes.

This function cannot fail, and does not touch `IoErr()`.

### 6.3.5 Find End of Next-to-Last Component in a Path

The `PathPart()` identifies the end of the next-to-last component in a path. That is, if a NUL is injected at the pointer returned by this function, the resulting string starting at the passed in buffer corresponds to a path that corresponds to the directory containing the last component of the path. If the passed in path consists only of a single component, the returned pointer is identical to the pointer passed in.

```
fileptr = PathPart( path )
D0                                     D1

STRPTR PathPart( STRPTR )
```

This function returns in `fileptr` a pointer to the end of the next-to-last component of the path passed in. This function cannot fail and does not alter `IoErr()`.

The only difference between this function and `FilePath()` is that the latter advanced over a potential trailing slash. That is, if the last character of the input path of `PathPart()` would be a slash, then `PathPart()` would return a pointer to this slash, but `FilePath()` would advance beyond this slash. That is, the “file part” of a path that explicitly indicates a directory is empty, though the “path part” is the same path without the trailing slash.

### 6.3.6 Extract a Component From a Path

The `SplitName()` function extracts a component starting at a given offset from a path and delivers the component in a buffer. It also returns a new position at which to continue parsing a path. By iteratively calling `SplitName()`, a path can be resolved directory by directory, walking the *file system* tree from top to bottom.

---

```

newpos = SplitName(name, separator, buf, oldpos, size)
D0          D1      D2      D3      D4      D5

WORD SplitName(STRPTR, UBYTE, STRPTR, WORD, LONG)

```

This function scans a path as given by `name` starting from position `oldpos`. It copies all characters starting from this position into the buffer `buf` which is `size` bytes large, terminating either at the end of the path, or at `separator`, or when `buf` runs full. The component string constructed in `buf` is NUL-terminated in either case. If the provided separator is found, the separator is not copied into `buf`.

If no separator is found, the function returns `-1` as `newpos` indicating that the entire path has been scanned. Otherwise, it returns the offset into `name` at which the next component starts, i.e. the offset behind the found separator. These return values are also valid even in case the found component was too large to fit into `buf` and it had to be truncated.

This function does not set error codes, even in case `buf` was too small to hold the copied component.

The intended purpose of this function is to walk a path component by component, identifying the names of the directories as scanning proceeds. That is, if result code `newpos` is not negative, it should be passed back into this function as `oldpos` for a subsequent scan which then extracts the next component of the path. The main user of this function are therefore *file systems* when locating an object in the file system tree. For most AmigaDOS *file systems* the sparator is therefore the forwards slash (“/”).

## 6.4 Links

*Links* are tools to escape the tree-like hierarchy of directories, sub-directories and files. A *link* mirrors one object of a file system to another location such that if the object is changed using the path of one location, the changes are reflected in another location. Put differently, creating a link is like copying an object except that copy and original are always in sync. The storage for the payload data of a file is only required once, the link just points to the same data as the original directory entry. The same goes for links between directories: Whenever a new entry is made in one directory, the change also appears in the other.

AmigaDOS supports two (or, actually, three) types of links: *Hard-links* and *Soft-links*. The *RAM-Handler* supports a third type that will be discussed below. *Hard-links* establish the relation between two *file-system* objects on the same volume at the level of the file system. That is, whenever a link is accessed, the file system resolves the link, transparent to its user. While for the Amiga *Fast File System* and the *RAM-Handler* a *hard-link* is a distinct directory entry type, some file systems do not distinguish between the original object and a *hard-link* to it. For such file systems, the same payload data is just referenced by two directory entries. If the larger of a link is deleted on the *Fast File System* or the *RAM-Handler*, and (at least one) link to the object still exists, then (one of) the link(s) takes over and becomes the object itself. For other file systems, only a file system internal reference counter is decreased, and the payload data is removed only if this counter becomes zero.

*Soft-Links* work differently and can also be established between two different *file systems*, or between two different volumes. Here, the *soft-link* is a type of its own that contains the path of the referenced object. Unlike hard-links, soft-links are resolved through an interaction of the file-system and the *dos.library*.

The *dos.library* supports *Soft-Links* through the functions listed in Table 23:

**Table 23: Softlink aware functions**

Function	Purpose
Open ()	Open a file
Lock ()	Obtain access rights to an object
CreateDir ()	Create a directory
SetProtection ()	Modify protection bits
SetFileDate ()	Set the modification date of a file
DeleteFile ()	Delete an object on a file system
SetComment ()	Modify object comment
MakeLink ()	Create a link to an object
SetOwner ()	Set User and Group ID

All of the above functions take a path as its first argument. If the path consists of multiple components, i.e. identifies an object in a nested directory, and one of the intermediate components are *soft-links*, the *dos.library* will automatically resolve such an intermediate link and construct internally a resolved path to the link destination. Whether a soft-link at the last component is resolved is typically *file system* and function dependent. For example, `Open ()` will always resolve *soft-links*, but `Lock ()` or `SetProtection ()` may not and may instead affect the link, not the target object. `DeleteFile ()` will never resolve a link at the final component of the path, and will therefore delete the link, not the object linked to.

Note that `Rename ()` is currently not on the list supporting soft-links as part of the path to the object to be renamed, or as part of the target path.

If the target of a *soft-link* is deleted (and not the link itself), a link pointing to it becomes invalid, even though remains in the *file system*. Any attempt to resolve the link then, obviously, fails. AmigaDOS does not attempt to identify such invalid links. The same cannot happen for *hard-links*.

Soft-link resolution works as follows: Functions of the *dos.library* create a packet of a type that corresponds to the called function; these packets are specified in chapter 11. If the handler addressed by the packet determines that the path provided by the user contains a soft-link, it will respond with failure and the error code `ERROR_IS_SOFT_LINK`.

The *dos.library* then requests the handler to resolve the softlink via the `ReadLink()` function which sends a packet of type `ACTION_READ_LINK` back to the handler. The handler then computes from the original path and the target of the soft-link an updated path and provides it back to the *dos.library*, which then attempts again to perform the requested function. Details on how a file system merges a path and a softlink is provided in section 12.4.2. The additional round-trip is unfortunately necessary as the handler the soft-link points to may be a different handler than the one the soft-link is stored on.

This process continues until either the requested action could be performed, or a maximum number of attempts failed. Currently, the *dos.library* will perform at most 15 tries to resolve a soft-link until it finally fails.

Finally, the *RAM-Handler* supports a special type of *hard-links* that goes across volumes. These *external links* copy the linked object on a read-access into the RAM disk, i.e. the *RAM-Handler* implements a *copy on access*. This feature is used for the `ENV:` assign containing all active system settings. This assign points to a directory in the RAM disk which itself is externally linked to `ENVARC:.` Thus, whenever a program attempts to access its settings — such as the preferences programs — the *RAM-Handler* automatically copies the data from `ENVARC:` to `ENV:`, avoiding a manual copy and also saving RAM space for settings that are currently not accessed and thus unused.

The `FileInfoBlock` introduced in section 6.1 identifies links through the `fib_DirEntryType` member. As seen from table 20, *hard-links* to files are indicated by `ST_LINKFILE` and *hard-links* to directories by `ST_LINKDIR`. Note, however, that not all file systems are able to distinguish *hard-links* from regular directory entries, so this feature cannot be depended upon. In particular, *external links* of the *RAM-Handler* cannot be identified by any particular value of the `fib_DirEntryType`.

Table 20 also provides the `fib_DirEntryType` for *soft-links*, namely `ST_SOFTLINK`. As the target of a *soft-link* may not under control of the *file system*, it cannot know whether the link target is a file or a directory (or maybe another link), and therefore a single type is sufficient to identify them.

## 6.4.1 Creating Links

The `MakeLink()` function creates a *hard-link* or a *soft-link* to an existing object on a *file system*.

```
success = MakeLink( name, dest, soft )
D0          D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL MakeLink( STRPTR, LONG, LONG )
```

This function creates a new link at the path `name` of the type given by `soft`. The destination the link points to is given by `dest`.

The third argument, `soft`, identifies the type of the link to be created. It shall be taken from table 24, defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 24:** Link Types

Link Types	Description
<code>LINK_HARD</code>	Hard link, or external link
<code>LINK_SOFT</code>	Soft link

If `soft` is `LINK_HARD`, `dest` is a *lock* represented by `BPTR`. For most *file systems*, `dest` shall be on the same volume as the one identified by the path in `name`. The currently only exception is the *RAM-Handler* for which the destination *lock* may be on a different volume. In such a case, an *external link* is created. While the target object will be created, it may look initially like an empty file or an empty directory, depending on the type of the link destination. Its contents is copied, potentially recursively creating directories, by copying the contents of the link destination into the link, or to a file or directory within the link. Thus, the link becomes a mirror of the link destination whenever an object within the link or the link itself is accessed.

If `soft` is `LINK_SOFT`, `dest` is a `const UBYTE *` that shall be casted to a `LONG`. Then, this function creates a *soft-link* that is relative to the path of the link, i.e. `name`. For details on *soft-link* resolution, see section 6.4.2.

This function returns in `success` non-zero if creation of the lock succeeded, or 0 in case of failure. In either case, `IoErr()` is set to an error code on failure, or 0 on success.

## 6.4.2 Resolving Soft-Links

The `ReadLink()` function locates the destination of a *soft-link* and constructs from the path and directory of the link a new path that identifies the target of the link. A typical use case for this function is if a *dos.library* function returns with the error `ERROR_IS_SOFT_LINK`, indicating that the *file system* needs help from a higher layer to grant access to the object. You then typically retry the access to the object with the path constructed by this function. Note well that this path may be that of yet another *soft-link*, requiring recursive resolution of the link. To avoid endless recursion, this loop should be aborted after a maximum number of attempts, then generating an error such as `ERROR_TOO_MANY_LEVELS`. A suggested maximum level of nested *soft-links*, also used by the *dos.library*, is 15 links.

Note, however, that such steps would not be necessary for the functions listed in table 23 as they already perform such steps internally.

```
success = ReadLink( port, lock, path, buffer, size)
D0          D1      D2      D3      D4      D5
```

```
BOOL ReadLink( struct MsgPort *, BPTR, STRPTR, STRPTR, ULONG)
```



---

This function creates in `buffer` of `size` bytes a path to the target of a *soft-link* contained in the input `path` relative to the directory represented by `lock`. Typically, `path` is the path given to some object you attempted to access, and `lock` is the *lock* as given by the current directory to which the path is relative. The output path constructed in `buffer` is then an updated path relative to the same directory, i.e. relative to `lock`.

The `port` is the message port of the file system that is queried to resolve the *soft-link*; this port should be obtained from `GetDeviceProc()`, see section 7.2.1. For relative paths, this port is identical to the one in the `fl_Task` member of the `FileLock` structure representing `lock`, see section 5.2.5.

If `size` is too small to hold the adjusted path, the function returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`.

The function returns non-zero in case of success, or 0 in case of error. In either case, `IoErr()` is set to either 0 on success, or an error code otherwise.

## 6.5 Notification Requests

Notification requests allow programs to monitor file or directory changes. If so, either a signal or a message can be send to a specific task, informing it on the modification. If the notification request is issued on a file, any attempt to modify the contents of the file will trigger the notification request. However, in order to avoid too many request to be send out, the triggering the request is delayed until after the corresponding file is closed.

If issued on a directory, attempts to add or remove files or links will trigger the request, as well as renaming files. Whether changes of metadata such as protection bits or comments are considered modifications is not clearly defined and not all versions of all AmigaDOS file systems handle it consistently. The most recent version of AmigaDOS will consider such modifications sufficient to trigger a notification.

A typical application of notification requests is the `IPrefs` program which uses such requests to monitor changes of the preferences files. If it detects any changes of the preferences, it reloads the contents of the files and re-installs the preferences into the components it serves, most importantly `intuition`.

### 6.5.1 Request Notification on File or Directory Changes

The `StartNotify()` function starts monitoring a file or directory for changes, and if such modifications are found, a signal or a message is send to a task.

```
success = StartNotify(notifystructure)
D0                                             D1

BOOL StartNotify(struct NotifyRequest *)
```

This function starts a notification request as described by the `notifystructure` argument. This structure shall be initialized by the caller, and is then enqueued in the file system until the notification request is terminated by `EndNotify()`. Once issued, the request shall not be touched anymore as the *file system* may access it any time. As some field require zero-initialization at this point, it is advisable to allocate it through `exec` with the `MEMF_CLEAR` flag set.

The `NotifyRequest` structure is defined in `dos/notify.h` and reads as follows:

```
struct NotifyRequest {
    UBYTE *nr_Name;
    UBYTE *nr_FullName;
    ULONG nr_UserData;
    ULONG nr_Flags;
```

```

union {
    struct {
        struct MsgPort *nr_Port;
    } nr_Msg;

    struct {
        struct Task *nr_Task;
        UBYTE nr_SignalNum;
        UBYTE nr_pad[3];
    } nr_Signal;
} nr_stuff;
ULONG nr_Reserved[4];
/* internal use by handlers */
ULONG nr_MsgCount;
struct MsgPort *nr_Handler;
};

```

The elements of this structure shall be initialized as follows:

**nr\_Name:** The path to the object to be monitored, relative to the current directory. While it seems plausible that issuing a notification request on a not yet existing object will trigger a notification once such an object is created, this type of notification is currently not supported by AmigaDOS.

**nr\_FullName** is initialized by the file system and shall be left alone by the caller. The *dos.library* uses it to store the full path of the object to monitor.

**nr\_UserData** is free for use by the calling application. It may be used to distinguish multiple notification requests that have been issued in parallel.

**nr\_Flags** identifies the activity that is performed when a change has been detected by a *file system*. Currently, the following flags are defined in *dos/notify.h*:

**Table 25: Notification Flags**

Flag	Purpose
NRF_SEND_MESSAGE	Send a message on a file system change
NRF_SEND_SIGNAL	Set a signal on a change
NRF_WAIT_REPLY	Wait for a reply before notifying again
NRF_NOTIFY_INITIAL	Notify immediately when queuing the request

All other bits are currently reserved. In specific, bits 16 upwards are free for the file system to use.

The flags **NRF\_SEND\_MESSAGE** and **NRF\_SEND\_SIGNAL** are mutually exclusive. Exactly one of the two shall be included in the request to identify the activity that is performed when the monitored object changes.

**NRF\_WAIT\_REPLY** indicates to the file system that it should not continue to send a notification message while it has already send one message before that has not yet been replied. Thus, setting this flag prevents notification requests to pile up at the recipient. However, if one or multiple changes were detected while the first request was triggered but not yet responded, replying to this first notification message will immediately trigger a *single* subsequent request.

**NRF\_NOTIFY\_INITIAL** will instruct the file system to trigger a notification message or signal immediately after the request has been received. This allows applications to roll both the initial action and the response of the notification into a single function — for example, for reading or re-reading a preferences file.

**nr\_Port** is only used if the **NRF\_SEND\_MESSAGE** flag is set in **nr\_Flags**. It points to a **MsgPort** structure to which a **NotifyMessage** is send when a change has been detected. This structure is specified at the end of this section.

---

`nr_Task` and `nr_SignalNum` are only used if the `NRF_SEND_SIGNAL` flag is set in `nr_Flags`. `nr_Task` is a pointer to the Task that will be informed, and `nr_SignalNum` the bit number of the signal that is set. It is not a bit mask. Clearly, `NRF_WAIT_REPLY` does not work in combination with signal bits.

`nr_Pad` are only present for alignment and shall be left alone.

`nr_Reserved` shall be zero-initialized by the caller and are reserved for future extensions.

`nr_MsgCount` shall not be touched by the caller and reserved purely for the purpose of the *file system*. It is there used to count the number of messages that have been send out to the client, but have not yet been responded. The client, i.e. the caller, shall not interpret or modify this member.

`nr_Handler` shall neither be touched by the caller; it is used by AmigaDOS to store the `MsgPort` of the *file system* responsible for this notification request, and in particular, which to contact for ending a notification request.

If `NRF_SEND_MESSAGE` is set, then the *file system* sends a `NotifyMessage` to `nr_Port` upon detection of a change; this structure is also defined in `dos/notify.h` and looks as follows:

```
struct NotifyMessage {
    struct Message nm_ExecMessage;
    ULONG    nm_Class;
    UWORD    nm_Code;
    struct NotifyRequest *nm_NReq;
    ULONG    nm_DoNotTouch;
    ULONG    nm_DoNotTouch2;
};
```

`nm_ExecMessage` is a standard `exec` message as documented in `exec/ports.h`.

`nm_Class` is always set to `NOTIFY_CLASS`, also defined in `dos/notify.h`, to identify this message as notification.

`nm_Code` is always set to `NOTIFY_CODE`, again defined in `dos/notify.h`. This again may be used to identify notifications.

`nm_NReq` is a pointer to the `NotifyRequest` through which this message was triggered. This may allow clients to identify the source of the request and by that the object that has been changed.

`nm_DoNotTouch` and `nm_DoNotTouch2` are strictly for use by the *file system* and shall not be touched or interpreted by the caller or the client.

This function returns a boolean success indicator. It returns a non-zero result code on success and then sets `IoErr()` to 0. On error, the function returns 0 and sets `IoErr()` to a non-zero error code.

## 6.5.2 Canceling a Notification Request

The `EndNotify()` function cancels an issued notification request.

```
EndNotify(notifystructure)
D1
```

```
void EndNotify(struct NotifyRequest *)
```

This function cancels the notification request identified by `notifystructure`. This function shall only be called on notification requests that have been successfully issued by `StartNotify()`. If caller did not yet reply all `NotifyMessage` messages and some are still piled up in the `nr_Port`, the *file system* will manually dequeue them from this port.

Afterwards, the `notifystructure` is again available for the caller, for example to either release its memory, or to start another notification request.



---

## Chapter 7

# Administration of Volumes, Devices and Assigns

The *dos.library* is just a layer of AmigaDOS that provides a common API for input/output operations; these operations are not implemented by the library itself, but forwarded to *file systems* or *handlers*. This forwarding is based on the *exec message* and *message port* system, and to this end, the `FileLock` structure and the `FileHandle` structure contain a pointer to a `MsgPort`.

However, the *dos.library* also needs to obtain this port from somewhere; for relative paths (see section 4.3), the current directory (see section 9.2.8) provides it. For absolute paths, i.e. paths that contain a colon (':'), the string upfront the colon identifies handler, directly or indirectly. If this string is empty, i.e. the path starts with a colon, it is again the handler of the current directory that is contacted, but otherwise, the dos searches the *device list* to find a suitable *message port*. This algorithm is also available as a function, namely `GetDeviceProc()`, which is documented in section 7.2.1.

Internally, the *dos.library* keeps the relation between such names and the corresponding ports in the `DosList` structure. Such a structure is also created when *mounting* a handler, i.e. advertizing the handler to the system, or when creating an *Assign*, see section 4.3.1.3, or when inserting a disk into a drive, thus making a particular *volume* available to the system (see also 4.3.1.2). Only the names from table 5 in 4.3.1.1 are special cases and hard-coded into the *dos.library* without requiring an entry in the *device list* in the form of a `DosList` structure.

This structure, defined in `dos/dosextens.h` reads as follows:

```
struct DosList {
    BPTR          dol_Next;
    LONG          dol_Type;
    struct MsgPort *dol_Task;
    BPTR          dol_Lock;
    union {
        struct {
            BSTR    dol_Handler;
            LONG    dol_StackSize;
            LONG    dol_Priority;
            ULONG   dol_Startup;
            BPTR    dol_SegList;
            BPTR    dol_GlobVec;
        } dol_handler;

        struct {
```

```

        struct DateStamp      dol_VolumeDate;
        BPTR                 dol_LockList;
        LONG                 dol_DiskType;
    } dol_volume;

    struct {
        UBYTE    *dol_AssignName;
        struct AssignList *dol_List;
    } dol_assign;

} dol_misc;

BSTR                 dol_Name;
};

```

and its members have the following purpose:

`dol_Next` is a *BPTR* to the corresponding next entry in a singly linked list of `DosList` structures. However, this list should not be walked manually, but instead `FindDosEntry()` should be used for iterating through this list.

`dol_Type` identifies the type of the entry, and by that also the layout of the structure, i.e. which members of the unions are used. The following types are defined in `dos/dosextens.h`:

**Table 26: *DosList* Entry Types**

<b>dol_Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
DLT_DEVICE	A <i>file system</i> or <i>handler</i> , see 4.3.1.1
DLT_DIRECTORY	A regular assign, see 4.3.1.3
DLT_VOLUME	A volume, see 4.3.1.2
DLT_LATE	A late binding assign, see 4.3.1.3
DLT_NONBINDING	A non-binding assign, see 4.3.1.3

`dol_Task` is the *MsgPort* of the handler to contact for the particular *handler*, *assign* or *volume*. It may be `NULL` if the *handler* is not started, or a new handler process is supposed to be started for each file opened. This is, for example, the case for the console which requires a process for each window it handles. *File systems* usually provide their port here such that the same process is used for all objects on the volume. *Volumes* keep here the *MsgPort* of the *file system* that operates the volume, but it to `NULL` in case the volume goes away, e.g. is ejected. For *regular assigns*, this is also the pointer to the *MsgPort* of the *file system* the assign binds to; in case the assign is a *multi-assign*, this is the *MsgPort* of the first directory bound to. All additional ports are part of the `AssignList`. For *late assigns* this member is initially `NULL`, but will be filled in as soon as the assign is bound to a particular directory, and then becomes the pointer to the *MsgPort* of the handler the assign is bound to. Finally, for *non-binding assigns* this member always stays `NULL`.

`dol_Lock` is only used for *assigns*, and only if it is bound to a particular directory. That is, the member remains `ZERO` for *non-binding assigns* and is initially `ZERO` for *late assigns*. For all other types, this member stays `ZERO`.

`dol_Name` is a *BPTR* to a *BSTR* is the name under which the *handler*, *volume* or *assign* is accessed. That is, this string corresponds to the path component upfront the colon. As a courtesy to C and assembler functions, AmigaDOS ensures that this string is NUL terminated, i.e. `dol_Name + 1` is a regular C string whose length is available in `dol_Name[0]`.

The members within `dol_handler` are used by *handlers* and *file systems*, i.e. if `dol_Type` is `DLT_DEVICE`.

`dol_Handler` is a *BPTR* to a *BSTR* containing the file name from which the *handler* or *file system* is loaded from. It corresponds to the `Handler`, `FileSystem` and `EHandler` fields of the mount list. They all deposit the file name here.

`dol_StackSize` specifies the size of the stack for creating the *handler* or *file system* process. Interestingly, the unit of the stack size depends on the `dol_GlobVec` entry. If `dol_GlobVec` is negative indicating a C or assembler handler, `dol_StackSize` is in bytes. Otherwise, that is, for BCPL handlers, it is in 32-bit long words. This member corresponds to the `Stacksize` entry of the mount list.

`dol_Priority` is priority of the handler process. Even though it is a `LONG`, it shall be a number between  $-128$  and  $127$  because priorities of the exec task scheduler are `BYTES`. For all practical purposes, the priority should be a value between  $0$  and  $19$ . It corresponds to the `Priority` entry of the mount list.

`dol_Startup` is a handler-specific startup value that is used to communicate a configuration to the handler during startup. While this value may be whatever the handler requires, the `mount` command either deposits here a small integer, or a pointer to the `FileSysStartupMsg` structure defined in `dos/filehandler.h`. Section 11 provides more details on mounting handlers and how the startup mechanism works. Unfortunately, it is hard to interpret `dol_Startup` correctly. One way to set this member is to set `Startup` in the mount list, see 7.1.2 for details.

`dol_SegList` is a *BPTR* to the chained segment list of the handler if it is loaded. For disk-based handlers, this member is initially `ZERO`. When a program attempts to access a file on the handler, the *dos.library* first checks whether this field is `ZERO`, and if so, attempts to find a segment, i.e. a binary, for the handler. If the `FORCELOAD` entry of the mount list is non-zero, the `mount` command already performs this activity. The process of loading a handler depends on the nature of the handler and explained in more detail in section 11.2.1.

`dol_GlobVec` identifies the nature of the handler as AmigaDOS supports (still) BPCL and C/assembler handlers and defines how access to the *dos list* is secured for handler loading and startup. BCPL handlers use a somewhat more complex loading and linking mechanism as the language-specific *global vector* needs to be populated. This is not required for C or assembler handlers where a simpler mechanism is sufficient, more on this in section 11.2.1. Another aspect of the startup process is how the *device list* is protected from conflicting accesses from multiple processes. Two types of access protection are possible: Exclusive access to the list, or shared access to the list. Exclusive access protects the *device list* from any changes while the handler is loaded and until handler startup completed. This prevents any other modification to the list, but also read access from any other process to the list. Shared access allows read accesses to the list while preventing exclusive access to it.

The value in `dol_GlobVec` corresponds to the `GlobVec` entry in the mount list. It shall be one of the values in table 27.

**Table 27: GlobVec Values**

<code>dol_Type</code>	Description
$-1$	C/assembler handler, exclusive lock on the <i>dos list</i>
$-2$	C/assembler handler, shared lock on the <i>dos list</i>
$0$	BCPL handler using system GV, exclusive lock on the <i>dos list</i>
$-3$	BCPL handler using system GV, shared lock on the <i>dos list</i>
$>0$	BPCL handler with custom GV, exclusive lock on the <i>dos list</i>

The values  $0$ ,  $-3$  and  $> 0$  all setup a BCPL handler, but differ in the access type to the *device list* and how the BCPL *global vector* is populated. This vector contains all global objects and all globally reachable functions of a BCPL program, including functions of the *dos.library*. The values  $0$  and  $-3$  fill this vector with the system functions first, and then use the BPCL binding mechanism to extend or override entries in this vector with the values found in the loaded code. Any values  $> 0$  defines a *BPTR* to a custom vector which is used instead for initializing the handler. This startup mechanism has never been used in AmigaDOS

---

and is not quite practical as this vector needs to be communicated into the *dos.library* somehow. For new code, BCPL linkage and binding should not be used anymore.

Members of the `dol_volume` structure are used if `dol_Type` is `DLT_VOLUME`, identifying this entry as belonging to a known specific data carrier.

`dol_VolumeDate` is the creation date of the volume. It is a `DateStamp3.1.1` structure that is specified in section 3.1.1. It is used to uniquely identify the volume, and to distinguish this volume from any other volume of the same name.

`dol_LockList` is a pointer to a singly-linked list of *locks* on the volume. This list is created by the *file system* when the volume is ejected, and contains all locks on this volume. It is stored here to allow a similar file system to pick up the locks once the volume is re-inserted, even if it is re-inserted into another device. Note that the linkage is performed with *BPTRs* and the `fl_Link` member of the `FileLock` structure.

`dol_DiskType` is an identifier of the *file system type* that operated the volume and placed here such that an alternative process of the same file system is able to pick up or refuse the locks stored here for non-available volumes.

Members of the `dol_assign` structure are used for all other types, i.e. all types of *assigns*.

`dol_AssignName` is pointer to the target name of the assign for *non-binding* and *late assigns*. The *dos.library* uses this string to locate the target of the assign. For *late assigns*, this member is used only on the first attempt to access the assign at which `dol_Lock` is populated.

`dol_List` contains additional locks for *multi-assigns* and is only used if `dol_Type` is `DLT_DIRECTORY`. In such a case, `dol_Lock` is the lock to the first directory of the *multi-assign*, while `dol_List` contains all following *locks* in a singly-linked list of `AssignList` structures:

```
struct AssignList {
    struct AssignList *al_Next;
    BPTR              al_Lock;
};
```

`al_Next` points to the next *lock* that is part of the *multi-assign* and `al_Lock` is the lock itself. This structure is also defined in `dos/dosextens.h`.

## 7.1 The Device List and the Mount List

Entries of the type `DLT_DEVICE` can be created through a `Mountlist` and the `Mount` command. Other sources of these entries are the *expansion.library* which is called from autoconfiguring boot devies, such as SCSI hostadapters or other media interfaces.

Many keywords in the `Mountlist` map directly to entries in the `DosList` structure, others to entries in the `FileSysStartupMsg` and the `DosEnvec` structure pointed to there.

### 7.1.1 Keywords defining the `DosList` structure

The `HANDLER`, `EHANDLER` and `FILESYSTEM` keywords in the `Mountlist` do all three into the `dol_Handler` member. Which keyword is used impacts, however, other elements of the `DosList` structure, most notably `dol_Startup`.

The `STACKSIZE` keyword sets `dol_StackSize` element. This is in bytes for C and assembler handlers, and in long-words for BCPL handlers. The type of the handler is determined by `GLOBVEC`.

The `PRIORITY` keyword sets `dol_Priority` and with that the priority of the process running the handler.



---

The GLOBVEC keyword sets `dol_GlobVec` element, and by that also the type of the handler. Table 27 in 7 lists the possible values and their interpretation.

If the HANDLER keyword is present, the STARTUP entry in the Mountlist sets `dol_Startup`. It can be either an integer value, or if the argument is enclosed in double quotes, a string. In the latter case, `dol_Startup` is set to a *BPTR* to a *BSTR* that is, to ease handler implementation, also NUL terminated. The terminator is, however, not included in the size of the *BSTR*. It is therefore up to the user to ensure that the arguments in the Mountlist are what the handler expects.

### 7.1.2 Keywords controlling the FileSysStartupMsg

If the EHANDLER or FILESYSTEM keyword is present, the `dol_Startup` element is instead a *BPTR* to a FileSysStartupMsg structure, defined in the include file `dos/filehandler.h`:

```
struct FileSysStartupMsg {
    ULONG      fssm_Unit;
    BSTR       fssm_Device;
    BPTR       fssm_Environ;
    ULONG      fssm_Flags;
};
```

It is again up to the user to ensure that the handler is really expecting such a structure and setup the Mountlist appropriately.

The elements of the above structure identify an exec type device on top of which the *handler* or *file system* is supposed to operate. Some extended handlers, i.e. EHANDLERS, also use this structure; the V47 Port-Handler can be setup this way to operate on top of a third-party serial device driver.

The DEVICE keyword of the Mountlist sets `fssm_Device` entry. This element is initialized to a *BSTR*. To avoid further string conversion when calling `OpenDevice()`, this *BSTR* is NUL-terminated.

The UNIT keyword sets `fssm_Unit` and therefore the unit number of the exec device on top of which the file system or handler should operate.

The FLAGS keyword sets `fssm_Flags` element, and thus the flags for opening an exec type. Its purpose and meaning is specific to the device identified by `fssm_Device`.

### 7.1.3 Keywords controlling the Environment Vector

The `fssm_Environ` element of the FileSysStartupMsg is a *BPTR* to another structure that describes, amongst others, the layout of a *file system* on a disk; beyond *file systems*, extended handlers mounted by the EHANDLER keyword may also make use of it.

This structure is also defined in `dos/filehandler.h` and looks as follows:

```
struct DosEnvec {
    ULONG de_TableSize;
    ULONG de_SizeBlock;
    ULONG de_SecOrg;
    ULONG de_Surfaces;
    ULONG de_SectorPerBlock;
    ULONG de_BlocksPerTrack;
    ULONG de_Reserved;
    ULONG de_PreAlloc;
    ULONG de_Interleave;
    ULONG de_LowCyl;
    ULONG de_HighCyl;
};
```

```

        ULONG de_NumBuffers;
        ULONG de_BufMemType;
        ULONG de_MaxTransfer;
        ULONG de_Mask;
        LONG de_BootPri;
        ULONG de_DosType;
        ULONG de_Baud;
        ULONG de_Control;
        ULONG de_BootBlocks;
};

```

The elements in this structure, except the first one, are also initialized by keywords in the mount list.

`de_TableSize` defines how many elements in this structure are actually valid and thus may be accessed by the *handler* or *file system*. It is *not* a byte count, but an element count, excluding `de_TableSize`. In other words, the `DosEnvec` is a typical BCPL vector whose vector size is indicated in its first element — note that all elements of the structure are 32-bits wide.

The keyword `SECTORSIZE` and `BLOCKSIZE` set both `de_SizeBlock`. While the `Mountlist` keywords take a byte count, this byte count is divided by 4 to form a long-word count that is inserted into `de_SizeBlock`. As the name suggests, it defines the size of a storage unit on a medium. Typical values are 128 for 512 byte blocks, or 1024 for 4096 byte blocks. However, not all file systems support all block sizes, and some only support the default value of 128, i.e. 512 byte blocks, the `Mount` command fills in without further information.

`de_SecOrg` is not used and shall be 0; consequently, the `Mount` command does not provide a keyword to set it.

The `SURFACES` keyword sets `de_Surfaces`. A possible meaning for this member is to interpret it as the number of read-write heads of a magnetic disk drive. However, as the exec device `trackdisk` interface for magnetic storage media does not actually allow access to such low-level features that are rather abstracted away by the device, *file systems* rather use this value along with `de_BlocksPerTrack` the number of cylinders computed from `de_LowCyl` and `de_HighCyl` to determine the capacity of the medium.

The `SECTORSPEBLOCK` keyword sets the `de_SectorsPerBlock`, and thus the number of physical sectors on a disk the *file system* combines to one logical storage block. Not all *file systems* support values different from 1 here; the FFS does, and always reads and writes data in units of `de_SectorsPerBlock` times `de_SizeBlock` of long-words. For the exec `trackdisk` interface, the byte size is the only value that matters; however, the “direct SCSI” transfer latest FFS releases offer addresses the disk in terms of physical sectors, and then `de_SizeBlock` defines the size of a sector in long-words as addressed by SCSI commands, whereas `de_SectorsPerBlock` is the number of physical sectors the FFS reads for one logical block.

The `SECTORSPETRACK` and `BLOCKSPETRACK` keywords set both the `de_BlocksPerTrack` element of the `DosEnvec` structure. The first name is actually most appropriate as this element defines the number of physical sectors, and not the number of logical blocks a track of a disk contains. Thus, naming is a historical accident. As for the `SURFACES` keyword, the number of sectors per track is only in so far relevant as it defines along with the first and last cylinder the storage capacity of the medium or partition. The values never enter the exec layer.

The `RESERVED` keyword sets the `de_Reserved` element of `DosEnvec` and defines the number of (logical) blocks not used by the *file system* at the start of the disk or partition. For floppies, these reserved blocks hold a (minimal) boot procedure that initializes the *dos.library*.

The `PREALLOC` keyword installs the `de_PreAlloc` element, which is supposed to be the number of logical blocks set aside at the end of the partition. However, current FFS versions completely ignore this element.

---

The `INTERLEAVE` keyword defines the lower 16 bits of the `de_Interleave` element. TRIPOS might have reserved the entire long-word to define the interleave factor of the disk, and the difference between two sector addresses the file system is supposed to reserve for subsequent storage. This interleave factor helped to speed up transfers for ancient harddisks, but neither the original OFS nor the latest FFS make use of this mechanism and allocate sectors contiguously, i.e. with an interleave factor of 1. The upper 16 bits of `de_Interleave` suit now a different purpose and are set by separate keywords of `Mount`.

The `LOWCYL` keyword initializes the `de_LowCyl` element of the `DosEnvec` structure. It sets the lower end of the partition on the storage medium, i.e.  $\text{de\_LowCyl} \times \text{de\_Surfaces} \times \text{de\_BlocksPerTrack} + \text{de\_Reserved} \times \text{de\_SectorsPerBlock}$  is the first physical sector number on a disk that can carry payload data of the file system.

The `HIGHCYL` keyword sets the `de_HighCyl` element; it defines the (inclusive) upper end of the partition in units of cylinders. That is,  $(\text{de\_HighCyl} + 1) \times \text{de\_Surfaces} \times \text{de\_BlocksPerTrack} - 1$  is the last sector of the partition or medium the *file system* can allocate for payload data.

The `BUFFERS` keyword sets the `de_NumBuffers` element; it defines the (initial) number of file system buffers allocated for caching metadata and storing data not directly accessible through the `exec` device driver. The number of buffers may be changed later with `AddBuffers()`, see section 7.7.1. Each buffer is one (logical) block large.

The `BUFMEMTYPE` defines the `de_BufMemType` element. It defines the memory type, i.e. the second argument of `AllocMem()`, for allocating memory keeping the file system buffers. While `exec` device drivers should be able read and write data to any memory type, several legacy rivers may not be able reach all memory; this may be due to limitations of the hardware such that Zorro-II hardware cannot reach 32-bit memory. Thus, depending on limitations of the `fssm_Device`, it is unfortunately up to the user to provide a suitable `BUFMEMTYPE`.

The `MASK` keyword defines the `de_Mask` element of the `DosEnvec` structure. The mask is a workaround for defect device drivers that cannot read or write to all memory types. In particular, if the address of the host memory buffer has bits set in positions where the mask contains 0 bits, the *file system* shall assume that the device cannot reach this memory. Instead, it shall perform input or output indirectly through its buffers, and copy with the CPU between those buffers and the target or source memory block.

**Masking Defects** The purpose of the mask is to hide defects in device drivers and provide a working system in the absence of a fully functional device driver. A rather typical value for the mask is `0x00ffffff`, indicating that the device cannot reach 32-bit memory. A suitable memory type would then be `MEMF_24BITDMA | MEMF_PUBLIC`, i.e. 513 as decimal value. This requests 24-bit memory for the buffers. Note that providing a mask is useless if the memory type does not allocate memory that fits to the mask.

The `MAXTRANSFER` keyword sets `de_MaxTransfer`. This value sets the maximum number of bytes the *file system* shall read or write by a single I/O operation. Similar to `MASK`, it is a workaround required to avoid problems with defect device drivers that corrupt data if too many bytes are read or written in one go.

**MaxTransfer is not a rate** The `MaxTransfer` keyword or element describe a byte count that, when exceeded, requests the file system to break up transfers. While that implicitly limits the throughput of the device, it does not define a rate (i.e. in units of bytes per second), as the problem device drivers have is typically not the transfer rate, but the amount of data to transfer.

The `BOOTPRI` keyword sets the `de_BootPri` element which defines the order in which the system attempts to boot from a partition or medium. Obviously, it makes little sense to set this keyword in a `Mountlist` that is interpreted after the system had already booted. However, autobooting devices may set an appropriate value here, for example by reading it from the RDB of its disk.

The `DOSTYPE` keyword sets the `de_DosType` element, identifying the type and flavour of the file system to use for the medium or partitiion. If the `FILESYSTEM` keyword is present, but the `FORCELOAD`

is either not present or set to 0, then the `Mount` command first attempts to find a suitable file system in the `FileSystem.resource` whose `fse_DosType` matches `de_DosType`, avoiding to load the same file system again. If a match is found, the `FileSysEntry` of the resource is used to initialize the `DosEnvec`, in particular `dol_SegList`. Table 28 in lists the available file systems.

**Table 28: Fast File System Flavours**

FFS Flavour	Description
ID_DOS_DISK	Original file system (OFS)
ID_FFS_DISK	First version of FFS
ID_INTER_DOS_DISK	International variant of OFS
ID_INTER_FFS_DISK	International variant of FFS
ID_FASTDIR_DOS_DISK	OFS variant with directory cache
ID_FASTDIR_FFS_DISK	FFS variant with directory cache
ID_LONG_DOS_DISK	OFS variant with 106 character file name size
ID_LONG_FFS_DISK	FFS variant with 106 character file name size
ID_COMPLONG_FFS_DISK	FFS with 54 character file names compatible to FFS
'MSD\0'	FAT on a disk without partition table
'MDD\0'	identical to the above, FAT on a floppy
'MSH\0'	FAT on a partition
'FAT\0'	FAT, switched by the SuperFloppy disk
'CD0\0'	Original CD File system
'CD0\1'	CD File System with Joliet support

The first part of the table indicates various versions of the ROM file system; the original version from TRIPOS is here denoted as OFS, though this name mostly distinguishes it from its later reimplementations, the FFS.

The OFS variants embed additional administration information into the data blocks and thus carry less payload data per block, and for that are more robust, but are slower as the data cannot be transmitted by DMA into the host memory but requires an additional copy. The first FFS variant addresses this issue. Both first types use, however, a non-suitable algorithm for case-insensitive comparison of file names and thus do not interpret character from the extended ISO-Latin-1 set (i.e. printable characters outside the ASCII range) correctly. Thus, the first two types should be avoided.

Proper case-insensitive interpretation of file names was added afterwards, leading to the next two flavours which are otherwise identical. All types from that point on in table 28 until its end use the correct algorithm to compare file names.

The next two versions administrate an additional directory cache; while this cache typically speeds up listing the directory, it also requires additional update steps when adding or renaming files, making such operations slower and more error prone. These variants unfortunately also lack a good algorithm to clean up the cache if objects are continuously added and removed from directories. These variants are not generally recommended and should be considered experimental.

The `LONG` variants of OFS and FFS allow file names of up to 106 characters by using a slightly modified block syntax which overcomes the 30 character file name limit all above variants suffer from. They also use the correct case-insensitive file name comparison. In some rare cases, the administration information is augmented by one additional block keeping a long comment.

The last variant offers a compatible form of long file names that is backwards compatible to earlier variants of the FFS. The file name limit is here 54 characters, though older versions of the FFS can still read the disk correctly, even though they will not be able to locate or list longer file names. This variant is also experimental.

---

The next group of types indicates various flavours of the MS-DOS FAT file system. The first two types are identical and correspond to a file system on a single disk without a partition table, as found on floppy disks. They are unsuitable for harddisk partitions and thumbdrive partitions.

The second type indicates FAT on a Master Boot Record (MBR) partition as used on (legacy) PC hardware. As AmigaDOS does not natively support the MBR, the file system here (as an architectural tweak) interprets the partition table. Which partition is used is then depending on the last character of the device name, i.e. `dol_Name`. The `C` character indicates the first partition, adopting the convention of the operating system to which FAT is native, the second partition is indicated by the last character of `dol_Name` being `D` and so on.

The last type indicates a file system either on a floppy or the first partition of a MBR-formatted disk, depending on the `SUPERFLOPPY` keyword, see below.

The last group indicates various versions of the CD-Rom — actually ISO Rock Ridge — file system. The first type is the original file system that came with V40 of AmigaDOS, the second the extended version that includes support for Joliet extensions and audio track support. Otherwise, the types are identical.

The `BAUD` keyword fills the `de_Baud` element; it is obviously not used by *file systems* but extended handlers that are indicated by the `EHANDLER` keyword. For them, it provides the baud rate for an (assumed) serial connection.

The `CONTROL` keyword sets the `de_Control` element. Even though this element is here indicated as an `ULONG`, it can be either an integer or a string. In the latter case, the argument to `CONTROL` shall be enclosed in double quotes, and the `Mount` command then places a *BPTR* to a *BSTR* in this element. Again, it is up to the user to learn from the handler documentation what the handler expects to find in the `DosEnvec` structure as there is no type check and no place where the type is indicated.

The `BOOTBLOCKS` keyword initializes the `de_BootBlocks` element; it is currently not used by any AmigaDOS file system. The `FFS` instead depends on `de_Reserved`.

The `SUPERFLOPPY` keyword takes a boolean 0 or 1 argument and by that either sets or clears the `ENVF_SUPERFLOPPY` flag. This flag has been cut off (or reserved) from the otherwise deprecated and thus unused `de_Interleave` element. It is by default cleared.

If this flag in `de_Interleave` is set, then the file system is informed that the partition extends over the entire medium and no partition table or RDB is found. Instead, to find the size of the medium, the file system is authorized to issue a `TD_GETGEOMETRY` command to the low level device driver which will report the layout of the disk. This driver information is then used to adjust `de_LowCyl`, `de_HighCyl`, `de_SizeBlock` and `de_Surfaces`. Thus, a file system mounted with this flag set is able to extract the device layout directly from the hardware driver. This is important for drives that allow variously sized media, such as floppy disks (supporting both DD and HD disks) as well as ZIP drives (supporting 100MB to 250MB drives).

AmigaDOS up to release V40 hardwired this special case to ROM-based devices that support variably sized media, namely to the `trackdisk.device` and `carddisk.device`, i.e. the floppy and memory cards in the PCMCIA slot. Newer releases allow to extend this mechanism to other device drivers as well. As of V47, the FAT and ROM file system both support this mechanism, though it has to be enabled with the `'FAT\0'` `dostype` for the former driver.

The `SCSIDIRECT` keyword is also a boolean 0/1 indicator and controls the `ENVF_SCSIDIRECT` flag which is also part of the otherwise deprecated `de_Interleave` element. It is cleared by default, indicating that the file system should use the `trackdisk` command set to access data.

If this flag is enabled, the file system is instructed to communicate with the underlying device through the `HD_SCSICMD` interface, i.e. SCSI commands. This may help some legacy device drivers that do not speak the 64-bit dialect of the `trackdisk` commands to access data beyond the 4GB barrier. Very ancient device drivers may not even support this command type.

---

The `ENABLENSD` keyword is again a boolean 0/1 indicator for the `ENVF_DISABLENSD` flag cut off from the `de_Interleave` field; it is, however, set in inverse logic, i.e. the `ENVF_DISABLENSD` is set if the mount parameter is 0, and reverse.

If the flag in `de_Interleave` is set, and thus `ENABLENSD` is set to 0 in the mount list, the file system is instructed not to attempt to use NSD-style commands to access data beyond the 4GB barrier. This may be necessary on some device drivers that ignore the most significant bits of the `io_Command` field or react otherwise allergic to commands beyond the usual range.

Unfortunately, multiple command sets exist to access (moderately) large disks. If `DIRECTSCSI` is enabled, SCSI commands will always be used, even for probing the medium size if `SUPERFLOPPY` is set. If SCSI commands are not enabled, the FFS first attempts to use regular `trackdisk` commands if the requested region of the device does not cross the 4GB barrier. If that is not possible, it probes the TD64 command set as it is historically the most popular extension. As last resort, it tries NSD commands. This last step can be disabled by the line `ENABLENSD = 0` in the `Mountlist` if it creates problems.

The `ACTIVATE` keyword in the `Mountlist` is synonym to the `MOUNT` keyword, and it also takes a boolean 0/1 indicator. If it is set, then the `Mount` command will already load and initiate the handler corresponding to the mount entry, even if it is at this point not yet needed.

The `FORCELOAD` keyword of the `Mountlist`, finally, is another boolean 0/1 flag. If it is set to 1, it indicates to the `Mount` command not to scan the `FileSystem.resource` for a fitting `dostype` but rather forcibly load the *file system* from the path indicated by the `FILESYSTEM` keyword. This option is, for example, useful for testing.

## 7.2 Finding Handler or File System Ports

The following functions find the *MsgPort* of the *handler* or *file system* that is responsible for a given object. The functions search the *device list*, check whether the handler is already loaded or load it if necessary, then check whether the handler is already running, and if not, launch an instance of it. If *multi-assigns* are involved, it can become necessary to contact multiple *file systems* to resolve the task and thus to iterate through multiple potential *file systems* to find the right one.

### 7.2.1 Iterate through Devices Matching a Path

The `GetDeviceProc()` find a handler, or the next handler responsible for a given path. Once the handler has been identified, or iteration through matching handlers is to be aborted, `FreeDeviceProc()` shall be called to release temporary resources.

```
devproc = GetDeviceProc(name, devproc)
D0                      D1      D2

struct DevProc *GetDeviceProc(STRPTR, struct DevProc *)
```

This function takes a path in `name` and either `NULL` on the first iteration or a `DevProc` structure from a previous iteration and returns either a `DevProc` structure in case a matching handler could be identified, or `NULL` if no matching handler could be found or all possible matches have been iterated over already.

**Give back what you got** To release all temporary resources, the `DevProc` structure returned by `GetDeviceProc()` shall be either be released through `FreeDeviceProc()` then aborting the scan, or used as first argument for `GetDeviceProc()` to continue the iteration. The last call to this function will return `NULL` and then also release all resources.

The `DevProc` structure, defined in `dos/dosextens.h` looks as follows:

```

struct DevProc {
    struct MsgPort *dvp_Port;
    BPTR          dvf_Lock;
    ULONG         dvf_Flags;
    struct DosList *dvp_DevNode;    /* DON'T TOUCH OR USE! */
};

```

`dvp_Port` is a pointer to a candidate *MsgPort* that should be tried to resolve name.

If the matching handler is a *file system*, then `dvp_Lock` is a *lock* of a directory. The path in name is a path relative to this directory. This *lock* shall not be released, but it may be copied with `DupLock`.

`dvp_Flags` identifies the nature of the found port. If the bit `DVPB_ASSIGN` is set, i.e. `dvp_Flags & DVPF_ASSIGN` is non-zero, then the found match is part of a *multi-assign* and `GetDeviceProc()` may be called again with the `devproc` argument just returned as second argument. This will return another candidate for a path. `DVPB_UNLOCK` is another bit of the flags but shall not be interpreted and is only used internally by the function.

The member `dvp_DevNode` shall not be touched or used and is required internally by the function.

If the function returns `NULL`, then `IoErr()` provides additional information on the failure. If the error code is `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`, then the last directory of a *multi-assign* has been reached. If the error code is `ERROR_DEVICE_NOT_MOUNTED`, then no matching device could be found. Other errors may be returned, e.g. if the function could not allocate sufficient memory for its operation.

Unfortunately, the function does not set `IoErr()` consistently if `GetDeviceProc()` is called again on an existing `DevProc` structure as second argument with `DVPB_ASSIGN` cleared. `IoErr()` remains then unaltered and it is therefore advisable to clear it upfront.

The function also returns `NULL` if name corresponds to the `NIL:` pseudo-device and then sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_DEVICE_NOT_MOUNTED`. This is not fully correct, and callers need to be aware of this defect.

Also, `GetDeviceProc` does not handle the path “\*” at all, even though it indicates the current console and the *Console-Handler* is responsible for it. This case also needs to be detected by the caller, and in such a case, `GetConsoleTask()` delivers the correct port.

**Does not like all paths** The `GetDeviceProc()` function unfortunately does not handle all device specifiers correctly, and some special cases need to be filtered out by the caller. Namely “\*” indicating the current console, and `NIL:` for the `NIL` pseudo-device are not handled here.

## 7.2.2 Releasing DevProc Information

The `FreeDeviceProc()` function releases a `DevProc` structure acquired by `GetDeviceProc()` and releases all temporary resources allocated by this function. It shall be called as soon as the `DevProc` structure is no longer needed.

```

FreeDeviceProc(devproc)
    D1

```

```

void FreeDeviceProc(struct DevProc *)

```

This function releases the `DevProc` structure and all its resources from an iteration through one or multiple `GetDeviceProc()` calls. If calling `GetDeviceProc()` had returned `NULL` itself it had already released such resources itself and no further activity is necessary.

The `dvp_Port` or `dvp_Lock` within the `DevProc` structure shall not be used after releasing it with `FreeDeviceProc()`. If a *lock* is needed afterwards, a copy of `dvp_Lock` shall be made with `DupLock()`.

---

If the port of the *handler* or *file system* is needed afterwards, a resource of this handler shall be obtained, e.g. by opening a file or obtaining a lock on it. Both the `FileHandle` and the `FileLock` structures contain a pointer to the port of the corresponding handler.

It is safe to call `FreeDeviceProc()` with a `NULL` argument; this performs no activity.

This function does not set `IoErr()` consistently and no particular value may be assumed. It may or may not alter its value.

### 7.2.3 Legacy Handler Port Access

The `DeviceProc()` function is a legacy variant of `GetDeviceProc()` that should not be used anymore. It is not able to reliably provide locks to *assigns* and will not work through all directories of a *multi-assign*.

```
process = DeviceProc( name )
                D0                D1
```

```
struct MsgPort *DeviceProc (STRPTR)
```

This function returns a pointer to a port of a *handler* or *file system* able to handle the path name. It returns `NULL` on error in which case it sets `IoErr()`.

If the passed in name is part of an *assign*, the handler port of the directory the assign binds to is returned, and `IoErr()` is set to the *lock* of the assign. Unfortunately, one cannot safely make use of this *lock* as the *device list* may be altered any time, including the time between the return from this function and its first use by the caller. Thus, `GetDeviceProc()` shall be used instead which locks resources such as the *device list*; they are released through `FreeDeviceProc()`.

**Obsolete and not fully functional** `DeviceProc()` function does not operate properly on *multi-assigns* where it only provides the port and *lock* to the first directory participating in the assign. It also returns `NULL` for *non-binding assigns* as there is no way to release a temporary lock obtained on the target of the *assign*. Same as `GetDeviceProc()`, it does not properly handle `NIL:` and `"*"`.

### 7.2.4 Obtaining the Current Console Handler

The `GetConsoleTask()` function returns the `MsgPort` of the handler responsible for the console of the calling process, that is, the process that takes care of the file name `"*"` or paths relative to `CONSOLE:`.

```
port = GetConsoleTask()
                D0
```

```
struct MsgPort *GetConsoleTask(void)
```

This function returns a port to the handler of the console of the calling process, or `NULL` in case there is no console associated to the caller. The latter holds for example for programs started from the workbench. It does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 7.2.5 Obtaining the Default File System

The `GetFileSysTask()` function returns the `MsgPort` of the default *file system* of the caller. The default *file system* is used as fall-back if a *file system* is required for a path relative to the `ZERO` lock, and the path itself does not contain an indication of the responsible handler, i.e. is a relative path itself.

The default *file system* is typically the boot file system, or the file system of the `SYS: assign`, though it can be changed with `SetFileSysTask()` at any point.



```
port = GetFileSysTask()
    D0
```

```
struct MsgPort *GetFileSysTask(void)
```

This function returns the port of the default file system of this task. It does not alter `IoErr()`. Note that `SYS:` itself is an *assign* and paths starting with `SYS:` do therefore not require resolution through this function, though the default *file system* and the file system handling `SYS:` are typically identical. However, as the former is returned by `GetFileSysTask()` and the latter is part of the *device list assign*, they can be different.

## 7.3 Iterating and Accessing the Device List

While `GetDeviceProc()` uses the *device list* to locate a particular *MsgPort* and *Lock*, all other members of the `DosList` structure remain unavailable. For them, the *device list* containing these structures need to be scanned manually. The *dos.library* provides functions to grant access, search and release access to this list.

### 7.3.1 Gaining Access to the Device List

The `LockDosList()` function requests shared or exclusive access to a subset of entries of the *device list* containing all *handlers*, *volumes* and *assigns* and blocks until access is granted. It requires as input multiple sets that specify which parts of the list to access:

```
dlist = LockDosList(flags)
    D0                D1
```

```
struct DosList *LockDosList(ULONG)
```

This function grants access to a subset of entries of the *device list* indicated by `flags`, and returns an opaque handle through which elements of the list can be accessed. For this, see `FindDosEntry()`.

The `flags` value shall be combination of the following values, all defined in `dos/dosextens.h`:

**Table 29: LockDosList Flags**

Flags	Description
LDF_DEVICES	Access <i>handlers</i> and <i>file system</i> entries, see 4.3.1.1
LDF_VOLUMES	Access <i>volumnes</i> , see 4.3.1.2
LDF_ASSIGNS	Access <i>assigns</i> , see 4.3.1.3
LDF_ENTRY	Lock access to a <code>DosList</code> entries
LDF_DELETE	Lock <i>device list</i> for deletion
LDF_READ	Shared access to the <i>device list</i>
LDF_WRITE	Exclusive access to the <i>device list</i>

At least `LDF_READ` or `LDF_WRITE` shall be included in the flags, they shall not be set both. The three first flags may also be combined to access multiple types.

`LDF_ENTRY` and `LDF_DELETE` are additional flags that moderate access to entries of the *device list*. If `LDF_ENTRY` is set, then exclusive access to the selected entries is requested and entries shall not be altered or removed. The `LDF_ENTRY` flag shall not be combined with `LDF_READ`. If `LDF_DELETE` is set, then access is granted for removing entries from the list.

---

The result code `dlist` is *not* a pointer to a `DosList` structure, but only a handle that may be passed into `FindDosEntry()` or `NextDosEntry()`. If `dlist` is `NULL`, then locking failed because the combination of flags passed in was invalid.

This function does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 7.3.2 Requesting Access to the Device List

The `AttemptLockDosList()` requests access to the *device list* or a subset of its entries, and, in case it cannot gain access, returns `NULL`. Unlike `LockDosList()`, it does not block.

```
dlist = AttemptLockDosList(flags)
D0                                     D1

struct DosList *AttemptLockDosList(ULONG)
```

The `flags` argument specifies which elements of the *device list* are requested for access, and which type of access is required. The flags are a combination of the flags listed in table 29, and the semantics of the flags are exactly as specified for `LockDosList()`, see there for details.

On success, the result code is a non-`NULL` handle that may be passed into the `FindDosEntry()` function for finding a handler, file system, volume or assign matching a name, or into the `NextDosEntry()` function for iterating the device list manually. On error, the result code is `NULL`, either because the list is currently locked and access cannot be granted without blocking, or flags are invalid. These two cases of failure cannot be distinguished unfortunately.

This function does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 7.3.3 Release Access to the Device List

The `UnLockDosList()` function releases access to the device list as obtained by `LockDosList()`.

```
UnLockDosList(flags)
                D1

void UnLockDosList(ULONG)
```

This function releases access to the *device list* again. The `flags` argument shall be identical to the `flags` argument provided to `LockDosList()`.

### 7.3.4 Iterate through the Device List

The `NextDosEntry()` iterates to the next entry in the *device list* given the current entry or the handle returned by `LockDosList()`.

```
newdlist = NextDosEntry(dlist, flags)
D0                                     D1      D2

struct DosList *NextDosEntry(struct DosList *, ULONG)
```

This function returns the next `DosList` structure of the *device list* which shall have been locked with `LockDosList()`. The `dlist` argument shall be either the return code of a previous `NextDosEntry()` or `FindDosEntry()` call, or the handle returned by `LockDosEntry()`.

---

The `flags` argument shall be a subset of the `flags` argument into `LockDosList()` and specifies the type of `DosList` structures that shall be found. Only the first 3 elements of Table 29 are relevant here, all other flags are ignored but may be included.

The `newdlist` result is either a pointer to a `DosList` structure of the requested type, or `NULL` if the end of list has been reached. This function does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 7.3.5 Find a Device List Entry by Name

The `FindDosEntry()` function finds a `DosList` structure of a particular type and particular name, from a particular entry on, or the handle returned by `LockDosList()`.

```
newdlist = FindDosEntry(dlist, name, flags)
D0                D1    D2    D3
```

```
struct DosList *FindDosEntry(struct DosList *, STRPTR, ULONG)
```

This function scans through the *device list* starting at the entry `dlist`, or the handle returned by `LockDosList()`, and returns the next `DosList` structure that is of the type indicated by `flags` and has the name `name`.

The `flags` shall be a subset of the `flags` argument passed into `LockDosList()`. Only the first 3 elements of Table 29 are relevant here, all other flags are ignored but may be included.

The `name` argument is the (case-insensitive) name of the assign, handler, file system or volume the function should look for. The name *shall not* include the colon (':') that separates the name from the remaining components of a path, see section 4.3. It may be `NULL` in which case every entry of the requested type matches.

The returned `newdlist` is a pointer to a `DosList` structure that matches the name (if provided) and flags passed in, or `NULL` in case no match could be found and the entire list has been scanned. Note that the returned `DosList` may be identical to the `dlist` passed in if it already fits the requirements. Thus potentially, `NextDosList()` may be called upfront to scan from the subsequent entry.

Passing `NULL` as `dlist` is safe and returns `NULL`, i.e. the end of the list. Note that the (pseudo-) devices from tables 5 and 7 are not part of the *device list*, i.e. `NIL`, `CONSOLE`, `*` and `PROGDIR` cannot be found and are special cases of `GetDeviceProc()`.

This function does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 7.3.6 Accessing Mount Parameters

Once a `DosList` structure has been identified, e.g. by `FindDosEntry()`, it is tempting to understand whether the entry belongs to an assign or a volume, or a handler or file system, and in the latter two cases, to find the mount parameters of the handler or file system.

The first level of identification is easy and works through the `dol_Type` element of the `DosList` structure; table 26 in section 7 lists the possible entry types. As seen there, however, *handlers* and *file systems* share the same type, namely `DLT_DEVICE`.

Information on how a *file system* or a *handler* should be configured is found in the `dol_Startup` field; it is, however, up to the handler to interpret it, and AmigaDOS does not define what exactly it can contain. The `Mount` command can place three different types of objects here: An integer value, a *BPTR* to a *BSTR*, or a *BPTR* to a *FileSysStartupMsg*.

Unfortunately, there is no totally safe way how to distinguish these types, and AmigaDOS does not provide any further source of information to learn which type a handler expects here — thus a heuristics is needed to tell them apart.

In the first step, one should check whether the `dol_Startup` field is actually a *BPTR* pointing to valid memory. This is even the case for *file systems* mounted by the ROM, e.g. the `df0:` device:

```
void AnalyzeDosList(struct DosList *dl)
{
    LONG *startup;

    s=(LONG *) (dl->dol_Startup);
    if (s && TypeOfMem(BADDR(s)) && (LONG)s!=-1L && (LONG)s>0x100
        && ((LONG)s & 0xc0000000)==0) {
        /* Looks like a plausible BPTR */
        AnalyzeStartup((LONG *) (BADDR(s)));
    } else {
        /* Likely some sort of handler, and s is
        ** probably some integer
        */
        ....
    }
}
```

The above algorithm uses `TypeOfMem()` to test whether a pointer goes into valid memory, and also checks the topmost two bits of the *BPTR*. As *BPTR*s are created by right-shifting a pointer by 2 bits, the two MSBs should thus be zero.

In the second step, the heuristics attempts to understand whether the *BPTR* in `dol_Startup` actually points to a `FileSysStartupMsg` or to a *BSTR*. For that, it attempts to learn whether the `fssm_Device` element is a valid *BSTR* and whether the `fssm_Envion` element is also a valid *BPTR*.

```
void AnalyzeStartup(LONG *startupmsg)
{
    BOOL isfsstart=TRUE;
    UBYTE *text;

    /* This checks whether fssm_Device
    ** is meaningful in order to derive
    **
    if (startupmsg[1] & 0xc0000000) {
        /* Certainly not a BPTR to
        ** a device name, bail out
        */
        isfsstart = FALSE;
    } else {
        /* Hopefully, a BPTR to a BSTR */
        text=((char *)BADDR(startupmsg[1]))+1;
        if (!TypeOfMem(text)) {
            /* No, that does not work. */
            isfsstart = FALSE;
        } else {
            /* Now check the want-to-be fssm_Envion */
            if (startupmsg[2] & 0xc0000000) {
                isfsstart = FALSE;
            } else if (startupmsg[2]!=NULL &&
                (!TypeOfMem(BADDR(startupmsg[2])))) {
```

```

        isfsstart = FALSE;
    }
}

/*
** But could possibly be a string
*/
if (isfsstart==FALSE) {
    if (TypeOfMem(startupmsg)) {
        /* This is probably a string.
        ** "mount" puts NUL-terminated strings in
        ** here.
        */
        text = ((UBYTE *)startupmsg)+1;
        ...
    } else {
        struct FileSysStartupMsg *fssm;
        fssm = (struct FileSysStartupMsg *)startupmsg;
        /*
        ** Access fssm->fssm_Device, fssm_Unit, fssm_Flags
        */
        ...
        if ((fssm->fssm_Environ & 0xc0000000) == 0) {
            LONG *ptr = BADDR(fssm->fssm_Environ);
            if (ptr && (TypeOfMem(ptr))) {
                struct DosEnvec *env;
                env = (struct DosEnvec *)ptr;
                /* Hopefully an environment */
                if (env->de_TableSize > 0) {
                    /* Ok, this is probably good enough... use the
                    ** elements of the environment up to the
                    ** one indicated by env->de_TableSize
                    */
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
}

```

Even if this function is able to identify an `DosEnvec` structure with high probability, the environment vector found in this way does not need to be complete and contain all the elements listed in section 7.1.3, instead, only the first `de_TableSize` elements are present, and everything beyond this point shall not be interpreted or modified.

While the above is just a heuristic and is therefore not guaranteed to work, practical experience of the author has shown that it has so far been able to extract environment information from all handlers or file systems that came into his hand.

Nevertheless, getting hands on the `FileSysStartupMsg` from an unknown handler is not completely waterproof at this moment, and to this end the author of [10] proposed to introduce a `DosPacket` (see section 11.1) by which a handler can be requested to reveal its startup message. Unfortunately, to date this packet has not found wide adoption, and the above heuristics may be used as an interim solution.

---

Authors of *handlers* and *file systems* have less to worry about. When they document their requirements properly, e.g. by including an example `Mountlist` with their product, “only” user errors can generate startup messages the handler cannot interpret properly. Thus, in general, handlers should be written in an “optimistic” way (unlike the above heuristic) assuming that `dol_Startup` is what they do expect. All AmigaDOS handlers are written in such a way, e.g. the FFS expects without verification that the value in `dol_Startup` is, indeed, a `FileSysStartupMsg`, even though it can be fooled by an incorrect `Mountlist` and by that crash the system.

## 7.4 Adding or Removing Entries to the Device List

The *dos.library* provides two service functions to add or remove `DosList` structures from the *device list*. They secure the *dos.library* internal state from inconsistencies as other processes may attempt to access the *device list* simultaneously, and they also ensure proper linkage of the structures.

**Locking the device list in file systems** There is one particular race condition *file system* authors should be aware of. When opening a file, or obtaining a *lock*, the *dos.library* calls through `GetDeviceProc()` to identify a *handler* responsible for the requested path. As `GetDeviceProc()` requires access to the *device list*, it will secure access to it through `LockDosList()`, then possibly start up the *handler*, and then unlock the list. Thus, at the time the handler is initiated, it may find the *device list* unaccessible. Attempting to lock it would result in a *deadlock* situation as the *dos.library* waits for the *handler* to reply its startup packet, and the *handler* waits for the *dos.library* to grant access to the *device list*. The following sections provide workarounds how to avoid this situation, see also section 11 for details on the *handler* and *file system* startup mechanism.

### 7.4.1 Adding an Entry to the Device List

The `AddDosEntry()` adds an initialized `DosList` structure to the *device list*.

```
success = AddDosEntry(dlist)
D0                      D1
```

```
LONG AddDosEntry(struct DosList *)
```

This function takes an initialized `DosList` entry pointed to by `dlist` and attempts to add it to the *device list*. For this, it requests write access to the list, i.e. locking of the *device list* through the caller is not necessary. The `DosList` may be either created manually, by `MakeDosEntry()` of the *dos.library* or by `MakeDosNode()` of the *expansion.library*. While there the structure is called a `DeviceNode`, it is still a particular incarnation of a `DosList` and may be safely used here.

*Assigns shall not* be added to the *device list* through this function, but rather through the functions in section 7.6. This avoids memory management problems when releasing or changing assigns.

Particular care needs to be taken if this function is called from within a *handler* or *file system*, e.g. to add a *volume* representing an inserted medium. As the list may be locked by the *dos.library* to secure the list from modifications within a `GetDeviceProc()` function, a deadlock may result where *file system* and *dos.library* mutually block access. To prevent this from happening handlers should check upfront whether the *device list* is available for modifications by `AttemptLockDosList()`, e.g.

```
if (AttemptLockDosList(LDF_VOLUMES|LDF_WRITE)) {
    rc = AddDosEntry(volumenode);
    UnlockDosList(LDF_VOLUMES|LDF_WRITE);
}
```

---

when adding a `DosList` entry of type `DLT_VOLUME`. If attempting to get write access failed, the handler should check for incoming requests, handle them, and attempt adding the entry later.

The function fails if an entry is to be added and an entry of the same name, regardless its type, is already present on the list. The only exception is that the list may contain two *volumes* of the same name, provided provided their creation date `dol_VolumeDate` differs, see section 7.

If successful, the function returns non-zero, but then does not alter `IoErr()`. The `DosList` is then enqueued in the *dos.library* database and it and its members shall then no longer be altered or released by the caller. On failure, the function returns 0 and `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_OBJECT_EXISTS`.

## 7.4.2 Removing an Entry from the Device List

The `RemDosEntry()` removes a `DosList` entry from the *device list*, making it unaccessible for AmigaDOS.

```
success = RemDosEntry(dlist)
D0                      D1

BOOL RemDosEntry(struct DosList *)
```

This function attempts to find the `DosList` structure pointed to by `dlist` in the *device list* and, if present, removes it. Unlike what some other documentation says, this function locks the *device list* properly before attempting to remove an entry, locking it upfront is not necessary.

The function does *not* attempt to release the memory allocated for the `DosList` passed in, or any of its members, it just removes the `DosList` from the *device list*. While *file systems* may know how they allocated the `DosList` structures representing their *volumes* and hence should be aware how to release the memory taken by them, there is no good solution on how to recycle memory for `DosList` structures representing *handlers*, *file systems* or *assigns*. Some manual footwork is currently required, see also `FreeDosNode()`. In particular, as entries representing *handlers* and *file systems* may have been created in multiple ways, their memory cannot be safely recycled.

Particular care needs to be taken if this function is called from within a *handler* or *file system*, e.g. to remove a *volume* representing a removed medium. As the list may be locked by the *dos.library* to secure the list from modifications within a `GetDeviceProc()` function, a deadlock may result where *file system* and *dos.library* mutually block access. To prevent this from happening handlers should check upfront whether the *device list* is available for modifications by `AttemptLockDosList()`, e.g.

```
if (AttemptLockDosList(LDF_DELETE|LDF_ENTRY|LDF_WRITE)) {
    rc = RemDosEntry(volumenode);
    UnlockDosList(LDF_DELETE|LDF_ENTRY|LDF_WRITE);
}
```

when removing a `DosList` entry. If attempting to get write access failed, the handler should check for incoming requests, handle them, and attempt adding the entry later.

This function returns a success indicator; it returns non-zero if the function succeeds, and 0 in case it fails. The only reason for failure is that `dlist` is not a member of the *device list*. This function does not touch `IoErr()`.

## 7.5 Creating and Deleting Device List Entries

AmigaOs offers multiple functions to create `DosList` structures. The `MakeDosEntry()` function is a low-level function that allocates a `DosList` but only performs minimal initialization of the structure. For

*assigns*, the functions in section 7.6 shall be used as they include complete initialization of the `DosList`, and for *handlers* and *file systems*, the *expansion.library* function `MakeDosNode()` is a proper alternative. Releasing `DosLists` along with all its resources is unfortunately much harder. For *assigns*, the algorithm in section 7.5.2 provides a workable function based on `FreeDosEntry()`.

`DosLists` representing *Volumes* are build and released by *file systems*; it depends on them which resources need to be released along with the `DosList` structure itself. While it is recommended that *file systems* should go through `MakeDosEntry()` and `FreeDosEntry()`, it is not a requirement.

Releasing a `DosList` representing a *handler* or *file system* is currently not possible in a completely robust way. It is suggested just to unlink such nodes if absolutely necessary, but tolerate the memory leak.

### 7.5.1 Creating a Device List Entry

The `MakeDosEntry()` creates an empty `DosList` structure of the given type, and makes all elementary initializations. It does not acquire any additional resources, and neither inserts it into the *device list*.

If an *assign* is to be created, the functions in section 7.6 are better alternatives and should be preferred as they perform a more sophisticated initialization.

```
newdlist = MakeDosEntry(name, type)
D0          D1      D2
```

```
struct DosList *MakeDosEntry(STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function allocates a `DosList` structure and initializes its `dol_Type` to `type`. The `type` argument shall be one of the values from table 26. The function also makes a copy of `name` and initializes the `dol_Name` to a *BSTR* copy of `name`, which is a NUL terminated C string.

Note that this function performs only minimal initialization of the `DosList` structure. All other members except `dol_Type` and `dol_Name` are initialized to 0.

This function either returns the allocated structure, or `NULL` for failure. In the latter case, `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE`. On success, `IoErr()` remains unaltered.

### 7.5.2 Releasing a Device List Entry

The `FreeDosEntry()` function releases a `DosList` structure allocated by `MakeDosEntry()`. The `DosList` shall be already removed from the *device list* by `RemDosEntry()`. While this call releases the memory holding the name of the entry, and also the `DosList` structure itself, it does not release any other resources. They shall be released by the caller of this function. Furthermore, this function shall not be called if the `DosList` structure was allocated by any other means than `MakeDosEntry()`.

```
FreeDosEntry(dlist)
D1
```

```
void FreeDosEntry(struct DosList *)
```

This function releases the `DosList` structure pointed to by `dlist` and its name, but only these two resources, and no other resources.

If `dol_Type` is `DLT_DEVICE`, corresponding to *handlers* or *file systems*, this function should better not be called at all as the means of how the `DosList` was allocated is unclear. In such a case, a memory leak is the least dangerous side effect.

If `dol_Type` is `DLT_DIRECTORY` or `DLT_LATE`, then `dol_Lock` should be unlocked. If `dol_List` is non-`NULL`, then each entry of the `AssignList` structure shall be released, along with the lock kept within. For `DLT_LATE` and `DLT_NONBINDING`, the `dol_AssignName` function shall also be released. The following code segment releases all resources for *assigns*:



---

```

struct AssignList *al, *next;
UnLock(dol->dol_Lock);
al = dol->dol_misc.dol_assign.dol_List;
while(al) {
    next = al->al_Next;
    UnLock(al->al_Lock);
    FreeVec(al);
    al = next;
}
FreeVec(dol->dol_misc.dol_assign.dol_AssignName);
FreeDosEntry(dol);

```

The above code reflects the way how resources were originally allocated by the *dos.library*.

If the type is `DLT_VOLUME`, it is up to the *file system* to release any resources it allocated along with the `DosList`. It is file system dependent which resources can or should be released. `DosList` entries of this type should only be touched by the *file system* that created them.

This function cannot fail, and it does not touch `IoErr()`.

## 7.6 Creating and Updating Assigns

While `MakeDosEntry()` creates a `DosList` entry for the *device list*, it only performs minimal initialization of the structure. For *assigns*, specifically, the *dos.library* provides specialized functions that allocate, initialize and enqueue `DosList` structures representing assigns in a single call and are thus easier to use.

### 7.6.1 Create and Add a Regular Assign

The `AssignAdd()` function creates a new assign to a directory from a *lock*, and then enqueues it into the *device list*.

```

success = AssignLock(name, lock)
D0          D1    D2

```

```

BOOL AssignLock(STRPTR, BPTR)

```

This function creates a (regular) *assign* onto the directory identified by `lock`. The *assign* created under the name as given by `name`. The name shall not include a trailing colon (":") that separates the *assign* name from the rest of the path. The lock shall be a *shared lock*.

If the function is successful, it returns a non-zero result code. The `lock` is then absorbed into the *assign* and shall no longer be used by the calling program. On success, `IoErr()` is not altered.

On error, the function returns 0 and the `lock` remains available to the caller. `IoErr()` is set to an error code identifying the cause of the failure. `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE` is returned if the function run out of memory. If a `DosList` of the same name (regardless of which type) already exists, the error code is `ERROR_OBJECT_EXISTS`.

### 7.6.2 Create a Non-Binding Assign

The `AssignPath()` function creates a *non-binding assign* and adds it to the *device list*. This type of assign binds to a path independent of the volume the path is located on; that is, the *assign* resolves to whatever *volume*, *handler* or even other *assign* matches the path.

---

```

success = AssignLate(name, path)
D0          D1    D2

```

```

BOOL AssignLate (STRPTR, STRPTR)

```

This function creates a *non-binding* assign whose name is given by the first argument, and which resolves to the path given as second argument, and then adds the *assign* to the *device list*. The *name* shall not contain a trailing colon (“:”). While not a formal requirement of the function or *non-binding assigns*, the *path* should better be an absolute path as otherwise resolution of the created *assign* can be very confusing — it is then resolved relative to the current directory of the calling process.

If the function is successful, it returns a non-zero result code. On success, `IoErr()` is not altered.

On error, the function returns 0 and `IoErr()` is set to an error code identifying the cause of the failure. `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE` is returned if the function run out of memory. If a `DosList` of the same name (regardless of which type) already exists, the error code is `ERROR_OBJECT_EXISTS`.

### 7.6.3 Create a Late Assign

The `AssignLate()` function creates a *late assign* whose target is initially given by a path; but after its first resolution, the *assign* reverts to a *regular assigns* such that the target of the *assign* will point to the same directory of the volume from that point on. This has the advantage that the target of the assign does not need to be available at creation time of the assign, yet remains unchanged after its first usage.

```

success = AssignLate(name, path)
D0          D1    D2

```

```

BOOL AssignLate (STRPTR, STRPTR)

```

This function creates a *late binding assign* of the name *name* pointing to *path* as its destination and adds it to the *device list*. The *name* shall not contain a trailing colon (“:”). While not explicitly required by this function, the *path* should better be an absolute path as otherwise resolving the *assign* can be very confusing. The *path* is then relative to the current directory of the process using the *assign* the first time.

If the function is successful, it returns a non-zero result code. On success, `IoErr()` is not altered.

On error, the function returns 0 and `IoErr()` is set to an error code identifying the cause of the failure. `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE` is returned if the function run out of memory. If a `DosList` of the same name (regardless of which type) already exists, the error code is `ERROR_OBJECT_EXISTS`.

### 7.6.4 Add a Directory to a Multi-Assign

The `AssignAdd()` function adds a directory, identified by a *lock*, to an already existing *regular* or *multi-assign*. On success, a *regular assign* is then converted into a *multi-assign*.

```

success = AssignAdd(name, lock)
D0          D1    D2

```

```

BOOL AssignAdd (STRPTR, BPTR)

```

This function adds the *lock* at the end of the target directory list of the *assign* identified by *name*. The *name* does not contain a trailing colon (“:”).

A `DosList` of the given *name* shall already when entering this function, and this `DosList` shall be a *regular assign*. Attempting to add a directory to a *handler*, *file system*, *volume* or any other type of *assign* fails.

On success, the function returns a non-zero result code. In such a case, the *lock* is absorbed into the *assign* and shall no longer be used by the caller. The *assign* is converted into a *multi-assign* on access if it

---

is not already one. The `lock` is added at the end of the directory list, i.e. the new directory is scanned last when resolving the *assign*.

On error, the function returns 0 and the `lock` remains available to the caller. Unfortunately, this function does not set `IoErr()` consistently, i.e. it is unclear on failure what caused the error, i.e. whether the function run out of memory, whether no fitting *device list* entry was found, or whether the entry found was not a *regular assign*.

### 7.6.5 Remove a Directory From a Multi-Assign

The `RemAssignList()` function removes a directory, represented by a `lock`, from a *multi-assign*. If only a single directory remains in the *multi-assign*, it is converted into a *regular assign*. If the *assign* was a regular assign, and the only directory is removed from it, the *assign* itself is removed from the *device list* and released, destroying it and releasing all resources.

```
success = RemAssignList(name, lock)
D0                      D1    D2
```

```
BOOL RemAssignList(STRPTR, BPTR)
```

This function removes the directory identified by `lock` from a *regular* or *multi-assign* identified by `name`. The name shall not contain a trailing colon (":"). If only a single directory remains in the *assign*, it is converted to a *regular assign*. If no directory remains at all, the *assign* is deleted and removed from the *device list*. The `lock` remains available to the caller, regardless of the result code. Note that the `lock` passed in does not need to be identical to the `lock` contained in the *assign*, but it needs to be a *lock* on the same directory. This function uses `SameLock()` function to compare the two locks.

On success, the function returns a non-zero result code in `success`. On error, the function returns 0. Unfortunately, it does not set `IoErr()` consistently in all cases, and thus, the cause of an error cannot be determined upon return. Possible causes of error are that `name` does not exist, or that it is not a *assign* or a *multi-assign*.

## 7.7 File System Support Functions

Functions in this section act on a *file system* as a whole; thus, they do not need a file or a lock to operate on, but modify the file system globally.

### 7.7.1 Adjusting File System Buffers

The `AddBuffers()` function increases or reduces the number of buffers of a file system.

```
success = AddBuffers(filesystem, number)
D0          D1          D2
```

```
BOOL AddBuffers(STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function adds `number` buffers to the file system whose name is given by `filesystem`. This name consists of a filename, volume, or assign on the *file system* whose buffer count shall be modified, see also `GetDeviceProc()` in section 7.2.1 how a file system is located.

The `number` argument may be both positive — for adding buffers to the file system — or negative, to reduce the number of buffers. The purpose of these buffers is file-system dependent. The Fast File System in ROM uses it to buffer administrative information such as directory contents, but also blocks that describe the location of file content on the disk; thus adding more buffers can help to improve the performance of random-access into the file with `Seek()`.

---

A third purpose of the buffers is to store input and output data of `Read()` or `Write()` if the operation is not aligned to block boundaries or if the source or target buffer is considered unsuitable for direct transfer to the underlying hardware exec device.

This function returns a non-zero result on success and 0 on failure. In first case, it sets `IoErr()` to 0, otherwise it is set to an error code. Some file systems return the current number of buffers allocated; callers should thus be prepared that the return code is not equal to `DOSTRUE` to indicate success.

### 7.7.2 Change the Name of a Volume

The `Relabel()` function changes the name of a volume a file system operates on.

```
success = Relabel(volumename, name)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL Relabel (STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function relabels the volume that resides on the *file system* corresponding to the `volumename` path. This path is resolved through `GetDeviceProc()` and thus may be a relative or absolute path, the device or the volume name. As `filesystem` is interpreted as a path, a device or volume name passed in shall include a colon (":") as it would be otherwise interpreted as a path relative to the current directory.

The volume name of the medium or partition is then changed to `name`. Unlike the first argument, `name` shall *not* contain a colon (":") nor a slash ("/").

This function returns a non-zero result code for success or 0 for an error. In the first case, it sets `IoErr()` to 0, in the latter case to an error code.

### 7.7.3 Initializing a File System

The `Format()` function initializes a complete file system, writing administration information on the file system that corresponds to an empty medium. Thus, this function erases all information stored in it.

```
success = Format(filesystem, volumename, dostype)
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL Format (STRPTR, STRPTR, ULONG)
```

This function erases all information on the medium or partition identified by `filesystem`, which is interpreted as a path. Thus, it may be a device or volume name, which shall then be terminated by a colon (":"). However, all other path names also work; however, if they do not include a colon, the argument is interpreted as a path name relative to the current directory, and thus will initialize the file system corresponding to it. This is probably not desirable.

To block processes from accessing information on the file system while it is initializing, it should be inhibited upfront, e.g by `Inhibit(filesystem, DOSTRUE)` or lower level direct communication to the handler, see section 12.9.2. Initializing is the only operation file systems are able to perform while being inhibited.

The `Format()` function *does not* attempt a low-level initialization of the corresponding medium; that is, it does not attempt to low-level format it on the physical layer as required when a floppy disk shall be prepared for initial use. This step needs to be performed manually by first blocking access of the file system to the floppy through `Inhibit()`, then initializing the physical layer through the exec device driver upfront, e.g. by the command `TD_FORMAT`, and then finally by calling this function.

---

The volume name of the medium or partition is initialized to `volumename`, which *shall not* contain a colon (":") nor a slash ("/"). Note that not all file systems support volume names. In such cases, this argument is ignored.

The `dostype` defines the flavour of file system created on the device if the file system allows multiple variations. The variations the Fast File System supports along with other file systems are listed in table 28. This corresponds to the `DOSTYPE` in the mount list. File systems may also ignore this argument if they only support a single flavour.

Unfortunately, AmigaDOS does not provide an easy way to access the flavours supported by a file system. The `Format` command of the workbench offers the types listed in the first half of table 28 if the mount entry of the file system indicates that it is the FFS, and otherwise does not offer any choices and just copies the `dostype` from the `de_DosType` of the `DosEnvec` structure, see also section 7.1.

After initializing the file system, use `Inhibit (filesystem, DOSFALSE)` or its corresponding packet `ACTION_INHIBIT` to grant the file system access to the partition or medium again. As the volume name can be different and *locks* or *file handles* on the original file system clearly became invalid, it is advisable to pass the *device name* of the *file system* to `Inhibit ()` if this call is used, see also sections 4.3.1.1 and 7.7.4.

This function returns a boolean success indicator that is non-zero on success or 0 on error. In either case, `IoErr ()` is set to 0 on success or an error code on failure.

### 7.7.4 Inhibiting a File System

The `Inhibit ()` function disables or enables access of the *file system* to the underlying exec device driver. Typical application for this function are disk editors or file system salvage tools that require exclusive access to the file system structure.

```
success = Inhibit (filesystem, flag)
D0                      D1          D2

BOOL Inhibit (STRPTR, LONG)
```

This call controls whether the file system identified by the path name given as `filesystem` is allowed to access the medium or partition it usually operates on. The `filesystem` argument is interpreted through `GetDeviceProc ()` to find the process responsible for the medium. That is, the function resolves relative and absolute paths, device and volume names, and even assigns. As `filesystem` is interpreted as a path, a device or volume name passed in shall include a colon (":") as it would be otherwise interpreted as a path relative to the current directory.

The `flag` argument controls whether access to the medium is allowed or disallowed. If `flag` is set to `DOSTRUE`, access is inhibited and the *file system* stops accessing the partition or volume. It also sets `id_DiskType` to the four-character code 'BUSY', which will be interpreted by the workbench to ghost the corresponding drive icon. Application programs are then allowed to access the exec device driver directly to access or modify blocks within the partition managed by the inhibited *file system*.

If `flag` is set to `DOSFALSE`, access to the medium is allowed again. The *file system* then performs a consistency check of the file system structure of the disk, i.e. validates it.

This function returns a non-zero result code for success and then sets `IoErr ()` to 0. On error, it returns 0 and provides an error code in `IoErr ()`.

### 7.7.5 Receive Information when a Volume is Request

The `VolumeRequestHook ()` function is called by the *dos.library* whenever it attempts to request the user to insert a volume.

---

```
res = VolumeRequestHook(volume)
D0                                D1

LONG VolumeRequestHook(UBYTE *volume)
```

This function is not supposed to be called by clients, it is rather called by the *dos.library* and provided to be patched by application programs that want to learn whenever AmigaDOS is about to show a requester to ask for a specific volume.

The argument this function receives is the name of the volume AmigaDOS is about to ask for. without a trailing colon (“:”). If this function returns `DOSTRUE`, then the *dos.library* progresses to show a requester to ask the user to insert `volume`. If this function returns `DOSFALSE`, the requester is suppressed as if the user pressed `Cancel` on it, thus refusing to insert the volume.

---

## Chapter 8

# Pattern Matching

Unlike other operating systems, it is neither the file system nor the shell that expands wild cards, or patterns. Instead, separate functions exist that, given a wildcard, scan a directory or an entire directory tree and deliver all files, links and directories that match a given pattern.

The pattern matcher syntax is build on special characters or *tokens* that define which names to match. The following tokens are currently defined:

- ? The question mark matches a single, arbitrary character within a component. When using the pattern matcher for scanning directories, the question mark does not match the component separator, i.e. the slash (“/”) and the colon (“:”) that separates the path from the device name. Note in particular that the question mark also matches the dot (“.”) which is not a special character under AmigaDOS.
- # The hash mark matches zero or more repeats of the token immediately following it. In particular, the combination “#?” matches zero or more arbitrary characters. If a group of more than one token is required to describe which combination needs to match, this group needs to be enclosed in brackets.
- () The brackets bind tokens together forming a single token. This is particularly useful for the hash mark # as it allows to formulate repeats of longer character or token groups. For example, # (ab) indicates zero or more repeats of the character sequence ab, such as ab, abab or ababab.
- ~ The ASCII tilde (“~”) matches names that do not match the next token. This is particularly valuable for filtering out the workbench icon files that end on .info, i.e. ~(#?.info) matches all files that do not end with .info.
- [] The square brackets (“[]”) matches a single character from a range, e.g. [a-z] matches a single alphabetic character and [0-9] matches a single digit. Multiple ranges and individual characters can be combined, for example [ab] matches the characters a and b, whereas [a-cx-z] matches the characters from a to c and from x to z. If the minus sign (“-”) is supposed to be part of the range, it shall appear first, directly within the bracket, e.g. [-a-c] matches the dash and the characters a to c. If the dash is the last character in the range, all characters up to the end of the ASCII range, i.e. 0x7f match, but none of the extended ISO Latin 1 characters match. If the closing square bracket (“]”) is to be matched, it shall be escaped by an apostroph (“’”), i.e. [ [-’ ] ] matches the opening and the closing bracket. If the pattern matcher is used for scanning directories, the above example does not match the slash (“/”) even though its code point lies between the opening and closing bracket because the slash cannot be part of a component name and rather separates components. If the first character of the range is an ASCII tilde (“~”), then the character class matches all characters *not* in the class, i.e. [~a-z] matches all characters except alphabetic characters. In all other places, the tilde stands for itself.

- ' The apostroph (') is the escape character of the pattern matcher and indicates that the next character is not a token of the matcher, but rather stands for itself. Thus, ' ? matches the question mark, and only the question mark, and no other character.
- % The percent sign ("%") matches the empty string.
- | The vertical bar ("|") defines alternatives and matches the token to its left or the token to its right. The alternatives along with the vertical bar shall be enclosed in round brackets to bind them, i.e. (a|b) is either the character a or b and therefore matches the same strings [ab] matches. A particular example is ~((#?.info)|.backdrop) which matches all files not used by the workbench for storing meta-information.

**The Asterisk \* is not a Wildcard** Unlike many other operating systems, the asterisk ("\*") has a (two) other meanings under AmigaDOS. It rather refers to the current console as file name, or is the escape character for quotation and control sequences; those are properties AmigaDOS inherits from the BCPL syntax and TRIPOS. While there is a flag in the *dos.library* that makes the asterisk *also* available as a wildcard, such usage is discouraged because it can lead to situations where the asterisk is interpreted differently than intended — as it has already two other meanings.

Pattern matching works in in two steps: In the first step, the pattern is tokenized into an internal representation, which is then later on used to perform the actual match of a string against a wildcard. The directory scanning function `MatchFirst()` performs this conversion internally, and thus no additional preparation is required by the caller in this case. However, if the pattern matcher is used to search for strings or wildcards within a text file, the pattern tokenizers `ParsePattern()` or its case-insensitive counterpart `ParsePatternNoCase()` shall be called first.

**Only ISO-Latin Codepoints** The pre-parsing step that prepares from the input pattern its tokenized version uses the code points 0x80 to 0x9f for tokenized versions of wild-cards and other instructions for the pattern matcher. This is identical to the extended ISO-Latin control sequence region, and does not represent printable characters. While file names on AmigaDOS *file systems* may in principle include such code-points, patterns of the pattern matcher *shall not* contain unprintable code points from the region 0x00 to 0x1f or from 0x80 to 0x9f. These regions are reserved for the pattern matcher.

## 8.1 Scanning Directories

The prime purpose of the pattern matcher is to scan a directory, or even a tree of directories, identifying all *file system* objects such as files, links or directories that match a given pattern. The pattern matcher can even descend recursively into sub-directories if instructed to do so. This service is used by many shell commands stored in the C: *assign*. The directory scanner requires the following steps:

First, the user shall provide an `AnchorPath` structure. This structure contains the state of the directory matcher, including the `FileInfoBlock` structure of the matched object. This structure is defined in section 6.1. Optionally, the `AnchorPath` structure may also contain the complete (relative) path of the matched object. This structure shall then be initialized, setting all flags required, see below for their definition.

**Must be Long-Word Aligned** As the `AnchorPath` structure embeds a `FileInfoBlock` structure that requires long-word alignment, the `AnchorPath` structure shall be aligned to long-word boundaries as well. The simplest way to ensure this is to allocate it with either `AllocMem()` or `AllocVec()`, see also section 2.3.



---

Then, with the initialized `AnchorPath` structure, `MatchFirst()` shall be called, returning the first match of the pattern if there is any. The `AnchorPath` structure then contains all information on the found match.

If there is any match, and the match is a directory the caller wants to enter recursively, the `APF_DODIR` flag of the `AnchorPath` structure may be set. Then, `MatchNext()` may be called to continue the scan, potentially entering this directory. Once the end of a recursively entered directory has been reached, `MatchNext()` sets the `APF_DIDDIR` flag, then reverts back to the parent directory continuing the scan there. As `APF_DIDDIR` is never cleared by the pattern matcher, the caller should clear it once the end of a sub-directory had been noticed.

The above iterative procedure of `MatchNext()` may continue, either until the user or the running program requests termination, or until `MatchNext()` returns an error. Then, finally, the scan is aborted and all resources but the `AnchorPath` structure shall be released by calling `MatchNext()`.

The `AnchorPath` structure is defined in `dos/dosasl.h` and looks as follows:

```
struct AnchorPath {
    struct AChain    *ap_Base;
#define ap_First ap_Base
    struct AChain    *ap_Last;
#define ap_Current ap_Last
    LONG             ap_BreakBits;
    LONG             ap_FoundBreak;
    BYTE             ap_Flags;
    BYTE             ap_Reserved;
    WORD             ap_Strlen;
    struct FileInfoBlock ap_Info;
    UBYTE            ap_Buf[1];
};
```

The members of this structure are as follows:

`ap_Base` and `ap_Last` are pointers to an `AChain` structure that is also defined in `dos/dosasl.h`. This structure is allocated and released by the *dos.library*, transparently to the caller. The `AChain` structure describes a directory in the potentially recursive scan through a directory tree. `ap_Base` describes the topmost directory at which the scan started, whereas `ap_Last` describes the directory which is currently being scanned.

The `AChain` structure is also defined in `dos/dosasl.h`:

```
struct AChain {
    struct AChain    *an_Child;
    struct AChain    *an_Parent;
    BPTR             an_Lock;
    struct FileInfoBlock an_Info;
    BYTE             an_Flags;
    UBYTE            an_String[1];
};
```

`an_Child` and `an_Parent` are only used internally and shall not be interpreted by the caller.

`an_Lock` is a lock to the directory corresponding to the `AChain` structure, i.e. `ap_Last->an_Lock` is a lock to the directory that is currently being scanned, and `ap_Base->an_Lock` a lock to the topmost directory at which the scan started. These two locks have been obtained and will be unlocked by the *dos.library*; they may be used by the caller provided they are not unlocked manually.

---

`an_Info` is only used internally and is the `FileInfoBlock` of the directory being describes by the `AChain` structure, see section 6.1.

`an_Flags` is only used internally, and `an_String` can contain potentially the path to the directory; both shall not be modified or interpreted by the caller.

`ap_BreakBits` of the `AnchorPath` structure shall be initialized to a signal mask upon which `MatchNext()` aborts a directory scan. This is typically a combination of signal masks defined in the `dos/dos.h` include file, e.g. `SIGBREAKF_CTRL_C` to abort on a `Ctrl-C` in the console.

`ap_FoundBreak` contains, if `MatchNext()` aborts with `ERROR_BREAK`, the signal mask that caused the abortion.

`ap_Flags` contains multiple flags that can be set or inspected by the caller while scanning a directory. In particular:

`APF_DOWILD` while documented, is not used nor set at all by the pattern matcher.

`APF_ITSWILD` is set by `MatchFirst()` if the pattern includes a wildcard and more than a single *file system* object may match. Otherwise, no directory scan is performed. The user may also set this flag to enforce a scan. This may resolve situations in which matching an explicit path without a wildcard is not possible because the object is locked exclusively.

`APF_DODIR` may be set or reset by the caller of `MatchNext()` to enforce entering a directory recursively, or avoid entering a directory. This flag is cleared by `MatchNext()` when entering a directory, and it shall only be set by the caller if a match describes a directory.

`APF_DIDDIR` is set by `MatchNext()` if the end of a recursively entered directory has been reached, and thus the parent directory is re-entered. As this flag is never cleared by the pattern matcher, it should be cleared by the caller.

`APF_NOMEMERR` is an internal flag that should not be interpreted; it is set if an error is encountered while scanning a directory. It is not necessarily restricted to memory allocation errors.

`APF_DODOT` is, even though documented, not actually used.

`APF_DirChanged` is a flag that is set by `MatchNext()` if the scanned directory changes, either by entering a directory recursively, or by leaving a directory. It is also cleared if the directory is the same as in the previous call.

`APF_FollowHLinks` may be set by the caller to indicate that hard links to directories shall be followed, and such directories shall be recursively entered if `APF_DODIR` is set as well. Otherwise, hard links to directories are not entered. Softlinks are neither entered, this this cannot be changed by any flag. A potential danger of links is that they may cause endless recursion if a link within a directory points to a parent directory. Thus, callers should be aware of such situations and store directories that have already been analyzed. Otherwise, it is safer to keep this flag cleared.

`ap_Strlen` is the size of the buffer `ap_Buf` that contains the full path of the matched entry. This buffer shall be allocated by the user at the end of the `AnchorPath` structure. Unlike what the name suggests, this is not a string length, but the byte size of the buffer, including the terminating NUL byte of a string. If the full path of the match does not fit into this buffer, it is truncated *without* proper string termination and the error code `ERROR_BUFFER_OVERFLOW` is returned. If the full path is not required, this member shall be set to 0.

`ap_Info` contains the `FileInfoBlock` of the matched entry, including all metadata the file system has available for it. Note that `fib_FileFile` only contains the name of the object, not its full path.

`ap_Buf` is filled with the full path to the matched object if `ap_Strlen` is non-zero. This buffer shall be allocated by the caller at the end of the `AnchorPath` structure, i.e. for a buffer of *l* bytes, in total `sizeof(AnchorPath)+l-1` bytes are required to store the structure and the buffer. The byte size of this additional buffer shall be placed in `ap_Strlen`. If this buffer is not required, `ap_Strlen` shall be set to 0.

---

### 8.1.1 Starting a Directory Scan

The `MatchFirst()` function starts a directory scan, locating all objects matching a pattern and potentially entering directories recursively.

```
error = MatchFirst(pat, AnchorPath)
D0          D1          D2

LONG MatchFirst(STRPTR, struct AnchorPath *)
```

This function starts a directory scan, locating all objects matching the pattern `pat`. This pattern does *not* require pre-parsing (e.g. the functions in section 8.2), `MatchFirst()` performs the parsing.

`AnchorPath` shall be a pointer to an `AnchorPath` structure allocated and initialized by the caller. In particular, `ap_BreakBits` shall be initialized to a signal mask on which the scan terminates. Furthermore, `ap_FoundBreak` shall be set to 0, and `ap_Strlen` to the size of the buffer `ap_Buf` which is filled by the path name of the matching objects. If this path name is not required, `ap_Strlen` shall be set to 0. `ap_Flags` shall be set to the flags you need, see the parent section.

Unlike many other functions, `MatchFirst()` returns an error code directly, and not a success/failure indicator. That is, 0 indicates success. In particular, if `ERROR_BREAK` is returned in case any of the signal bits in `ap->ap_BreakBits` have been received during the scan.

On success, `ap->ap_Info.fib_FileName` contains the name of the first matched object, the directory represented as a *lock* containing the object is available in `ap->ap_Current->an_Lock`. You would typically set the current directory to this lock, then access this object, then revert the lock. This lock *shall not* be released; this is performed by the pattern matcher itself as needed.

If the full path of the matching object is needed, an additional buffer shall be allocated at the end of the `AnchorPath`, and the size of the buffer shall be placed into `ap_Strlen`. The function then fills in the path into `ap_Buf`.

If the matching object is a directory, i.e. `ap->ap_Info.fib_DirEntryType` is positive and not equal to `ST_SOFTLINK`, the caller may request to enter it by setting `APF_DODIR` in `ap->ap_Flags`.

### 8.1.2 Continuing a Directory Scan

The `MatchNext()` function continues a directory scan initiated by `MatchFirst()`, returning the next matching object, or an error.

```
error = MatchNext(AnchorPath)
D0          D1

LONG MatchNext(struct AnchorPath *)
```

This function takes an existing `AnchorPath` structure, as prepared by a previous `MatchFirst()` or `MatchNext()` function, and finds the next matching object. Unlike most other functions of the *dos.library*, this function returns an error code on failure and 0 for success. It does *not* return a boolean success indicator. In particular, if `ERROR_BREAK` is returned in case any of the signal bits in `ap->ap_BreakBits` have been received.

As for `MatchFirst()`, this call fills `ap->ap_Info` with meta information on the found object, in particular its file name, and `ap->ap_Current->an_Lock` the lock of the directory containing the object. As for `MatchFirst()`, `APF_DODIR` can be set to enter directories recursively, and `ap->ap_Buf` will be filled with the full path of the found object if `ap->ap_Strlen` is non-zero.

---

### 8.1.3 Terminating a Directory Scan

The `MatchEnd()` function terminates a running scan, and releases all resources associated with the scan. It does not release the `AnchorPath` structure.

```
MatchEnd(AnchorPath)
        D1
```

```
VOID MatchEnd(struct AnchorPath *)
```

This function ends a directory scan started by `MatchFirst()` and releases all resources associated to the scan. This function shall be called regardless whether the scan is aborted due to exhaustion (i.e. `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`, by error, or by choice of the scanning program (i.e. the desired object has been detected and no further matches are required).

## 8.2 Matching Strings against Patterns

While the prime purpose of the pattern matcher is to scan directories, it can also be used to check whether an arbitrary string matches a wildcard, for example to scan for a pattern within a text document. This requires two steps: In the first step, the wildcard is preprocessed, generating a tokenized version of the pattern. The second step checks whether a given input string matches the pattern. You would typically tokenize the pattern once, and then use it to match multiple strings to the pattern.

Two versions of the tokenizer and pattern matcher exist: One pair that is case-sensitive, and the second pair is case-insensitive. Note that AmigaDOS file names are case-insensitive, so the `MatchFirst()` and `MatchNext()` functions internally only use the second pair.

The buffer for the tokenized version of the pattern shall be allocated by the caller. It requires a buffer that is at least  $2 + (n \ll 1)$  bytes large, where  $n$  is the length of the input wildcard.

### 8.2.1 Tokenizing a Case-Sensitive Pattern

The `ParsePattern()` function tokenizes a pattern for case-sensitive string matching. This tokenized version is then later on used to test a string for a match.

```
IsWild = ParsePattern(Source, Dest, DestLength)
d0              D1      D2      D3
```

```
LONG ParsePattern(STRPTR, STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function tokenizes a wildcard pattern in `Source`, generating a tokenized version of the pattern in `Dest`. The size (capacity) of the target buffer is `DestLength` bytes. This size shall be at least  $2 + (n \ll 1)$  bytes large, where  $n$  is the length of the input pattern. However, as future implementations can require larger buffers, the result code shall be checked nevertheless for error conditions. The result code `IsWild` is one of the following:

1 is returned if the source contained wildcards.

0 is returned if the source contains no wildcards. In this case, the tokenized pattern may still be used to match a string against the pattern, though a simple string comparison would also work.

-1 is returned in case of an error, either because the input pattern is ill-formed, or because `DestLength` is too short. In such a case, `IoErr()` should be used to obtain the reason of the failure.

---

## 8.2.2 Tokenizing a Case-Insensitive Pattern

The `ParsePatternNoCase()` function tokenizes a pattern for case-insensitive string matching. This tokenized version is then later on used to test a string for a match. This version is suitable for matching file names, but is otherwise similar to `ParsePattern()`.

```
IsWild = ParsePatternNoCase(Source, Dest, DestLength)
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
LONG ParsePatternNoCase(STRPTR, STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function tokenizes a wildcard pattern in `Source`, generating a tokenized version of the pattern in `Dest`. The size (capacity) of the target buffer is `DestLength` bytes. This size shall be at least  $2 + (n \ll 1)$  bytes large, where  $n$  is the length of the input pattern. However, as future implementations can require larger buffers, the result code shall be checked nevertheless for error conditions. The result code `IsWild` is one of the following:

- 1 is returned if the source contained wildcards.

- 0 is returned if the source contains no wildcards. In this case, the tokenized pattern may still be used to match a string against the pattern, though a simple case-insensitive string comparison would also work.

- 1 is returned in case of an error, either because the input pattern is ill-formed, or because `DestLength` is too short. In such a case, `IoErr()` should be used to obtain the reason of the failure.

## 8.2.3 Match a String against a Pattern

The `MatchPattern()` function matches an input string against a tokenized pattern, in a case sensitive way.

```
match = MatchPattern(pat, str)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL MatchPattern(STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function matches the string `str` against the tokenized pattern `pat`, returning an indicator whether the string matches the pattern. This function is case-sensitive. The pattern `pat` shall have been tokenized by `ParsePattern()`.

The result code `match` is non-zero in case the string matches, or 0 in case either the string did not match, or the function run out of stack. The latter two cases can be distinguished by `IoErr()`. In case the string did not match, `IoErr()` returns 0, or a non-zero error code otherwise. A possible error code is `ERROR_TOO_MANY_LEVELS` indicating that the pattern matcher run out of stack due to too many levels of recursion.

The caller shall have at least 1500 bytes of stack space available to avoid race conditions, despite the function checking for out-of-stack conditions.

## 8.2.4 Match a String against a Pattern ignoring Case

The `MatchPatternNoCase()` function matches an input string against a tokenized pattern ignoring the case.

```
match = MatchPatternNoCase(pat, str)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL MatchPatternCase(STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

---

This function matches the string `str` against the tokenized pattern `pat`, returning an indicator whether the string matches the pattern. This function is case-insensitive. The pattern `pat` shall have been tokenized by `ParsePatternNoCase()`.

The result code `match` is non-zero in case the string matches, or 0 in case either the string did not match, or the function run out of stack. The latter two cases can be distinguished by `IoErr()`. In case the string did not match, `IoErr()` returns 0, or a non-zero error code otherwise. A possible error code is `ERROR_TOO_MANY_LEVELS` indicating that the pattern matcher run out of stack due to too many levels of recursion.

The caller shall have at least 1500 bytes of stack space available to avoid race conditions, despite the function checking for out-of-stack conditions.

---

## Chapter 9

# Processes

*Processes* are extensions of *exec tasks*, and as such scheduled by *exec*. The most important extensions are that processes include a message port in the form of a *MsgPort* structure for inter-process communication to *handlers*, a current directory to resolve relative paths, and the last input/output error as returned by the `IoErr()` function.

*Processes* are represented by the `Process` structure documented in `dos/dosextens.h`. It reads as follows:

```
struct Process {
    struct Task    pr_Task;
    struct MsgPort pr_MsgPort;
    WORD          pr_Pad;
    BPTR          pr_SegList;
    LONG          pr_StackSize;
    APTR          pr_GlobVec;
    LONG          pr_TaskNum;
    BPTR          pr_StackBase;
    LONG          pr_Result2;
    BPTR          pr_CurrentDir;
    BPTR          pr_CIS;
    BPTR          pr_COS;
    APTR          pr_ConsoleTask;
    APTR          pr_FileSystemTask;
    BPTR          pr_CLI;
    APTR          pr_ReturnAddr;
    APTR          pr_PktWait;
    APTR          pr_WindowPtr;

    /* following definitions are new with 2.0 */
    BPTR          pr_HomeDir;
    LONG          pr_Flags;
    void          (*pr_ExitCode)();
    LONG          pr_ExitData;
    UBYTE         *pr_Arguments;
    struct MinList pr_LocalVars;
    ULONG         pr_ShellPrivate;
    BPTR          pr_CES;
}; /* Process */
```

---

The members of this structure are as follows:

`pr_Task` is the exec task structure defined in `exec/tasks.h`. It is required by the exec scheduler. The only difference between an exec Task and a Process is that `pr_Task.tc_Node.ln_Type` is set to `NT_PROCESS` instead to `NT_TASK`. Prior starting the process, the *dos.library* also pushes the stack size onto the stack, i.e. `(ULONG *) (pr_Task.tc_Upper) [-1]` contains the size of the stack in bytes. Some binaries, in particular those compiled with the Aztec (Manx) compiler depend on this value.

`pr_MsgPort` is a message port structure as defined in `exec/ports.h`. This port is used by many functions of the *dos.library* to communicate with *handlers* and *file systems*. Details of the communication protocol are given in section 11.

`pr_Pad` is unused and only included in the structure to ensure that all following members are aligned to 32-bit boundaries.

`pr_SegList` contains an array of *segments* containing AmigaDOS functions. The first entry in this array is a 32-bit integer indicating the number of valid elements, the remaining entries are *BPTR*s to segments of AmigaDOS and the loaded binary. Some entries may be `ZERO` indicating that the corresponding entry is currently not used. Segments are explained in more detail in section 10. Typically, entries 1 and 2 are system segments containing AmigaDOS functions, entry 3 is used for the loaded binary, and entry 4 the segment of the shell. This, however, only reflects the current usage of segments, and later versions of AmigaDOS may populate this vector differently. The segments contained in this vector are used by the AmigaDOS runtime binder to build the *Global Vector* of processes using BCPL linkage. As BPCL is phased out, this vector is of no particular importance today anymore, and can be ignored for almost all purposes. The only exception is the *Shell* which shall prepare this vector to ensure that commands written in BCPL function properly. More on this in section 13.

`pr_StackSize` is the size of the process stack in bytes. It is always a multiple of 4 bytes long.

`pr_GlobVec` is another BCPL legacy. It contains the *Global Vector* of the process. For binaries using the BCPL linkages, this is a custom-build array of global data and function entry points from `pr_SegList`. For C and assembler binaries, the *Global Vector* is the system shared vector; it contains *dos.library* global data required by some of its functions, such as base pointers to system libraries. As no particular advantage can be taken from this vector (anymore) as all functions available in it are also available as *dos.library* entry points, it should be left alone.

`pr_TaskNum` is an integer allocated by the system for processes that execute a shell, or are binaries that have been launched by the shell. The number here corresponds to the integer printed by the `Status` command. Note that AmigaDOS does not use task numbers consistently, i.e. processes that are started from the workbench or have been created by some other means are not identified by a task number. In such a case, this member remains 0.

`pr_StackBase` is a *BPTR* to the address of the lower end of the stack, i.e. the end of the C or assembler stack. As the BCPL stack grows in opposite direction, it is the start of the BCPL stack. While it is initialized, it is not used by the *dos.library* at all.

`pr_Result2` is the secondary result code set by many functions of the *dos.library*. The value stored here is delivered by `IoErr()`.

`pr_CurrentDir` is the *lock* representing the current directory of the process. All relative paths are resolved from this *lock*, i.e. they are relative to `pr_CurrentDir`. If this member is `ZERO`, the current directory is the root directory of the file system stored in `pr_FileSystemTask`. As the latter is (unless altered) the file system of the boot volume, this is usually identical to the directory identified by the `SYS` assign.

`pr_CIS` is *file handle* of the standard input stream of the process. It is also returned by `Input()`. It can be `ZERO` in case the process does not have a standard input stream. This is *not* equivalent to a `NIL`: input handle — in fact, any attempt to read from a non-existing input stream will crash. Processes started from the workbench do not have an input stream, unless one is installed here with `SelectInput()`.



---

`pr_COS` is the *file handle* of the standard output stream of the process. It is also returned by the `Output()` function of the *dos.library*. It can be `ZERO` in case the process does not have a standard output stream, which is not equivalent to a `NIL:` file handle. Any attempt to output to `ZERO` will crash the system. Processes started from the workbench do not have an output stream, unless one is installed with `SelectOutput()`.

`pr_ConsoleTask` is the *MsgPort* of the console within which this process is run, if such a console exists. This *handler* is contacted when opening “\*” or a path relative to `CONSOLE:`. Processes started from the workbench do not have a console, unless one is installed with `SetConsoleTask()`.

`pr_FileSystemTask` is the *MsgPort* of the file system that is contacted in case a relative path is to be resolved relative to the `ZERO` lock. This member is initialized to the *MsgPort* of the file system the system was booted from, but can be changed by `SetFileSysTask()`. This member is also returned by `GetFileSysTask()`.

`pr_CLI` is a *BPTR* to the `CommandLineInterface` structure containing information on the Shell this process is running in. If this process is not part of a Shell, this member is `ZERO`. This is for example the case for programs started from the workbench, or *handler* or *file system*.

`pr_ReturnAddr` is another *BCPL* legacy and should not be used by new implementations. It points to the *BCPL* stack frame of the process or the command overloading the process, and used there to restore the previous stack frame for the `Exit()` function. This is typically the process cleanup code for processes initialized by `CreateProc()` or `CreateNewProc()`, or the shell command shutdown code placed there by `RunCommand()`. This cleanup process does not, however, release any other resources obtained by user code. *BCPL* code or custom startup code could deposit here pointer to a *BCPL* stack frame for a custom shutdown mechanism.

The *BCPL* stack frame is described by the following (undocumented) structure:

```
struct BCPLStackFrame {
    ULONG bpsf_StackSize;
    APTR  bpsf_PreviousStack;
};
```

where `bpsf_StackSize` is the stack size of the current (active) stack, and `bpsf_PreviousStack` the stack of the caller; to restore the previous stack, this value is placed in the CPU register `A7`.

`pr_PktWait` is a function that is called when waiting for inter-process communication, in particular when waiting for a returning packet set out to a handler. If this is `NULL`, the system default function is used. The signature of this function is

```
msg = (*pr_PktWait)(void)
D0
```

```
struct Message *(*pr_PktWait)(void)
```

that is, no particular arguments are delivered, the process must be obtained from `exec`, and the message received shall be delivered back into register `D0`. The returned pointer shall not be `NULL`, rather, this function shall block until a message has been received. For details, see the `DoPkt()` function and section 11.

`pr_WindowPtr` is, unlike what the name suggests, a pointer to an *intuition* `Screen` structure, see `intuition/screens.h`, on which error requesters will appear. If this is `NULL`, error requesters appear on the workbench screen, and if this is set to `(APTR) (-1L)`, error requesters will be suppressed at all, and the implied response to them is to cancel the operation. This error requester is specified in more detail with the `ErrorReport()` function.

`pr_HomeDir` is the *lock* to the directory containing the binary that is currently executed as this process, if such a directory exists. It is `ZERO` if the binary is resident. This *lock* is filled in by the Shell or the

---

Workbench when loading and starting a process. It is used to resolve paths relative to the `PROGDIR` pseudo-assign, see section 7. If this lock is `ZERO`, any attempt to resolve a path within `PROGDIR:` will create a request to insert a volume `PROGDIR:`, which is probably not a very useful reaction of AmigaDOS.

`pr_Flags` are system-use only flags that shall not be used or interpreted. They are used by the system process shutdown code to identify which resources need to be released, but future systems may find additional uses for this member.

`pr_ExitCode()` is a pointer to a function that is called by AmigaDOS as part of the process shutdown code, and as such quite more useful than `pr_ReturnAddr`. The function prototype is as follows:

```
returncode = ExitFunc(rc, exitdata)
D0                                D0 D1

LONG ExitFunc(LONG, LONG)
```

The value of `rc` is the return code process, i.e. the value left in register `D0` when the code drops off the final RTS, and `exitdata` is taken from `pr_ExitData`. The `returncode` is a modified version of the process return code that is, however, ignored.

`pr_ExitData` is used as argument for the `pr_ExitCode()` function, see above.

`pr_Arguments` is a pointer to the command line arguments of the process if it corresponds to a command started from the Shell. This is a NUL terminated string. This argument string can also be found in register `A0` for programs started from the Shell, or in the buffer of `pr_CIS`. The `ReadArgs()` function takes it from the latter source, and not from `pr_Arguments`. Otherwise, this member remains `NULL`.

`pr_LocalVars` is a `MinList` structure, as defined in `exec/lists.h`, that contains local variables specific to the shell within which the process is executed, if any. The structure of such variables is defined in `dos/var.h`. This structure is specified in section 13.

`pr_ShellPrivate` is reserved for the Shell and its value shall not be used, modified or interpreted. It is currently unused, but can be used by future releases.

`pr_CES` is the *file handle* to be used for error output. This stream goes usually to the console the process runs in, if such a console exists. This handle can be changed by `SelectError()`. If `pr_CES` is `NULL`, processes should fall back to `pr_COS` for printing errors. Preferably, processes should use the `ErrorOutput()` function to obtain an error stream, though.

## 9.1 Creating and Terminating Processes

AmigaDOS provides several functions to create functions: `CreateNewProc()` is the revised and most flexible function for launching a process, taking many parameters in the form of a tag list. The legacy function `CreateProc()` supports less options, but available under all OS versions. Shells as created by the `System()` function implicitly also create processes, but are not discussed here, but in section 13. Therefore, `System()` shares a couple of options with `CreateNewProc()`.

There is surprisingly not a single function to delete processes. Processes die whenever their execution drops off at the end of the `main()` function, or whenever execution reaches the final RTS instruction of the main program function. The `Exit()` function also terminates a process, but shall be called from within the process, and is typically not suitable as it does not release resources acquired by the program itself, but only those allocated by the system itself.

### 9.1.1 Creating a New Process from a TagList

The `CreateNewProc()` function takes a `TagItem` array as defined in `utility/tagitem.h` and launches a new process from this list. The tags this function takes are defined in `dos/dostags.h`.

```

process = CreateNewProc(tags)
D0                                     D1

struct Process *CreateNewProc(struct TagItem *)

process = CreateNewProcTagList(tags)
D0                                     D1

struct Process *CreateNewProcTagList(struct TagItem *)

process = CreateNewProcTags(Tag1, ...)

struct Process *CreateNewProcTags(ULONG, ...)

```

The above functions go all through the same entry points of the *dos.library*, only the calling conventions are different. For `CreateNewProcTags()`, the `TagList` is created by the compiler on the stack and a pointer is then implicitly passed into the function. The following tags are recognized by the function:

`NP_Seglist` takes a *BPTR* to a segment list as returned by `LoadSeg()` and launches the process at the first byte of the first segment of the list.

`NP_FreeSeglist` is a boolean indicator that defines whether the segment provided to `NP_Seglist` is released when the process terminates. Unlike what the official documentation claims, the default value of this tag is `DOSFALSE`, i.e. the segment is *not* released.

`NP_Entry` is mutually exclusive to `NP_Seglist` and defines an absolute address (and not a segment) as entry point of the process to be created. If this tag is provided, then `NP_FreeSeglist` shall *not* be set a non-zero value. Either `NP_Entry` or `NP_Seglist` shall be included.

`NP_Input` sets the input file handle, i.e. `pr_CIS` of the process to be created. This tag takes a *BPTR* to a *file handle*. The default is *not* to set the input file handle, e.g. to leave it `ZERO`.

`NP_CloseInput` selects whether the input file handle, if provided, will be closed when the process terminates. If non-zero, the input file handle will be closed, otherwise it remains opened. The default is to close the input file handle.

`NP_Output` sets the output file handle, i.e. `pr_COS` of the process to be created. This tag takes a *BPTR* to a *file handle*. The default is to leave the output at `ZERO`.

`NP_CloseOutput` selects whether the output file handle, if provided, will be closed when the process terminates. If non-zero, the output file handle will be closed, otherwise it remains open. The default is to close the output file handle.

`NP_Error` sets the error file handle, i.e. `pr_CES` of the process to be created. This tag also takes a *BPTR* to a *file handle*. The default is to leave the error output handle at `ZERO`.

`NP_CloseError` selects whether the error file handle, if provided, will be closed when the process terminates. If non-zero, the error file handle will be closed, otherwise it remains open. The default is *not* to close the error file handle. This (different) default is to ensure backwards compatibility.

`NP_CurrentDir` sets the current directory of the process to be created. The argument is a *Lock*. The default is to duplicate the current directory of the caller with `DupLock()` if the caller is a process, or leave the current directory at `ZERO`. The current directory of the process, i.e. `pr_CurrentDir`, is released when the process terminates, unless `NP_CurrentDir` is set to `ZERO`.

`NP_StackSize` sets the stack size of the process to be created in bytes. The default is a stack size of 4000 bytes.

`NP_Name` is a pointer to a NUL terminated string to which the task name of the process to be created is set. This string is copied before the process is launched, and the copy is released automatically when the process terminates. The default process name is "New Process".

---

`NP_Priority` sets the priority of the process to be created. The tag value shall be an integer in the range  $-128$  to  $127$ , though useful values are in the range of  $0$  to  $20$ . The default is  $0$ .

`NP_ConsoleTask` specifies a pointer to a *MsgPort* to the handler that is responsible for the console of the process to be created. That is, if the created process opens “\*” or a path relative to `CONSOLE:`, it will use the specified handler. The default is to use the console handler if the caller is a process, or `NULL` if the caller is only a task.

While not explicitly available as a tag, `pr_FileSystemTask` of the created process is set to the default file system of the calling process if the caller is a process, or to the default file system from the *dos.library*. This file system is contacted to resolve paths relative to the `ZERO` lock.

`NP_WindowPtr` specifies a pointer to a `Screen` on which error requesters will be displayed. If this pointer is  $0$ , requesters will be shown on the workbench, and if it is  $-1$ , error requesters are suppressed. This value will be installed in the `pr_WindowPtr` of the process to be created. The default is to copy the pointer from the calling process if the window pointer of the parent is  $0$  or  $-1$ . The tag does not copy any other value of `pr_WindowPtr` from the parent. To set the `pr_WindowPtr` of the created process to the value of the calling process, the tag must be explicitly provided. If called from a task and not a process, the default is `NULL`. The reason why `pr_WindowPtr` is not explicitly copied is that the caller shall ensure that the screen is not closed while any pointers are still pointing to its structure.

`NP_HomeDir` sets the `pr_HomeDir` lock which is used to resolve paths relative to the `PROGDIR:` pseudo-assign. The default is to copy `pr_HomeDir` of the calling process, or `ZERO` in case the caller is a task. This lock is released when the process terminates, i.e. the lock provided as argument here remains available to the caller, and shall be released by the caller in one way or another.

`NP_CopyVars` determines if the local shell variables in `pr_LocalVars` of the calling process are copied into the variables of the process to be created. If set to non-zero, a copy of the variables of the calling process are made, otherwise the new process does not receive any shell variables by itself. The latter also happens if the caller is a task and not a process. The variables are automatically released when the new process terminates.

`NP_Cli` determines whether the new process will receive a new shell environment in the form of a `CommandLineInterface` structure. If non-zero, a new CLI structure will be created and a *BPTR* to this structure will be filled into the `pr_CLi` member of the process to be created. The new shell environment will be a copy of the shell environment of the caller if one is present, or a shell environment initialized with all defaults. This means that the prompt, the path, and the command name will be copied over. If  $0$ , no such environment will be created. The latter is also the default.

`NP_Path` provides a chained list of locks within which commands are searched. This is the same list the `PATH` command adjusts, see section 13 for details on this structure. This tag only applies if `NP_Cli` is non-zero to create a shell environment. This chained list is *not* copied, and will be released when the created process terminates; hence, the locks provided here are *no longer* available to the caller if `CreateNewProc()` succeeds. If `CreateNewProc()` fails, the entire lock list remains a property of the caller and thus needs to be potentially released there. The default, if this tag is not provided, is to copy the paths of the caller if the calling process has a non-zero `pr_CLi` structure.

`NP_CommandName` provides the name of the command being executed within the shell environment if `NP_Cli` indicates that one is to be created. The default is to copy the command name of the shell environment of the calling process if one exists, or to leave the command name empty if none is provided. The command name is copied into the shell environment of the process being created and thus remains available to the caller. More on the shell environment is found in section 13.

`NP_Arguments` provides command line arguments for the process to be created. This is a `NUL` terminated string that is copied into the process to be created, and will also be released there. If provided, the arguments are copied in `pr_Arguments` of the process to be created, and will also be loaded into registers `A0` and its length into `D0`. If `NP_Arguments` are non-zero, a non-`ZERO` `NP_Input` file handle shall also be provided. This is because the arguments are also copied into the buffer associated to the input file handle to

---

make them available to `ReadArgs()`, or any other function that performs buffered read from `pr_CIS`, see section 4.8 for details.

`NP_ExitCode` determines a pointer to function that is called when the created process terminates. It is installed into `pr_ExitCode`. See section 9 for the description and the signature of this function.

`NP_ExitData` provides an argument that will be passed into the `NP_ExitCode` function in register D1 when the process terminates.

While the official documentation also mentions the tags `NP_NotifyOnDeath` and `NP_Synchronous`, these tags are currently ignored and do not perform any function.

The `CreateNewProc()` function returns on success a pointer to the `Process` structure just created. At this stage, the process has already been launched and, depending on its priority, may already be running. On failure, the function returns `NULL`. Unfortunately, it does not set `IoErr()` consistently on failure.

### 9.1.2 Create a Process (Legacy)

The `CreateProc()` function creates a process from a segment list, a name, a priority and a stack size. It is a legacy call that is not as flexible as `CreateNewProc()`, and only exists for backwards compatibility reasons.

```
process = CreateProc( name, pri, seglist, stackSize )
D0                      D1      D2      D3          D4
```

```
struct MsgPort *CreateProc(STRPTR, LONG, BPTR, LONG)
```

This function creates a process of the name `name` running at priority `pri`. The process starts at the first byte of the first segment of the segment list passed in as `seglist`, and a stack size of `stackSize` bytes will be allocated for the process.

The process is initialized as follows: `pr_ConsoleTask` and `pr_WindowPtr` are copied from the calling process, or are set to `NULL` respective 0 if called from the task. The member `pr_FileSystemTask` is also copied from the calling process, or is initialized from the default file system from the *dos.library* if called from a task.

Input, output and error file handles are set to `ZERO`, and no shell environment is created either. The current directory and home directory are also left at `ZERO`. No arguments are provided to the called function, and no shell variables are copied.

If the call succeeds, the returned value `process` is a pointer to the *MsgPort* of the created process. It is *not* a pointer to a process itself.

On failure, the function returns `NULL`. Unfortunately, it does not set `IoErr()` consistently in case of failure, thus the cause of the problem cannot be easily identified.

### 9.1.3 Terminating a Process

The `Exit()` function terminates the calling process or the calling command line executable. In the latter case, control is returned to the calling shell, in the former case, the process is removed from the exec scheduler.

However, this function does not release any resources except those implicitly allocated when creating the process through `CreateNewProc()`, `CreateProc()` or `RunCommand()` and the calling shell. As it misses to release resources allocated by you or the compiler startup code, this function *should not be used* and rather a compiler or language specific shutdown function should be preferred. The C standard library provides `exit()` which releases resources allocated through this library.

---

```
Exit( returnCode )
    D1
```

```
void Exit(LONG)
```

This call either terminates the calling process, in which case the argument is ignored, or returns to the calling shell, then delivering `returnCode` as result code. It uses the BCPL stack frame pointed to by `pr_ReturnAddr`, removes this stack frame, initializes the new stack from the stack frame there and then returns to whatever created the stack frame. This is typically either the process shutdown code of AmigaDOS, or the shell command shutdown code installed by `RunCommand()`. In the former code, `pr_ExitCode()` may be used to implement additional cleanup activities.

This function is a BCPL legacy function that is also part of the *Global Vector*; BCPL programs would typically overload its entry in this vector to implement a custom shutdown mechanism.

## 9.2 Process Properties Accessor Functions

The most important members of the process structure described in section 9 are accessible through getter and setter functions. They implicitly relate to the calling process, and are the preferred way of getting access to the `Process` structure. The functions listed in this section do not touch `IoErr()` except explicitly stated.

### 9.2.1 Retrieve the Process Input File Handle

The `Input()` function returns the input file handle of the calling process if one is installed. If no input file handle is provided, the function returns `ZERO`.

```
file = Input()
    D0
```

```
BPTR Input(void)
```

This function returns a *BPTR* to the input *file handle* of the calling process, or `ZERO` if none is defined. This is approximately identical to `stdin` of ANSI-C. Depending on process creation, this file handle can be closed by the process shutdown code or the calling shell and thus should in general not be closed explicitly. It can be changed through `SelectInput()`.

### 9.2.2 Replace the Input File Handle

The `SelectInput()` function replaces the input *file handle* of the calling process with its argument and returns the previously used input handle.

```
old_fh = SelectInput(fh)
    D0          D1
```

```
BPTR SelectInput(BPTR)
```

This call replaces the input *file handle* of the calling process with the file handle given by `fh` and returns the previously used input *file handle*.

---

### 9.2.3 Retrieve the Output File Handle

The `Output()` function returns the output file handle of the calling process if one is installed. If no output file handle is provided, the function returns `ZERO`.

```
file = Output()  
D0
```

```
BPTR Output(void)
```

This function returns a *BPTR* to the output *file handle* of the calling process, or `ZERO` if none is defined. This is approximately identical to `stdout` of ANSI-C. Depending on process creation, this file handle can be closed by the process shutdown code or the calling shell and thus should in general not be closed explicitly. It can be changed through `SelectOutput()`.

### 9.2.4 Replace the Output File Handle

The `SelectOutput()` function replaces the output *file handle* of the calling process with its argument and returns the previously used output handle.

```
old_fh = SelectOutput(fh)  
D0                      D1
```

```
BPTR SelectOutput(BPTR)
```

This call replaces the output *file handle* of the calling process with the file handle given by `fh` and returns the previously used output *file handle*.

### 9.2.5 Retrieve the Error File Handle

The `ErrorOutput()` function returns the file handle through which diagnostic or error outputs should be printed. It uses either `pr_CES` if this handle is non-`ZERO`, or `pr_COS` if the former is `ZERO`. If neither an error output nor a regular output is provided, this function returns `ZERO`.

```
file = ErrorOutput()  
D0
```

```
BPTR ErrorOutput(void)
```

This function returns a *BPTR* to the error *file handle* of the calling process, or falls back to the *BPTR* of the output *file handle* if the former is not available. This is the file handle through which diagnostic output should be printed and is therefore approximately identical to `stderr` of ANSI-C. Depending on process creation, this file handle can be closed by the process shutdown code or the calling shell and thus should in general not be closed explicitly. It can be changed through `SelectError()`.

### 9.2.6 Replace the Error File Handle

The `SelectError()` function replaces the error *file handle* of the calling process with its argument and returns the previously used error handle.

```
old_fh = SelectError(fh)  
D0                      D1
```

```
BPTR SelectError(BPTR)
```

---

This call replaces the error *file handle* of the calling process with the file handle given by `fh` and returns the previously used error *file handle*.

### 9.2.7 Retrieve the Current Directory

The `GetCurrentDir()` function returns the current directory of the directory, indicated by a *lock* on this object. This *lock*, and the *file system* that created the lock are used to resolve relative paths, see also section 4.3.

```
lock = GetCurrentDir(void)
D0
```

```
BPTR GetCurrentDir()
```

This function returns the *lock* to the current directory, unlike the `CurrentDir()` function which also changes it.

### 9.2.8 Replace the Current Directory

The `CurrentDir()` selects and retrieves the current directory of the calling process. The directory is indicated by a *lock* to this object. This *lock*, and the *file system* that created the lock are used to resolve relative paths, see also section 4.3.

```
oldLock = CurrentDir( lock )
D0                      D1
```

```
BPTR CurrentDir(BPTR)
```

This function sets the current directory to `lock` and returns in `oldLock` the previously installed current directory. The passed in `lock` then becomes part of the process and shall not be released by `UnLock()` until another *lock* is installed as current directory.

If the current directory is `ZERO`, paths are relative to the root directory of the *file system* set in the `pr_FileSystemTask` member of the calling process. It may be changed by `SetFileSysTask()` described in section 9.2.12. AmigaDOS installs there the *file system* of the boot volume, unless a user installs a different default *file system*.

### 9.2.9 Return the Latest Error Code

The `IoErr()` function returns the secondary result code of the most recent AmigaDOS operation. This code is, in case of failure, typically an error code indicating the nature of the failure.

```
error = IoErr()
D0
```

```
LONG IoErr(void)
```

This function returns the secondary result code of the last call to the *dos.library* that provides such result. Unfortunately, not all functions set `IoErr()` consistently; all unbuffered operations in section 4.7 provide an error code in case of failure, or deliver 0 as secondary result in case of success. The buffered functions in section 4.8 generally only set a secondary result code in case an I/O operation is required, but do not touch `IoErr()` if the call can be satisfied from the caller. Whether a function of the *dos.library* touches `IoErr()` is stated in the description of the corresponding function — unfortunately, the *dos.library* does not handle `IoErr()` consistently.



---

Some functions provide a secondary result code different from an error code, and thus make such additional return value available through `IoErr()`. Such additional return values are also explicitly mentioned in the description of the corresponding function. A particular example is `DeviceProc()`, which returns the (first) lock of a regular assign in `IoErr()`, but additional functions exist.

Most error codes are defined in `dos/dos.h`, with some additional error codes only used by the pattern matcher (see section 8) in `dos/dosasl.h`. Generally, *handlers* and *file systems* can select error codes as they seem fit, the list below provides a general indication how the codes are used by the *dos.library* itself, or what their suggested usage is:

**ERROR\_NO\_FREE\_STORE:** This error code is set if the system run out of memory. Actually, this error code is not set by the *dos.library*, but rather by the *exec.library* memory allocation functions.

**ERROR\_TASK\_TABLE\_FULL:** This error code is no longer in use. Previous releases of AmigaDOS created it if more than 10 shell processes were about to be created. As this limitation was removed, the error code remains currently unused.

**ERROR\_BAD\_TEMPLATE:** This error code indicates that the command line template for `ReadArgs()` is syntactical incorrect. It is also set by the pattern matcher in case the pattern is syntactically incorrect.

**ERROR\_BAD\_NUMBER:** This error code indicates that a string could not be converted to a number.

**ERROR\_REQUIRED\_ARG\_MISSING:** This error code is set by `ReadArgs()` if a non-optional argument is not provided.

**ERROR\_KEY\_NEEDS\_ARG:** This error code is also used by the argument parser `ReadArgs()` if an argument key is provided on the command line, but a corresponding argument value is missing.

**ERROR\_TOO\_MANY\_ARGS:** This error code can also be set by `ReadArgs()`; it indicates that more arguments are provided than indicated in the template.

**ERROR\_UNMATCHED\_QUOTES:** This error code indicates that a closing quote is missing for at least one opening quote. It is also set by the argument parser and `ReadItem()`.

**ERROR\_LINE\_TOO\_LONG:** This error code is a general indicator that a user provided buffer is too small to buffer a string. It is for example used again by the argument parser and the path manipulation functions in section 6.3.

**ERROR\_FILE\_NOT\_OBJECT:** This error code is generated by the *Shell* if an attempt is made to execute a file that is neither a script, nor an executable nor a file that can be opened by a viewer.

**ERROR\_INVALID\_RESIDENT\_LIBRARY:** While this error code is not in use by the *dos.library*, several *handlers* and other Os components use it to indicate that a required library or device is not available.

**ERROR\_NO\_DEFAULT\_DIR:** This is error code is also not in use. Its intended purpose is unclear.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_IN\_USE:** This error code is used by multiple Os components to indicate that a particular operation cannot be performed because the object to be modified is in use. AmigaDOS uses it, for example, to indicate that a *lock* was obtained on an object that is supposed to be modified or deleted, and thus cannot be modified or removed.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_EXISTS:** This error code is a generic error indicator that an operation could not be performed because another object already exists in place, and is used as such by multiple Os components. AmigaDOS *file systems* use it, for example, when attempting to create a directory, but a file or a directory of the requested name is already present.

**ERROR\_DIR\_NOT\_FOUND:** This error code indicates that the target directory is not found. Of the AmigaDOS ROM components, only the shell uses it on an attempt to change the working directory to a non-working target directory.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND:** This is a generic error code that indicates that the object on which a particular operation is to be performed does not exist. It is for example generated on an attempt to open a non-existing file or to lock a file or directory that could not be found.

---

**ERROR\_BAD\_STREAM\_NAME:** This error code is currently not in use by AmigaDOS ROM components. Its purpose is unclear.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_TOO\_LARGE:** This error could be used to indicate that an object is beyond the size a *handler* or *file system* is able to handle. Note that a full disk (or full storage medium) is indicated by **ERROR\_DISK\_FULL**, and not this error. However, currently no AmigaDOS component uses this error, even though the FFS should probably return it on an attempt to create or access files larger than 2GB.

**ERROR\_ACTION\_NOT\_KNOWN:** This is a generic error code that is returned by many *handlers* or *file systems* when an action (in the form of a *packet*) is requested the handler does not support or understand. For example, this error is created when attempting to create a directory on a console handler.

**ERROR\_INVALID\_COMPONENT\_NAME:** This is an error that is raised by file systems when providing an invalid path, or a path that contains components that are syntactically incorrect. For example, the colon (":") shall only appear one in a path as separator between the device name and the path within the device. A colon within a component is therefore a syntactical error. Also, all Amiga ROM file systems do not accept code points below 0x20, i.e. ASCII control characters.

**ERROR\_INVALID\_LOCK:** This error is raised if a value is passed in as a *lock* that is, in fact, not a valid lock of the target *file system*. For example, an attempt to use a *file handle* as a lock will result in such an error condition. Note, however, that *file systems* can, but do not need to check locks for validity. Passing incorrect objects to *file systems* can raise multiple error conditions of which this error code is probably the most harmless.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_WRONG\_TYPE:** This error code indicates that a particular operation is not applicable to a target object, even though the target object is valid and existing. For example, an attempt to open an existing directory for reading as a file will raise this error.

**ERROR\_DISK\_NOT\_VALIDATED:** This error indicates that the inserted medium is currently not validated, i.e. not checked for consistency. Such a consistency check (or validation) may be currently ongoing. This error is for example generated if a write operation is attempted on an FFS volume whose validation is still ongoing. In such a case, retrying the operation later may solve the problem already.

**ERROR\_DISK\_WRITE\_PROTECTED:** This indicates that an attempt was made to write to a medium, e.g. a disk, that is write-protected, or that cannot be written to, such as an attempt to write to a CD-ROM.

**ERROR\_RENAME\_ACROSS\_DEVICES:** Generated if an attempt is made to move an object to a target directory that is located on a different medium or different *file system* than the source directory. This cannot succeed, instead the object (and its subobjects) need to be copied manually.

**ERROR\_DIRECTORY\_NOT\_EMPTY:** Indicates that an attempt was made to delete a directory that is not empty. First, all the files within a directory must be deleted before the directory itself may be deleted.

**ERROR\_TOO\_MANY\_LEVELS:** This error code is generated if too many softlinks refer iteratively to other softlinks. In order to avoid an endless indirection of softlinks referring to each other, the *dos.library* aborts following softlinks after 15 passes; application programs attempting to resolve softlinks themselves through `ReadLink()` should implement a similar mechanism, see also section 6.4.2.

**ERROR\_DEVICE\_NOT\_MOUNTED:** This error indicates that an access was attempted to either a *handler*, *file system* or *assign* that is not known to the system, or to a volume that is currently not inserted in any known drive.

**ERROR\_SEEK\_ERROR:** This error is generated by an attempt to `Seek()` to a file position that is either negative, or behind the end of the file. It is also signalled if the mode of `Seek()` or `SetFileSize()` is none of the modes indicated in table 10. The FFS also sets this mode if it cannot read one of its administration blocks.

**ERROR\_COMMENT\_TOO\_BIG:** This error is raised if the size of the comment is too large to be stored in the metadata of the *file system*. Note that while *file systems* shall validate the size of the comment, it shall silently truncate file names to the maximal size possible.

---

**ERROR\_DISK\_FULL:** Generated by *file systems* when an attempt is made to write more data to a medium than it is possible to hold, i.e. when the target medium is full.

**ERROR\_DELETE\_PROTECTED:** This error is generated by *file systems* if an attempt is made to delete a file that is delete protected, i.e. whose `FIBB_DELETE` protection bit is set, see table 21 in section 6.1.

**ERROR\_WRITE\_PROTECTED:** This error is generated by *file systems* if a write is attempted to a file that is write protected, i.e. whose `FIBB_WRITE` bit is set.

**ERROR\_READ\_PROTECTED:** This error is generated on an attempt to read from a while whose `FIBB_READ` bit is set to indicate read protection.

**ERROR\_NOT\_A\_DOS\_DISK:** This error is generated by a *file system* on an attempt to read a disk that is not structured according to the requirements of the *file system*, i.e. that is initialized by another incompatible *file system* different from the mounted one. Unfortunately, AmigaDOS does not have a control instance that selects file systems according to the disk layout.

**ERROR\_NO\_MORE\_ENTRIES:** This secondary result code does not really indicate an error condition, it just reports to the caller that the end of a directory has been reached when scanning it by `ExNext()` or `ExAll()`.

**ERROR\_IS\_SOFT\_LINK:** This error code is generated by *file systems* on an attempt to access a *soft link*. For many functions, the *dos.library* recognizes this error and then resolves the link through `ReadLink()` within the library, not requiring intervention of the caller. However, not all functions of the *dos.library* are aware of *soft links*, see section 6.4 for the list.

**ERROR\_OBJECT\_LINKED:** This error code is currently not used by AmigaDOS and its intended use is not known.

**ERROR\_BAD\_HUNK:** Generated by `LoadSeg()` and `NewLoadSeg()`, this error code indicates that the binary file includes a hunk type that is not supported or recognized by AmigaDOS. The hunk format for binary executables is documented in section 10.2.1.

**ERROR\_NOT\_IMPLEMENTED:** This error code is not used by any ROM component, but several workbench components signal this error indicating that the requested function is not supported by this component. For example, the `Format` command generates it on an attempt to format a disk with long file names if the target file system does not support them.

**ERROR\_RECORD\_NOT\_LOCKED:** Issued by *file systems* and their record-locking subsystem if an attempt is made to release a record that is, actually, not locked.

**ERROR\_LOCK\_COLLISION:** This error is also created by the record-locking subsystem of *file systems* if attempt is made to exclusively lock the same region within a file by two write locks.

**ERROR\_LOCK\_TIMEOUT:** Also generated by the record-locking mechanism of *file systems* if an attempt was made to exclusively lock a region of a file that is exclusively locked already, and the attempt failed because the region did not become available before the lock timed out.

**ERROR\_UNLOCK\_ERROR:** This error is currently not generated by any *file system*, though could be used to indicate that an attempt to unlock a record failed for an unknown reason.

**ERROR\_BUFFER\_OVERFLOW:** This error is raised by the pattern matcher and indicates that the buffer allocated in the `AnchorPath` structure is too small to keep the fully expanded matching file name, see also section 8.

**ERROR\_BREAK:** This error is also raised by the pattern matcher if it received an external signal for aborting a directory scan for objects. Such signals are raised, for example, by the user through the console by pressing `Ctrl + C` through `Ctrl + F`.

**ERROR\_NOT\_EXECUTABLE:** This error is generated by the workbench on an attempt to start an application icon from a file whose `FIBB_EXECUTE` is set, indicating that the file is not executable. Why the workbench does not use the same error code as the *Shell* remains unclear.

---

### 9.2.10 Setting IoErr

The `SetIoErr()` function sets the value returned by the next call to `IoErr()` and thus initializes or resets the next IO error.

```
oldcode = SetIoErr(code)
D0                      D1

LONG SetIoErr(LONG);
```

This function sets the next value returned by `IoErr()`; this can be necessary because some functions of the *dos.library* do not update this value in all cases. A particular example are the buffered I/O functions introduced in section 4.8 that do not touch `IoErr()` in case the input or output operation can be satisfied from the buffer. A good practise is to call `SetIoErr(0)` upfront to ensure that these functions leave a 0 in `IoErr()` on success.

This function returns the previous value of `IoErr()`, and thus the same value `IoErr()` would return.

### 9.2.11 Select the Console Handler

The `SetConsoleTask()` function selects the *handler* responsible for the “\*” file name and `CONSOLE:` pseudo-device.

```
oldport = SetConsoleTask(port)
D0                      D1

struct MsgPort *SetConsoleTask(struct MsgPort *)
```

This function selects the *MsgPort* of the console handler. AmigaDOS will contact this handler for opening the “\*” as file name, or a file relative to the `CONSOLE:` pseudo-device. Note that the argument is not a pointer to the *handler* process, but rather to a *MsgPort* through which this process can be contacted. It returns the previously used console handler *MsgPort*.

This function is the setter function corresponding to the `GetConsoleTask()` getter function introduced in section 7.2.4.

### 9.2.12 Select the Default File System

The `SetFileSysTask()` function selects the handler responsible for resolving paths relative to the `ZERO` lock.

```
oldport = SetFileSysTask(port)
D0                      D1

struct MsgPort *SetFileSysTask(struct MsgPort *)
```

This function selects the *MsgPort* of the default *file system*. AmigaDOS will contact this *file system* if a path relative to the `ZERO` lock is resolved, e.g. a relative path name if the current directory is `ZERO`. This *file system* should be identical to the *file system* of the `SYS:` assign, and should therefore not be relaced as otherwise resolving file names may be inconsistent between processes.

Note that the argument is not a pointer to the *handler* process, but rather to a *MsgPort* through which this process can be contacted. It returns the previously used default file system *MsgPort*. This function is the setter equivalent of `GetFileSysTask()` introduced in section 7.2.5.

---

### 9.2.13 Retrieve the Lock to the Program Directory

The `GetProgramDir()` returns a lock to the directory that contains the binary from which the caller executes, if such a directory exists. If the executable was taken from the list of resident segments (see section 13.6), this function returns `ZERO`.

```
lock = GetProgramDir()  
D0
```

```
BPTR GetProgramDir(void)
```

The lock returned by this function corresponds to the `PROGDIR:` (pseudo)-assign and the `pr_HomeDir` member of the `Process` structure, with the only exception that `ZERO` does not correspond to the root directory of the boot volume, but rather indicates that no home directory exists.

### 9.2.14 Set the Program Directory

The `SetProgramDir` sets the directory within which the executing program is made to believe of getting started from, and the directory that corresponds to the `PROGDIR:` pseudo-assign.

```
oldlock = SetProgramDir(lock)  
D0      D1
```

```
BPTR SetProgramDir(BPTR)
```

This function installs `lock` into `pr_HomeDir` of the `Process` structure. This `lock` is supposed to belong to the directory the currently executing program was loaded from and is used to resolve the `PROGDIR:` pseudo-assign. If `ZERO` is installed, the current process will be unable to resolve this pseudo-assign.

### 9.2.15 Retrieve Command Line Arguments

The `GetArgStr()` function returns the command line arguments, if any, of the calling process. If called from the workbench, this function returns `NULL`.

```
ptr = GetArgStr()  
D0
```

```
STRPTR GetArgStr(void)
```

This function returns the command line arguments as NUL-terminated string. This is the same string the process finds in register `a0` on startup, or that is placed into the file buffer of the `Input()` file handle. This function returns `NULL` if the program was run from the workbench; it is equivalent to reading the `pr_Arguments` member of the `Process` structure.

### 9.2.16 Set the Command Line Arguments

The `SetArgStr()` function sets the string returned by `GetArgStr()`. It cannot set the command line arguments as seen by `ReadArgs()`.

```
oldptr = SetArgStr(ptr)  
D0      D1
```

```
STRPTR SetArgStr(STRPTR)
```

---

This function requires a pointer to a NUL terminated string as `ptr` and installs it to `pr_Arguments` member of the `Process` structure. This is unfortunately of limited use as the `ReadArgs()` function takes the command line arguments from a different source, namely the input buffer of the `Input()` file handle.

---

## Chapter 10

# Binary File Structure

The AmigaDOS *Hunk* format represents executable and linkable object files. While both formats are related, they are not identical; executables can be loaded from the shell or the workbench from disk to RAM, and then either overload the shell process, or a new process is created from them. Object files are created as intermediate compiler outputs; typically, each translation unit is compiled into one object file which are then, in a final step, linked with a startup code and object code libraries to form an executable.

An object or executable file in this format consists of multiple *hunks* (thus, the name). Hunks define either payload data as indivisible *segments* of code or data that is initialized or loaded from disk, or additional meta-information interpreted by the AmigaDOS loader, the `LoadSeg()` function. The meta-information is used to relocate the payload to their final position in memory, to define the size of the sections, to select the memory type that is allocated for the segment, or to interrupt or terminate the loading process.

Loaded executables are represented as singly linked list of segments in memory, by a structure that looks as follows:

```
struct LoadedSegment {
    BPTR  NextSegment; /* BPTR to next segment or ZERO */
    ULONG Data[1];     /* Payload data */
};
```

The above structure is *not* documented and is not identical to the `Segment` in `dos/dosextens.h`. The latter describes a resident executable, see section 13.6, but also contains a *BPTR* to a segment in the above sense. Each segment of a binary is allocated through `AllocVec()` which is sometimes helpful as it allows to retrieve size of the segment from the size of the allocated memory block.

The hunk format distinguishes three types of *segments*, each represented by a hunk: *code hunks* that should contain constant data, most notably executable machine code and constant data associated to this code, *data hunks* that contain (variable) data, and so called *BSS* hunks that contain data that is initialized to zero. Thus, the contents of *BSS* hunks is not represented on disk.

**Const is not enforced** While *code hunks* should contain executable code and other constant data, and *data hunks* should contain variable data, nothing in AmigaDOS is able to enforce these conventions. In principle, *data hunks* may contain executable machine code, and *code hunks* may contain variable data. Note, however, that some third party tools may require programs to follow such conventions. Many commercial compilers structure their object code according to these conventions, or at least do so in their default configuration.

Additional *hunks* describe how to relocate the loaded code and data. Relocation means that data within the hunk is corrected according to the addresses this and other hunks are loaded to. The relocation process takes an offset into one hunk, and adds to the longword at this offset the absolute address of this or any other

hunk. That is, hunks on disk are represented as if their first byte is placed at address 0, and relocation adjusts longwords within hunks to the final positions in memory.

An extension of the executable file format is the *overlay format* also supported by `LoadSeg()`. Here, only a part of the file is loaded into memory, while the remaining parts are only loaded on demand, potentially releasing other already loaded parts from memory. Overlaid executables thus take less main memory, though requires the volume containing the executable available all the time.

AmigaDOS also contains a simple run-time binder that is only used by compiled BCPL code, or by code that operates under such requirements. The purpose of this binder is to populate the BCPL *global vector* of the loaded program. While this runtime binder implements a legacy protocol, certain parts of AmigaDOS still expect. These are *handlers* or *file systems* that use the `dol_GlobVec` value of 0 or -2, or corresponding `GlobVec` entry in the mount list. While new handlers should not use this BCPL legacy protocol, the ROM file system (the FFS) and the port-handler currently still depend (or require) it, despite not being written in BCPL. A second application of this run-time binding protocol is the shell which also depends on BCPL binding.

## 10.1 Executable File Format

The hunk format of executable files consists of 4-byte (longword) hunk identifiers and subsequent data that is interpreted by the AmigaDOS loader according to the introducing hunk identifier. The syntax of such a file, and its hunks, is here presented in a pseudo-code, in three-column tables.

The first column identifies the number of bits a syntax element takes. Bits within a byte are read from most significant to least significant bit, and bytes within a structure that extends over multiple bytes are read from most significant to least significant bit. That is, the binary file format follows the big-endian convention. If the first column contains a question mark (“?”), the structure is variably-sized, and the number of removed bits is defined by the second column, or the section it refers to. If the first column is empty, no bits are removed from the file.

The second column either identifies the member of a structure to which the value removed from the stream is assigned, or contains pseudo-code that describes how to process the values parsed from the stream. These syntax elements follow closely the convention of the C language. In particular `if (cond)` formulates a condition that is only executed if *cond* is true, `else` describes code that is executed following an `if` clause that is executed if *cond* is false, and `do ... while (cond)` indicates a loop that continues as long as *cond* is non-zero, and that may alternatively be terminated by a `break` within the body of the loop. The expression `i++` increments an internal state variable *i*, and the expression `--j` decrements an internal state variable. The value of `i++` is the value of *i* before the increment, and the value of `--j` is the value of *j* after decrementing it.

The following pseudo-code describes the top-level syntax of a binary executable file AmigaDOS is able to bring to memory:

**Table 30: Regular Executable File**

Size	Code	Syntax
?	HUNK_HEADER	Defines all segments, see section 10.1.1 for details
	$i = t_{\text{num}}$	Start with the first hunk, $t_{\text{num}}$ is defined in the HUNK_HEADER
	do {	Repeat until all hunks done
2	$\hat{m}_t[i]$	These two bits are unused, but some utilities set it identical to $m_t[i]$ , the memory type of the hunk, see 10.1.1
1	$a_f$	Advisory hunk flag.



29	h	This is the hunk type
	if (EOF) break;	Terminate loading on end of file
	if (a <sub>f</sub> ) {	Check for bit 29, these are advisory hunks
32	l	Read length of advisory hunk
32 × l		l long words of hunk contents ignored
	}	
	else if (h == HUNK_END) i++;	Advance to next segment, see 10.1.11
	else if (h == HUNK_BREAK) break;	Terminate loading an overlay, see 10.3.4
?	else if (h == HUNK_NAME) parse_NAME;	See section 10.1.8
?	else if (h == HUNK_CODE) parse_CODE;	See section 10.1.2
?	else if (h == HUNK_DATA) parse_DATA;	See section 10.1.3
?	else if (h == HUNK_BSS) parse_BSS;	See section 10.1.4
?	else if (h == HUNK_RELOC32) parse_RELOC32;	See section 10.1.5
?	else if (h == HUNK_SYMBOL) parse_SYMBOL;	See section 10.1.9
?	else if (h == HUNK_DEBUG) parse_DEBUG;	See section 10.1.10
?	else if (h == HUNK_OVERLAY) { parse_OVERLAY; break }	See section 10.3.3
?	else if (h == HUNK_DREL32) parse_RELOC32SHORT;	This is a compatibility kludge for some older versions of the <i>dos.library</i> , new tools should use HUNK_RELOC32SHORT in- stead, see section 10.1.6
?	else if (h == HUNK_RELOC32SHORT) parse_RELOC32SHORT;	See section 10.1.6
?	else if (h == HUNK_RELRELOC32) parse_RELRELOC32;	See section 10.1.7
	else ERROR_BAD_HUNK;	Everything else is invalid
	} while(true)	repeat until all hunks done

In particular, every executable shall start with the HUNK\_HEADER identifier, the big-endian long-word 0x3f3. The following stream contains long-word identifiers of which the first 2 bits are ignored and masked out. Some tools (e.g. the Atom tool by CBM) places there memory requirements similar to what is indicated in the HUNK\_HEADER. They have there, however, no effect as the segments are allocated within the HUNK\_HEADER and not at times the hunk type is encountered.

Bit 29 (HUNKB\_ADVISORY) has a special meaning. If this bit is set, then the hunk contents is ignored. The size of such an *advisory* hunk is defined by a long-word following the hunk type.

Loading a binary executable terminates on three conditions. Either, if an end of file is encountered. This closes the file handle and returns to the caller with the loaded segment list. Or, if a HUNK\_BREAK or HUNK\_OVERLAY are found. This mechanism is used for *overlaid* files. In the latter two cases, the file

remains open, and for `HUNK_OVERLAY`, information on the loaded file is injected into the first hunk of the loaded data. More information on this mechanism is provided in section 10.3.

### 10.1.1 HUNK\_HEADER

The `HUNK_HEADER` is the first hunk of every executable file. It identifies the number of segments in an executable, and the amount of memory to reserve for each segment.

**Table 31: Hunk Header Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
32	<code>HUNK_HEADER [0x3f3]</code>	Every executable file shall start with this hunk
32	0	Number of resident libraries, BCPL legacy, shall be zero
32	$t_{\text{size}} \in [1, 2^{31} - 1]$	Number of segments in binary
32	$t_{\text{num}} \in [0, t_{\text{size}} - 1]$	First segment to load
32	$t_{\text{max}} \in [t_{\text{num}}, t_{\text{size}} - 1]$	Last segment to load (inclusive)
	<code>for (i=t<sub>num</sub>; i ≤ t<sub>max</sub>; i++) {</code>	Iterate over all hunks
2	$m_t[i]$	Read memory type of the segment as 2 bits
30	$m_s[i]$	Read memory size in long words as 30 bits
	<code>if (m[i] == 3) {</code>	if the memory type is 3
32	$m_t[i]$	Memory type is explicitly provided
	<code>}</code>	End of special memory condition
	$m_a[i] =$ <code>AllocVec(sizeof(BPTR) +</code> <code>m<sub>s</sub>[i] × sizeof(LONG), m<sub>t</sub>[i])</code> <code>MEMF_PUBLIC) + sizeof(BPTR)</code>	Get memory for segment
	<code>}</code>	End of loop over segments

The first member of a `HUNK_HEADER` shall always be 0; it was used by a legacy mechanism which allowed run-time binding of the executable with dynamic libraries. While first versions of AmigaDOS inherited this mechanism from TRIPOS, it was not particularly useful as the calling conventions for such libraries did not follow the usual conventions of AmigaDOS, i.e. with the library base in register `a6`. Later versions of AmigaDOS, in particular its re-implementation as of Kickstart v37, removed support for such libraries. As this mechanism is no longer supported, it is not documented here. More information is found in [10].

The second entry  $t_{\text{size}}$  contains the number of segments the executable consists of. In case of overlays, it is the total number of segments that can be resident in memory at all times. See section 10.3 for more information. This value shall be consistent for all `HUNK_HEADERS` within an overlaid file. In regular executables, only a single `HUNK_HEADER` exists at the beginning of the file.

The members  $t_{\text{num}}$  and  $t_{\text{max}}$  define the 0-based index of the first and last segment to load within the branch of the overlay tree described by this `HUNK_HEADER`. For a regular (non-overlaid) file and for the root node of the overlay tree,  $t_{\text{num}}$  shall be 0, that is, the first segment to load is 0, the first index in the segment table.

For regular files,  $t_{\text{max}}$  shall be identical to  $t_{\text{size}} - 1$ , that is, the last segment to load is the last entry in the segment table described by this `HUNK_HEADER`. For overlaid files, the number may be smaller, i.e. not all segments may be populated initially and loading may continue later on when executing the binary.

### 10.1.2 HUNK\_CODE

This hunk should contain executable machine code and constant data. As executables are started from the first byte of the first segment, the first hunk of an executable should be a `HUNK_CODE`, and it should start

with a valid opcode.

Compilers use typically this hunk to represent the `text` segment, i.e. compiled code and constant data. The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 32: Hunk Code Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_CODE [0x3e9]	A hunk describing a segment of code and constant data
32	$l \leq m_s[i]$	Size of the payload
$1 \times 32$	Code	$l$ long words of payload

Note that the size of the payload loaded from the file may be less than the size of the allocated segment as defined in `HUNK_HEADER`. In such a case, all bytes of the segment not included in the `HUNK_CODE` are zero-initialized. AmigaDOS versions earlier than v37 skipped this initialization. Due to a bug in the loader in later versions, the initialization is also skipped of the hunk length  $l$  is 0.

### 10.1.3 HUNK\_DATA

This hunk should contain variable data, and it should not contain executable code. Compilers typically use this hunk to represent initialized data.

The structure of this hunk is otherwise identical to `HUNK_CODE`:

**Table 33: Hunk Data Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_CODE [0x3ea]	A hunk describing a segment of data
32	$l \leq m_s[i]$	Size of the payload
$1 \times 32$	Code	$l$ long words of payload

Similar to `HUNK_CODE`, the size of the payload defined by this hunk may be less than the size of the segment allocated by `HUNK_HEADER`. Excess bytes are zero-initialized in all AmigaDOS releases from v37 onwards. Due to a bug in the loader in later versions, the initialization is also skipped of the hunk length  $l$  is 0.

### 10.1.4 HUNK\_BSS

This hunk contains zero-initialized data; it does not define actual payload.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 34: Hunk BSS Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_CODE [0x3eb]	A hunk describing zero-initialized data
32	$l \leq m_s[i]$	Size of the segment in long-words

Note that this hunk does not contain any payload; the segment allocated from this hunk is always zero-initialized.

Due to a defect in AmigaDOS prior release v37, the BSS segment will not be completely initialized to zero if the segment size is larger than 256K, i.e. if  $l > 2^{16}$ . Also, these releases do not initialize long words beyond the  $l^{\text{th}}$  long-word to zero, i.e. the excess bytes included if  $l < m_s[i]$ .

### 10.1.5 HUNK\_RELOC32

This hunk contains relocation information for the previously loaded segment; that is, it corrects addresses within this segment by adding the absolute address of this or other segments to long words at indicated offsets of the previous segments.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 35: Hunk Reloc32 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_RELOC32 [0x3ec]	A hunk containing relocation information
	do {	Loop over relocation entries
32	$c$	Number of relocation entries
	if ( $c == 0$ ) break;	Terminate the hunk if the count is zero
32	$j \in [0, t_{\text{size}} - 1]$	Read the hunk to which the relocation is relative to
	do {	Loop over the relocation entries
32	$r_o \in [0, m_s[i] \times 4 - 4]$	Relocation offset into this hunk as byte address
	(UBYTE **) ( $m_a[i] + r_o$ ) += $m_a[j]$	Fixup this hunk by the start address of the selected hunk
	} while (-- $c$ );	until all entries are used
	} while (true);	until a zero-count is read.

That is, the hunk consists first of a counter that indicates the number of relocation entries, followed by the hunk index relative to which an address should be relocated. Then relocation entries follow; each long-word defines an offset into the previously loaded segment to relocate, that is, to fix up the address.

For AmigaDOS versions 37 and up (Kickstart 2.0 and later), the number of relocation entries  $c$  shall not be larger than  $2^{16}$ . This is a known defect of the loader that has currently not yet fixed. If more relocation entries are needed, they shall be split into multiple chunks.

### 10.1.6 HUNK\_RELOC32SHORT

This hunk contains relocation information for the previously loaded segment, similar to HUNK\_RELOC32, except that hunk indices, counts and offsets are only 16 bits in size. To ensure that all hunks start at long-word boundaries, the hunk contains an optional padding field at its end to align the next hunk appropriately.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 36: Hunk Reloc32Short Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_RELOC32SHORT [0x3fc]	A hunk containing relocation information
	$p=1$	Padding count
	do {	Loop over relocation entries
16	$c$	Number of relocation entries
	if ( $c == 0$ ) break;	Terminate the hunk if the count is zero
16	$j \in [0, t_{\text{size}} - 1]$	Read the hunk to which the relocation is relative to
	$p += c$	Update padding count
	do {	Loop over the relocation entries
16	$r_o \in [0, m_s[i] \times 4 - 4]$	Relocation offset into this hunk as byte address

	$(\text{UBYTE } **) (m_a[i] + r_o) +=$ $m_a[j]$	Fixup this hunk by the start address of the selected hunk
	<code>} while(--c);</code>	until all entries are used
	<code>} while(true);</code>	until a zero-count is read.
	<code>if (p &amp; 1) {</code>	check whether padding is required.
16		dummy for long-word alignment
	<code>}</code>	

Due to an oversight, some versions of AmigaDOS do not understand the hunk type `0x3fc` properly and use instead `0x3f7`. This alternative (but incorrect) hunk type for the short version of the relocation hunk is still supported currently.

### 10.1.7 HUNK\_RELRELOC32

This hunk contains relocation information for 32-bit relative displacements the 68020 and later processors offer. Its purpose is to adjust the offsets of a 32-bit wide PC-relative branches between segments.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 37: Hunk RelReloc32 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_RELRELOC32 [0x3fd]	A hunk containing relocation information
	<code>do {</code>	Loop over relocation entries
32	<code>c</code>	Number of relocation entries
	<code>if (c == 0) break;</code>	Terminate the hunk if the count is zero
32	$j \in [0, t_{\text{size}} - 1]$	Read the hunk to which the relocation is relative to
	<code>do {</code>	Loop over the relocation entries
32	$r_o \in [0, m_s[i] \times 4 - 4]$	Relocation offset into this hunk as byte address
	$(\text{UBYTE } **) (m_a[i] + r_o) +=$ $m_a[j] - m_a[i] - r_o$	Fixup this hunk by the start address of the selected hunk
	<code>} while(--c);</code>	until all entries are used
	<code>} while(true);</code>	until a zero-count is read.

For AmigaDOS versions 37 and up (Kickstart 2.0 and later), the number of relocation entries  $c$  shall not be larger than  $2^{16}$ . This is a known defect of the loader that has currently not yet fixed. If more relocation entries are needed, they shall be split into multiple chunks.

Due to another defect, all elements of this hunk, namely  $c$ ,  $r_o$ ,  $j$  and  $r_o$  are only 16 bit wide, which limits the usefulness of this hunk. It is therefore recommended not to depend on this hunk type at all and avoid 32-bit wide branches between segments. Luckily, the support for this hunk type is very limited.

### 10.1.8 HUNK\_NAME

This hunk defines a name for the current segment. The AmigaDOS loader completely ignores this name, and it does not serve a particular purpose for the executable file format. However, linkers that bind object files together use the name to decide which segments to merge together to a single segment.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 38: Hunk Name Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_NAME [0x3e8]	A hunk assigning a name to the current segment
32	1	Size of the name in long-words
32 × 1	$h_n$	Hunk name

The size of the name is not given in characters, but in 32-bit units. The name is possibly zero-padded to the next 32-bit boundary to fill an integer number of long-words. If the name fills an entire number of long-words already, it is *not* zero-terminated.

While the specification does not define a maximum size of the name, the AmigaDOS loader fails on names longer than 124 character, i.e. 31 long-words.

### 10.1.9 HUNK\_SYMBOL

This hunk defines symbol names and corresponding symbol offsets or values within the currently loaded segment. Again, the AmigaDOS loader ignores this hunk, but the linker uses it to resolve symbols with external linkage to bind multiple object files together. If the symbol information is retained in the executable file, it may be used for debugging purposes.

The syntax of this hunk reads as follows:

**Table 39: Hunk Symbol Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_SYMBOL [0x3f0]	A hunk assigning symbols to positions within a segment
	do {	Repeat ...
8	$s_t$	Symbol type
24	$s_l$	Symbol length in long-words
	if ( $s_l == 0$ ) break	Terminate the hunk
32 × $s_l$	$s_n$	Symbol name, potentially zero-padded
32	$s_v$	Symbol value
	} while(true)	until zero-sized symbol

The length of the symbol name is encoded in long-words, not in characters. If it does not fill an integer number of long-words, it is zero-padded; the name is not zero-terminated if it does fill an integer number of long-words, though. The AmigaDOS loader is currently limiting the maximum size of the symbol name to 124 characters, i.e.  $s_i < 32$ .

The symbol type  $s_t$  defines the nature of the symbol. The symbol types are defined in the include file `dos/doshunks.h` and shared with the HUNK\_EXT hunk; the latter hunk type shall not appear in an executable file, but may only appear in an object file, see section 10.5.7.

The symbol type can be roughly classified into two classes: If bit 7 of the type is clear, a symbol is *defined* that may be referenced by another object file. If bit 7 is set, the symbol is *referenced* and requires resolution by a symbol definition with bit 7 cleared upon linking. Executable files, and thus symbols within HUNK\_SYMBOL, may only contain symbol definitions as references had been resolved by the linker before.

The following table contains the symbol types for definitions and those may therefore may appear in both HUNK\_SYMBOL as part of executables and HUNK\_EXT as part of object files; actually, HUNK\_SYMBOL will typically only include the first type of entry, i.e. EXT\_SYMB:

**Table 40: Symbol types in HUNK\_SYMBOL and HUNK\_EXT**

EXT_SYMB	[0x00]	Definition of a symbol, $s_v + m_a[i]$ is the address of the symbol
EXT_DEF	[0x01]	Relocation definition, $s_v + m_a[i]$ is the address of the symbol. References to this symbol are converted into a relocation information to the offset $s_v$ in hunk $i$ .
EXT_ABS	[0x02]	Absolute value, $s_v$ is the value of the symbol which is substituted into the executable by the linker. No relocation information is created, the absolute value is just substituted.
EXT_RES	[0x03]	Not longer supported as it is part of the obsolete dynamic library run-time binding interface, see [10] for more details.

Additional symbol types representing references are documented in section 10.5.7. References are only available within object files and as such symbol types representing them can only appear within HUNK\_EXT.

### 10.1.10 HUNK\_DEBUG

This hunk contains debug information such as function names and line number information. Generally, the contents of this hunk is compiler or assembler specific, and the AmigaDOS loader does not interpret the contents of this hunk at all, it is just skipped over.

However, the debug information emitted by the SAS/C compiler for the “line-debug” option is also shared by other development tools such as the DevPac assembler and will be documented here. In this format, the debug hunk contains for each line of the source file an offset into the hunk to the code that was compiled from this line.

The syntax of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 41: Hunk Debug Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_DEBUG [0x3f1]	Hunk including debug information
32	$l > 3$	Size of the hunk in long-words
Compiler- and configuration specific data for line-debug data:		
32	$h_o$	Offset of symbols into the hunk
32	'LINE'	These four bytes shall contain the ASCII characters 'L', 'I', 'N', 'E' identifying the type of the debug information
32	$l_n$	Size of the source file name in long-words
$32 \times l_n$	$n_f$	source file name that compiled to the current segment in $l_n$ long-words
	$l- = 3 + l_n$	Remove long-words read so far
	while ( $l > 0$ ) {	Repeat for all entries
8		Dummy byte
24	$l_l$	Line number within the source file
8		Dummy byte
24	$l_v$	Offset into the source file. The source file at line $l_l$ is compiled or assembled to the code at at address $m_a[i] + l_v$ and following.
	$l- = 2$	Remove the read data
	};	Loop over the hunk.

The file name  $n_f$  is encoded in  $l_n$  long-words, and potentially padded with 0-bytes to fill an integer number of long-words. If it already is an integer number of long-words sized, it is *not* zero-terminated.

The hunk offset  $h_o$  is added to all offsets  $l_v$  into the hunk to determine the position of a symbol in the hunk.

While [1] documents the entire hunk contents except the hunk length  $l$  to be compiler dependent, it is recommended for custom debug hunks to always include the hunk offset  $h_o$  and the ID field — 'LINE' in this case — to simplify linker designs.

### 10.1.11 HUNK\_END

This hunk terminates the current segment and advances to the next segment, if any. It does not contain any data.

**Table 42: Hunk End Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_END [0x3f2]	Terminate a segment

## 10.2 The AmigaDOS Loader

The *dos.library* provides service functions for loading and releasing binary executables in the *Hunk* format introduced in section 10. The functions discussed in this section load such binaries into memory, constructing a segment list from the hunks found in the files, or release such files. Overlay files are discussed separately in section 10.3 due to their additional complexity.

A segment list is a linearly linked list as defined in section 10, i.e. the first four bytes of every segment form a *BPTR* to the following segment of the loaded binary, or ZERO for the last segment.

Segment lists describe loaded executables and as such may be used to create processes through `CreateNewProc()` explained in section 9.1.1 or run as command within the current process via `RunCommand` introduced in section 13.2.3.

### 10.2.1 Loading an Executable

The `LoadSeg()` function loads an executable binary in the Hunk format and returns a *BPTR* to the first segment:

```
seglist = LoadSeg( name )
D0                      D1
```

```
BPTR LoadSeg(STRPTR)
```

This function loads the binary executable named `name` and returns a *BPTR* to its first segment in case of success, or ZERO in case of failure. The `name` is passed into the `Open()` function and follows the conventions of this function for locating the file.

The segment list shall be removed from memory via `UnLoadSeg()`.

This function sets `IoErr()` to an error code in case of failure, or 0 in case of success.

### 10.2.2 Loading an Executable with Additional Parameters

The `NewLoadSeg()` function loads an executable providing additional data for loading.

```
seglist = NewLoadSeg(file, tags)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BPTR NewLoadSeg(STRPTR, struct TagItem *)
```



```

seglist = NewLoadSegTagList(file, tags)
D0                                     D1    D2

BPTR NewLoadSegTagList (STRPTR, struct TagItem *)

seglist = NewLoadSegTags(file, ...)

BPTR NewLoadSegTags (STRPTR, ...)

```

This function loads a binary executable from `file` and returns a *BPTR* to its first segment, similar to `LoadSeg()`.

Additional parameters may be provided in the form of a `TagList`, passed in as `tags`. The first two functions are identical and differ only by their naming convention; the last function prototype also refers to the same entry within the *dos.library*, though uses a different calling convention where the second and all following arguments form the `TagList` itself. This `TagList` is build on the stack, and the pointer to this stack-based `TagList` is passed in.

While this function looks quite useful, AmigaDOS does currently not define any tags for this function, and thus no additional functionality over `LoadSeg()` is provided.

The segment list returned by this function shall be removed from memory via `UnLoadSeg()`, a specialized unloader function is not required for this call.

### 10.2.3 Loading an Executable through Call-Back Functions

The `InternalLoadSeg()` function loads a binary executable, retrieving data and memory through call-back functions. While `LoadSeg()` always goes through the *dos.library* and the *exec.library* for reading data and allocating memory, this function instead calls through user-provided functions.

```

seglist = InternalLoadSeg(fh, table, funcs)
D0                                     D0  A0  A1

BPTR InternalLoadSeg (BPTR, BPTR, struct LoadSegFuncs *)

```

This function loads a binary executable in the hunk format from an opaque file handle `fh` through functions in the `funcs`. The `table` argument shall be `ZERO` when loading regular binaries or the root node of an overlay file, and shall be a *BPTR* to the array containing pointers to all segments when loading a non-root overlay node, see section 10.3.

The `LSFuncs` structure contains function pointers through which this function loads data or retrieves memory. It looks as follows:

```

struct LoadSegFuncs {
    LONG __asm ReadFunc(register __d1 BPTR fh,
                        register __a0 APTR buffer,
                        register __d0 ULONG size,
                        register __a6 struct DosLibrary *DOSBase);
    APTR __asm AllocMem(register __d0 ULONG size,
                       register __d1 ULONG flags,
                       register __a6 struct ExecBase *SysBase);
    void __asm FreeMem (register __a1 APTR mem,
                       register __d0 ULONG size,
                       register __a6 struct ExecBase *SysBase);
}

```

---

The `ReadFunc()` function retrieves `d0` bytes from an opaque file handle passed into register `d1` and places the read bytes into the buffer pointed to by register `a0`, it shall return the number of bytes read in register `d0`, or a negative value in case of error. Note that the file handle `d1` need not to be a file handle as returned by the `Open()` function, it is only a copy of the `fh` argument provided to `InternalLoadSeg()`. Register `a6` is loaded by a pointer to the *dos.library*.

The `AllocMem()` function allocates `d0` bytes of memory, using requirement flags from `exec/memory.h` such as `MEMF_CHIP` to require chip memory or `MEMF_FAST` for fast memory. This function shall return a pointer to the allocated memory in register `d0`, or `NULL` in case of failure. Register `a6` is loaded with a pointer to the *exec.library*.

The `FreeMem()` function releases a block of `d0` bytes pointed to by `a0`. Register `a6` is loaded with a pointer to the *exec.library*.

The purpose of this function is to load a segment or a binary without having access to a file or a *file system*; for example, this function could load binaries from ROM-space, or from the Rigid Disk Block of a boot partition. In particular, the `fh` argument does not need to be a regular *file handle*; it is rather an opaque value identifying the source. This argument is not interpreted, it is rather passed into `funcs->ReadFunc()` in register `d1`.

When allocating memory, the `InternalLoadSeg()` function follows the conventions of the `AllocVec()` and `FreeVec()` functions and stores the number of allocated bytes in the first four bytes of the allocated memory block. In specific, the memory allocator and memory releaser functions provided in the `LoadSegFuncs` structure *do not need* to store the memory sizes, and the `exec AllocMem()` and `FreeMem()` functions satisfy the interfaces for `InternalLoadSeg()` function already.

This function does not set `IoErr()` consistently, unless the functions within `LoadSegFuncs` do. Callers should also call `SetIoErr(0)` upfront this function to identify all errors.

## 10.2.4 Unloading a Binary

The `UnLoadSeg()` function releases a linked list of segments as returned the AmigaDOS segment loaders.

```
success = UnLoadSeg( seglist )
D0                      D1
```

```
BOOL UnLoadSeg(BPTR)
```

This function releases all segments chained together by `LoadSeg()` and `NewLoadSeg()` and returns their memory back into the system pool. This function *also* accepts overlaid segments, see section 10.3, and releases additional resources acquired for them.

Segment lists loaded through `InternalLoadSeg()` require in general a more generic unloader. They shall be released through `InternalUnLoadSeg()` instead, see 10.2.5.

This function returns a non-zero result in case of success, or 0 in case of error. Currently, the only source of error is passing in `ZERO` as segment list, all other cases will indicate success. In particular, this function does not attempt to check return codes of the function calls required to release resources associated to overlaid files.

## 10.2.5 UnLoading a Binary through Call-Back Functions

The `InternalUnLoadSeg()` function releases a segment list loaded through `InternalLoadSeg()`.

```
success = InternalUnLoadSeg(seglist, FreeFunc)
D0                      D1          A1
```

```

BOOL InternalUnLoadSeg(BPTR,
                      void __asm (*) (register __a1 APTR,
                                      register __d0 ULONG,
                                      register __a6 struct ExecBase
                                      *SysBase))

```

This function releases a segment list created by `InternalLoadSeg()` passed in as `seglst`. To release memory, it uses a function pointed to by `a1`. This function expects the memory block to release in register `a1` and its size in register `d0`. Additionally, register `a6` will be populated by a function to the *exec.library*.

This function pointer should be identical to the `FreeMem` function pointer in the `LoadSegFuncs` structure provided to `InternalAllocMem()`, or at least shall be able to release memory allocated by the `AllocMem` function pointer in this structure. Note that the `InternalLoadSeg()` stores the sizes of the allocated memory blocks itself and that `FreeFunc` does not need to retrieve them.

This function is also able to release overlaid binaries, but then closes the file stored in the root node of the overlay tree (see section 10.3) through the `Close()` function of the *dos.library*. It therefore can only release overlaid files that were loaded from regular *file handles* obtained through `Open()`.

This function returns a non-negative result code in case of success, or 0 in case of failure. Currently, the only cause of failure is to pass in a `ZERO` segment list, the function does not check of the result code of `Close()` on the file handle of overlaid files. It therefore neither sets `IoErr()` consistently in case of failure.

## 10.3 Overlays

While regular binary executables are first brought to memory in entity and then brought to execution, overlaid binaries only keep a fraction of the executable code in memory and then load additional code parts as required, potentially releasing other currently unused code parts and thus making more memory available.

Overlays are an extension of the AmigaDOS hunk format that splits the executable into a root node that is loaded initially and stays resident for the lifetime of the program, and one or multiple extension or overlay nodes that are loaded and unloaded on demand. Locating the overlay nodes, loading them to memory and releasing unused nodes is performed by the *overlay manager*, a short piece of program.

AmigaDOS does not provide a ROM-resident overlay manager itself, i.e. the *dos.library* does not provide an overlay manager itself, though it provides services overlay managers may use. Instead, the overlay manager is part of the root node of an overlaid binary, and thus overlay management is fully under control of the application.

However, the Amiga linker *ALink*, the Software Distillery linker *BLink* and the SAS/C linker *SLink* include a standard overlay manager, and this manager and its properties are discussed in greater detail in this section.

### 10.3.1 The Overlay File Format

A binary file making use of overlays consists of several nodes, one root node and several overlaid nodes. Nodes contain multiple segments, defined through `HUNK_CODE`, `HUNK_DATA` or `HUNK_BSS` as in regular (non-overlaid) binary files.

Each node, the root node and all overlaid nodes start with a `HUNK_HEADER` identifying which segments are contained in the node. The root node is terminated by a `HUNK_OVERLAY` on which loading stops; this hunk contains additional data for the purpose of the overlay manager, and therefore the data within this hunk depends on the overlay manager.

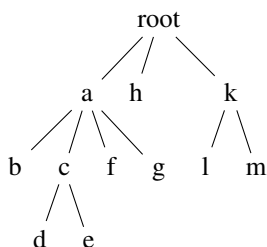
Every other overlay node terminates with a `HUNK_BREAK`, and loading stops there as well. This hunk does not contain any data. The overall structure of an overlaid binary therefore looks as follows:

**Table 43: Overlay File Format**

Hunk Type	Description
HUNK_HEADER	Defines segments for the root node
HUNK_CODE	Contains the overlay manager and other resident code
...	Other hunks, such as relocation information
HUNK_END	Terminates the previous segment
HUNK_OVERLAY	Metadata for the overlay manager, see 10.3.3
do {	Repeats over all overlay nodes
HUNK_HEADER	Defines the segments in this overlay node
HUNK_CODE or HUNK_DATA	First segment of the overlay node
...	Other hunks of this overlay node
HUNK_END	Terminates the last segment
HUNK_BREAK	Terminates the first overlay node, see 10.3.4
} while(!end of file);	This pattern repeats until end of file

### 10.3.2 The Hierarchical Overlay Manager

The overlay manager that comes with the standard Amiga linkers *ALink*, *BLink* and *SLink* structures overlay nodes into a tree such as the following:



Only those nodes that form a path from the root to one of the nodes of the tree can be in memory at a time. Thus, for the above example, the root node and nodes *a*, *c* and *e* can be in memory simultaneously, or the root node, and nodes *k* and *m* can be loaded at the same time, but not the nodes *a*, *g* and *h* because they do not form a path from the root to one of the nodes.

Thus, in the above example, if nodes *a* and *f* are in memory, and node *l* is required, the nodes *a* and *f* will be removed from memory, and nodes *k* and *l* are loaded. Even though *k* is not explicitly requested, it needs to be loaded as it is the parent of *l*.

Every node in the overlay tree is identified by two numbers: The depth of the node, which identifies the level within the tree where a node is located. The root node is at level 0, the nodes *a*, *h* and *k* forms level 1 in the above example, nodes *b*, *c*, *f*, *g* and *l* and *m* form level 2, and nodes *d* and *e* are level 3.

The second number is the ordinate number of a node. The ordinate enumerates nodes from left to right within a level, and it starts from 1 in the standard overlay manager. In the above example, *a* is at ordinate 1, *h* at ordinate 2, and *k* at ordinate 3. At level 2, node *b* has ordinate 1, node *c* ordinate 2 and so on.

### 10.3.3 HUNK\_OVERLAY

This hunk terminates the loading process and indicates the end of the root segments. The `HUNK_OVERLAY` contains meta-data — the overlay table — for the overlay manager. This table contains information where symbols within the overlaid segments are located. Section 10.3 provides more information on overlays. The format of the data within this hunk depends on the overlay manager which shall be included in the first segment of the executable itself as AmigaDOS does not contain a resident overlay manager.

The standard AmigaDOS linkers, `ALink` and `BLink` both include an overlay manager. Each entry in its overlay table describes a symbol that is located in one of the overlay nodes. The format of `HUNK_OVERLAY` reads as follows:

**Table 44: MANX Hunk Overlay Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	<code>HUNK_OVERLAY [0x3f5]</code>	Overlay table definition
32	$l$	Size of the overlay table, it is $l + 1$ long-words large.
Format for the standard overlay manager, $l + 1$ long-words.		
32	$o_d$	Number of levels in the overlay tree, including the root node
	<code>for (<math>i = 1; i &lt; o_d; i++</math>) {</code>	For all nodes, excluding the root node
32	0	Currently loaded ordinate, shall be zero
	<code>}</code>	That is, $o_d - 1$ zeros
	$l -= o_d$	Count removed long-words
	$s = 0$	Start with symbol 0
	<code>while (<math>l \geq 0</math>) {</code>	Repeat over the overlay table
32	$o_p[s]$	Absolute file offset of the <code>HUNK_HEADER</code> of the overlay node containing the symbol.
64		Two reserved long-words.
32	$o_l[s]$	Level of the overlay node containing the symbol, the root level containing the overlay manager is level 0.
32	$o_n[s]$	Ordinate of the overlay node, enumerating overlay nodes of the same depth.
32	$o_h[s]$	Hunk index of the first hunk within the overlay node.
32	$o_s[s]$	Hunk index of the hunk containing the symbol described by this entry in the overlay node.
32	$o_o[s]$	Symbol offset within hunk $o_s$
	$l -= 8$	Remove 8 long words.
	$s++$	Advance to next symbol.
	<code>}</code>	End of loop over table

Note that the overlay table is  $l + 1$  and not  $l$  long-words large, i.e. a table only defining a single symbol would be indicated by a value of  $l = 7$ . While the payload data of `HUNK_OVERLAY` is always  $l + 1$  long-words large, with  $l$  indicated in the first long-word of the hunk, the format of the subsequent data is specific to the overlay manager used.

Irrespective of the overlay manager used, the AmigaDOS loader injects overlay-specific data into the first segment loaded from disk, that is, into the root-node. The data placed there is also required to release all resources associated to overlays and is expected there by `UnLoadSeg()` and `InternalUnLoadSeg()`.

The first bytes of the root node shall therefore form the following structure:

```
struct OverlayHeader {
    UWORD      oh_Jump[2];    /* Forms a branch to the startup code */
    LONG       oh_Magic;      /* Shall be 0x0000abcd */
    BPTR       oh_FileHandle; /* Filled by the loader with the fh */
    struct OVTab *oh_OVTab;   /* Overlay table from HUNK_OVERLAY */
}
```

```

        BPTR          oh_Segments; /* Array of segment BPTRs          */
        BPTR          oh_GV;      /* standard Global Vector      */
};

```

As said earlier, this structure is expected to be present at the start of the first hunk of the root node. The members `oh_FileHandle` to `oh_GV` are filled in by the AmigaDOS loader, i.e. `LoadSeg()` and related functions, but `oh_Jump` and `oh_Magic` shall be part of the segment itself.

`oh_Jump` form valid 68K opcodes, and shall contain a jump or branch branch around this structure. This is because loaded binaries are executed from the first byte of the first segment loaded. Otherwise, the CPU would run into the data of the structure which likely forms invalid or illegal opcodes. The AmigaDOS Loader itself does not interpret the values here, just expects them to be present.

`oh_Magic` shall contain the “magic” long-word `0xabcd`. This value is neither filled or interpreted by the loader, but nevertheless shall be present. It is, however, checked by `UnLoadSeg()` and used there as an identifier for the `OverlayHeader` structure. If this identifier is not present, `UnLoadSeg()` will not be able to release resources associated to overlays.

`oh_FileHandle` will be filled by the AmigaDOS loader with a *BPTR* to the *FileHandle* from which the root node has been loaded, or with the first argument of `InternalLoadSeg()`. This handle is used by the overload manager to load all subsequent overlay nodes. Also, `UnLoadSeg()` and related functions call `Close()` on the handle stored here as the file needs to stay open for the life time of the loaded program.

`oh_OVTab` is filled by the AmigaDOS loader to a pointer to the payload data of `HUNK_OVERLAY`. The standard overlay manager stores here for every externally referenced symbol in an overlay node a structure that records for each tree level the ordinate of the currently loaded overlay node, and for all externally referenced symbols the position of the symbol within the overlay tree:

```

struct OVTab {
    ULONG ot_TreeDepth; /* Depth of the tree, including the root */
    ULONG ot_LoadedOrd[]; /* The loaded ordinate, indexed by level-1 */
}
struct SymTab {
    ULONG ot_FilePosition; /* File position of HUNK_HEADER of the node */
    ULONG ot_Reserved[2]; /* Not in use */
    ULONG ot_Level; /* Level of the overlay node */
    ULONG ot_Ordinate; /* Ordinate of the overlay node */
    ULONG ot_FirstHunk; /* First segment of the overlay node */
    ULONG ot_SymbolHunk; /* Segment containing the referenced symbol */
    ULONG ot_SymbolOffset; /* Offset of the segment within the segment */
} [] /* Repeats for each symbol */

```

That is, the overlay table starts with the tree depth  $o_d$  and an array of  $o_d - 1$  elements where each element stores the ordinate of the currently loaded overlay node. If an entry in this array is 0, no overlay node at this tree level is loaded, otherwise it is the 1-based ordinate of the node.

The ordinate table is followed by the symbol table. The purpose of this structure is that it allows the overlay manager on a reference to such an external symbol to find and load the overlay node containing the symbol, and then resolve references to it. How exactly it does so is explained in more detail in section 10.3.9. The elements of this structure are already briefly introduced in table 44.

`oh_Segments` is filled by the AmigaDOS loader to a *BPTR* to the segment table of the loaded binary. The size of this table is taken from  $t_{\text{size}}$  in the `HUNK_HEADER` of the root node, see table 31. Each element in this array contains a *BPTR* to a segment of the loaded binary, and it is indexed by the segment number, counting from 0 for the first segment of the root node.

When parsing a `HUNK_HEADER`, the array entries  $t_{\text{num}}$  to  $t_{\text{max}}$  will be populated with the *BPTRs* to the segments allocated of the node described by this hunk, and when unloading an overlay node, the corresponding segments will be unlinked, released and then cleared out.

oh\_GV is, finally, filled with the *Global Vector* of the *dos.library* containing all regular functions in the library, as required by BCPL code. Overlay managers implemented in C or assembler will not make use of it and instead call vectors of the *dos.library* through the *dos.library* base address loaded in register a6.

### 10.3.4 HUNK\_BREAK

This hunk terminates the loading process and indicates the end of an overlay node. The hunk itself does not contain any data.

**Table 45: Hunk Break Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_BREAK [0x3f6]	Terminate a segment

### 10.3.5 Loading an Overload Node

The LoadSeg() function is not only able to load the root segments of an overlaid binary, it can also be used for loading an overlaid node and all segments within it. For that, the file pointer shall first be placed with Seek() to the file offset of the HUNK\_HEADER of the overlaid node. This file offset may, for the standard hierarchical overlay manager, be taken from the ot\_FilePosition of the overlay table.

```
seglist = LoadSeg( name ,table, fh)
D0          D1      D2      D3
```

```
BPTR LoadSeg(STRPTR ,BPTR, BPTR)
```

For overlaid node loading, the first argument name shall be NULL, which is used as an indicator to this function to interpret two additional (usually hidden) arguments.

table is a BPTR to the segment table, and may be taken from oh\_Segments. It contains BPTRs to all allocated segments, see section 10.3.3.

fh is a BPTR to the FileHandle from which the overlay node is to be loaded. This handle may be taken from oh\_FileHandle, see section 10.3.3.

While this function allocates and loads the segments in the overlaid node, it does not attempt to release already allocated segments populating the same entries in the segment table; it is instead up to the overlay manager to clean up the segment table upfront, see 10.3.7. The information which segments will be populated by an overlay node may be taken from the ot\_FirstHunk member of the overlay table. Due to the tree structure imposed by the hierarchical overlay manager, it has to release all segments from ot\_FirstHunk onwards up to the end of the table, unlink the segments contained therein, and then load another overlay node through LoadSeg().

Note that this function populates the same offset in the *dos.library* as the regular LoadSeg() function; the function distinguishes loading regular binaries through a file name from loading overlay nodes by the first argument.

As the regular LoadSeg() call, this function returns the BPTR to the first segment loaded on success, links all loaded segments together, populates the segment table, and then sets IoErr() to 0. On error, it returns ZERO and installs an error code in IoErr().

### 10.3.6 Loading an Overlay Node through Call-Back Functions

The InternalLoadSeg() function can also load an overlay node.

```
seglist = InternalLoadSeg(fh,table,funcs)
```

```
D0                                D0  A0  A1
```

```
BPTR InternalLoadSeg(BPTR,BPTR,struct LoadSegFuncs *)
```

The `fh` argument is an opaque file handle that is suitable for the `ReadFunc()` provided by the `funcs` structure. The corresponding file pointer shall first be placed to the file offset of the `HUNK_HEADER` of the overlaid node, e.g. by a functionality similar to `Seek()` for regular *FileHandles*. This file offset may, for the standard hierarchical overlay manager, be taken from the `ot_FilePosition` within the overlay table.

The `table` shall be the `BPTR` to the segment table; this may be taken from `oh_Segments`. This argument determines whether a regular binary load is requested, or an overlay node is to be loaded. In the latter case, this argument is non-ZERO.

Like `LoadSeg()`, this function does not release segments in populated entries in the segment list, it is up to the overlay manager to unload these segments. The information which entries of the segment table will be populated by an overlay node may be taken from the `ot_FirstHunk` member of the overlay table, see also 10.3.5.

The `funcs` argument points to a `LoadSegFuncs` structure as defined in section 10.2.3 and contains functions for reading data and allocating and releasing memory.

This function does not set `IoErr()` consistently, unless the functions in the `LoadSegFuncs` structure do. The function returns the segment of the first segment of the overlay node on success, or ZERO on error.

### 10.3.7 Unloading Overlay Nodes

Unloading overlay nodes (and *not* the root node) of an overlaid binary requires some manipulation of the segment table as the *dos.library* does not provide a function for such operation. This algorithm is part of the overlay manager, but its implementation within the standard hierarchical overlay manager documented here for completeness. Other custom overlay managers perform potentially different algorithms.

First, it finds the previous segment upfront the segment to be unloaded, and cleans there the `NextSegment` pointer to unlink all following segments. Then these following segments are released through `FreeVec()` or, in case a custom allocator was provided for `InternalLoadSeg()`, whatever memory release function is appropriate.

The following sample code releases the overlay node starting at segment  $i > 0$  from a segment table of an overlay header:

```
void UnloadOverlayNode(struct OverlayHeader *oh,ULONG i)
{
    BPTR *segtbl = (BPTR *)BADDR(oh->oh_Segments);
    BPTR *segment = (BPTR *)BADDR(segtbl[i - 1]);
    BPTR next;

    /* Release the linkage from the last loaded to
    ** the first segment to release */
    *segment = NULL;

    do {
        /* Get the segment to release */
        if (segment = (BPTR *)BADDR(segtbl[i++])) {
            next = *segment;
            FreeVec(segment);
        }
    } while (next);
}
```



```

    } else break;
    /* Repeat until the last segment */
} while(next);
}

```

Note that a previous segment always exists because the root node populates at least entry 0 of the segment table. The above loop makes use of the fact that the first long-word of a segment is a *BPTR* to the next segment, and this linkage is *ZERO* for the final node.

If a custom memory allocator has been used for loading overlay nodes through `InternalLoadSeg()`, the `FreeVec()` in the above function is replaced by the corresponding memory release function.

### 10.3.8 Unloading Overlay Binaries

To unload the root node, and thus unload the entire program including all overlay nodes, `UnLoadSeg()` on the first segment of the root node is sufficient if neither custom I/O nor a custom memory allocator has been used to load the binary, independent on which overlay manager has been used. `UnLoadSeg()` will detect the overlay manager from the magic value in `oh_Magic` and will then not only release the segments, but also close the overlay file handle and release the segment table.

If `InternalLoadSeg()` has been used for loading the root node through custom I/O functions or with a custom memory allocator, `InternalUnLoadSeg()` shall be used instead to release the root node. Unfortunately, it *always* uses `Close()` on `oh_FileHandle`, even if `oh_FileHandle` does not correspond to a *FileHandle* as returned by `Open()`, e.g. because `ReadFunc()` upon loading the overlay program pointed to a custom I/O function. The best strategy in this case is probably to close `oh_FileHandle` manually upfront with whatever method is appropriate, then zero it out manually and then finally call into `InternalUnLoadSeg()` to perform all the necessary cleanup steps. This strategy works because `Close()` on a *ZERO* file handle performs no operation and is legit.

### 10.3.9 Internal Working of the Overlay Manager

Several versions of the hierarchical overlay manager exist. The version described here stems from the SAS/C *SLink* utility and is designed for the *registerized parameters* configuration within which some function arguments are passed in CPU registers. Earlier versions require stack-based parameter passing.

When binding objects together to an overlay binary together, the linker checks whether a reference to a symbol crosses a boundary of overlay nodes. References that go to a parent node or the node itself can be resolved by the linker by creating a relocation entry in a `HUNK_RELOC32` hunk as it can assume that the corresponding segment is already loaded.

References to symbols within child nodes receive each a unique integer identifier, and an entry in the overlay table in `HUNK_OVERLAY` at the index given by the identifier. The actual call to a function in a child node is then replaced to call into a trampoline function that looks as follows:

```

@symX:
    jsr @ovlyMgr
    dc.w symbX

```

where `@ovlyMgr` is the entry point of the overlay manager and `symbX` is the identifier of the referenced symbol. The overlay manager reads the return PC which points to the identifier, and from the identifier finds the entry in the symbol table.

The symbol table contains both the ordinate and the level of the symbol with which the overlay manager is able to check whether the node containing the symbol is currently loaded. If this is not the case, it needs to unload the currently loaded node at this level and all its children, and then progresses to loading the required node from the file offset in the symbol table, and then progresses to updating the overlay table.

If the overlay node containing the symbol is already loaded, or just has been loaded, the symbol address is computed from the offset in the symbol table and the address of the segment containing the symbol from the segment table, and injected into the return address that contained a pointer to the symbol identifier. Thus, when returning from the overlay manager, the code will continue to execute from the target symbol. Other versions of the overlay manager use a trampoline function that loads register d0 with the symbol identifier and thus require stack-based function calls.

Regardless of the version of the overlay manager, only symbols corresponding to function can be resolved as the overlay manager must be called to resolve a symbol. In particular, data cannot be referenced across overlay nodes — instead, an accessor function may be used that returns the object to be accessed.

The following code provides an overlay manager for register-based calls:

```

        xdef      @ovlyMgr
;*****
;** Offsets in the overlay-table                **
;*****
        rsreset
ot_FilePosition:      rs.l 1          ;File position
ot_reserved:          rs.l 2          ;for whatever
ot_OverlayLevel:      rs.l 1          ;Overlay-Level
ot_Ordinate:          rs.l 1          ;Overlay-Ordinate
ot_InitialHunk:        rs.l 1          ;Initial hunk for loading
ot_SymbolHunk:         rs.l 1          ;Hunk containing symbol
ot_SymbolOffset:       rs.l 1          ;Offset of symbol
ot_len:                rs.b 0

;*****
;** Other stuff                                **
;*****
MajikLibWord      =      23456

        section NTRYHUNK, CODE
;*****
;** Manager starts here                        **
;*****
Start:
        bra.w NextModule                ;Jump to the next segment...

;* This next word serves to identify the overlay
;* supervisor to 'unloader', i.e. UnLoadSeg()

        dc.l      $ABCD                  ;Magic longword for UnLoadSeg

;* The next four LWs are filled by the loader (LoadSeg())
ol_FileHandle:      dc.l 0                ;Overlay file handle (points to me)
ol_OverlayTab:       dc.l 0                ;Overlay table as found in the overlay hunk
ol_HunkTable:        dc.l 0                ;BPTR to Overlay hunk table
ol_GlobVec:          dc.l 0                ;BPTR to global vector (what for ?)

        dc.l MajikLibWord                ;Majik library word as identifier
        dc.b 7, "Overlay"                ;Majik identifier

```

```

; * the following data is specific to this manger

ol_SysBase:      dc.l 0                      ;additional pointer
ol_DOSBase:      dc.l 0                      ;to libraries

                dc.b "THOR Overlay Manager 1.0",0      ;another ID

@ovlyMgr:        ;Entry-points
                saveregs d0-d3/a0-a4/a6              ;Saveback register

                moveq #0,d0
                move.l 10*4(a7),a0
                move.w (a0),d0                      ;get the overlay reference ID

                move.l ol_OverlayTab(pc),a3           ;get pointer to overlay table
                move.l a3,a4                          ;to a4
                add.l (a3),d0                         ;add length
                lsl.l #2,d0                          ;get offset
                add.l d0,a3                          ;address of overlay entry
                move.l ot_OverlayLevel(a3),d0         ;get overlay
                lsl.l #2,d0
                adda.l d0,a4
                move.l ot_Ordinate(a3),d0            ;get required ordinate level
                cmp.l (a4),d0                        ;compare with current ordinate level
                beq.s .gotsegment                    ;not correct level
                                                    ;clear all other entries behind this
                move.l d0,(a4)+                      ;fill with new overlay entries

                moveq #0,d1
                do                                     ;macros in action! ;- )
                tst.l (a4)                            ;terminate, if end of table found
                break.s eq
                move.l d1,(a4)+                      ;clear this
                loop.s

                move.l ot_InitialHunk(a3),d0          ;first hunk number to load
                add.l ol_HunkTable(pc),d0            ;plus BPTR of hunk table
                lsl.l #2,d0                          ;address of entry in hunk table
                move.l d0,a4
                move.l -4(a4),d0                      ;get previous hunk
                beq.s .noprevious
                lsl.l #2,d0
                move.l d0,a2
                move.l d1,(a2)                      ;unlink fields before loading
                                                    ;now free all hunks
                move.l ol_SysBase(pc),a6

                do
                move.l (a4)+,d0                      ;next hunk ?

```

```

        break.s eq
        lsl.l #2,d0
        move.l d0,a1
        move.l -(a1),d0
        jsr FreeMem(a6)
loop.s
        ;->a1
        ;get length
        ;free this hunk
        ;and now the next

.retry:
        move.l ol_DOSBase(pc),a6
        move.l ol_FileHandle(pc),d1
        move.l ot_FilePosition(a3),d2
        moveq #-1,d3
        jsr Seek(a6)
        tst.l d0
        bmi.s .loaderror

        ;get our stream
        ;get file position
        ;relative to beginning of file
        ;seek to this position
        ;found something ?
        ;what to do on failure ?

        ;now call the loader
        move.l ol_HunkTable(pc),d2
        moveq #0,d1
        move.l ol_FileHandle(pc),d3
        jsr LoadSeg(a6)
        tst.l d0
        beq.s .loaderror
        move.l d0,(a2)

        ;hunk table
        ;no file (is overlay)
        ;filehandle
        ;load this stuff
        ;found
        ;add new chain

        ;found this stuff

.gotsegment:
        move.l ot_SymbolHunk(a3),d0
        add.l ol_HunkTable(pc),d0
        lsl.l #2,d0
        move.l d0,a4
        move.l (a4),d0
        lsl.l #2,d0
        add.l ot_SymbolOffset(a3),d0

        ;get hunk # containing symbol
        ;get APTR to hunk
        ;BPTR to hunk
        ;Offset

        move.l d0,10*4(a7)
        ;Set RETURN-Address

        loadregs
        rts

;*****
;** Go here if we find an error
;*****
.loaderror:
        saveregs d7/a5
        move.l ol_SysBase(pc),a6
        move.l #$0700000C,d7
        move.l $114(a6),a5
        jsr Alert(a6)
        loadregs
        bra.s .retry

        ;Post alert
        ;Retry or die

```

```

.noprevious:
    move.l ol_SysBase(pc),a6
    move.l #$8700000C,d7          ;dead end !
    move.l $114(a6),a5
    jsr Alert(a6)                ;Post alert
    bra.s .noprevious

;*****
;** NextModule                      **
;** Open stuff absolutely necessary and **
;** continue with main program code    **
;*****
NextModule:
                                ;why safe registers ?
    move.l a0,a2
    move.l d0,d2                ;keep arguments
    lea ol_SysBase(pc),a3
    move.l ExecBase,a6
    move.l a6,(a3)              ;fill in Sysbase
    lea DOSName(pc),a1          ;get name of DOS
    moveq #33,d0                ;at least 1.2 MUST be used
    jsr OpenLibrary(a6)
    move.l d0,4(a3)             ;Save back DOS base for loader
    beq.s .nodosexit           ;exit if no DOS here

    move.l d0,a6
    move.l Start-4(pc),a0        ;Get BPTR of next hunk
    adda.l a0,a0
    adda.l a0,a0
    exg.l a0,a2                 ;move to a2
    move.l d2,d0                ;restore argument
    jsr 4(a2)                   ;jump in
    move.l d0,d2                ;Save return code

    move.l ol_SysBase(pc),a6
    move.l ol_DOSBase(pc),a1
    jsr CloseLibrary(a6)        ;Close the lib

    move.l d2,d0                ;Returncode in d0
    rts

.nodosexit:
    move.l #$07038007,d7        ;DOS didn't open
    move.l $114(a6),a5
    jsr Alert(a6)
    moveq #30,d0                ;Something went really wrong !
    rts

DOSName:      dc.b "dos.library",0

```

### 10.3.10 The MANX Overlay Manager

The Aztec C compiler from MANX offers an alternative overlay manager that is related to the Resource Manager from MacOS. It does not organize overlay nodes in a hierarchy, but only in a single level; however, all nodes of this single level can be loaded and unloaded independently from each other, either on demand through the function `segload()` provided by the MANX compiler library, or whenever a function of an overlaid node is called. The corresponding `freeseq()` function unloads a node again. A node consists of one or more hunks that are loaded and unloaded jointly. Unfortunately, this overlay manager depends on self-modifying code and ignores the instruction cache present in later members of the Motorola 68K family, and is therefore no longer safe to use.

The MANX overlay manager organizes its nodes through the data in the `HUNK_OVERLAY` hunk, which, however, is in a different format than the one documented in section 10.3.3, and trampolines that direct the code flow for non-resident functions to the overlay manager. The contents of the `HUNK_OVERLAY` hunk contains offsets within the file, to the trampoline functions and to the symbol table that provides information in which hunks the overlaid functions reside. The trampolines are not part of `HUNK_OVERLAY` but reside at the beginning of the `HUNK_DATA` hunk, relative to the `__H1_org` symbol.

Even though the structure of the `HUNK_OVERLAY` differs from the one in section 10.3.3, the AmigaDOS `LoadSeg()` function does not care about the contents of this hunk as long as its first `LONG` word indicates its size. It provides the data within to the program as-is through `oh_OVTab` of the `OverlayHeader` which shall be present at the beginning of the first segment of the binary; this structure, of course, does not change from its definition in section 10.3.3 except that data within the overlay hunk is organized differently:

```
struct ManxOverlayHeader {
    UWORD      oh_Jump[2];    /* Forms a branch to the startup code */
    LONG       oh_Magic;      /* Shall be 0x0000abcd */
    BPTR       oh_FileHandle; /* Filled by the loader with the fh */
    struct MANXOV *oh_OVTab;  /* Overlay table from HUNK_OVERLAY */
    BPTR       oh_Segments;   /* Array of segment BPTRs */
    BPTR       oh_GV;         /* standard Global Vector */
};
```

The overlay structure for the MANX compiler reads on disk as follows:

**Table 46: Hunk Overlay Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	<code>HUNK_OVERLAY [0x3f5]</code>	Overlay table definition for MANX
32	$l$	Size of the overlay table, it is $l + 1$ long-words large.
Format for the MANX overlay manager, $l + 1$ long-words.		
32	$o_d$	Number of nodes in the overlay, excluding the root node
	<code>for(<math>i = 1</math>; <math>i &lt; o_d</math>; <math>i++</math>) {</code>	For all nodes, excluding the root node
32	$o_p[i]$	Absolute file offset of the <code>HUNK_HEADER</code> of the overlay node
16	$o_t[i]$	Offset of the first trampoline relative to the data hunk of the root node
16	$o_s[i]$	Offset to the symbol table relative to $o_p[0]$
	<code>}</code>	
	$l- = o_d \times 2$	Count removed long-words
	$s = 0$	Start with symbol 0
	<code>while(<math>l \geq 0</math>) {</code>	Repeat over the symbol table

16	$o_h[s]$	Hunk within which the symbols reside, or 0 for end of symbols for this hunk
16	$o_c[s]$	Symbol count for hunk $o_h[s]$
	$l -= 1$	Remove one long words.
	$s++$	Advance to next entry.
	}	End of loop over table

In memory, it is approximately described by the following pseudo-structure, noting that some elements are variably sized and are thus hard to represent in the C syntax:

```

struct MANXOv {
    ULONG ot_NodeCount;          /* Number of overlay nodes          */
    struct OvNode {              /* One per overlay node            */
        ULONG ot_FilePosition;    /* Position of HUNK_HEADER          */
        UWORD ot_TrampolineOff;   /* Offset of the first trampoline   */
        UWORD ot_SymbolOffset;    /* Relative to &ot_NodeCount+1     */
    } ot_Nodes[];
}

struct SymTab {
    UWORD ot_Hunk;               /* Hunk containing symbols or 0 for end */
    UWORD ot_Count;              /* Number of trampolines to patch     */
} []                             /* Repeats multiple times */

```

The element  $o_d$  representing `ot_NodeCount` defines the number overlay nodes that can all be loaded or unloaded individually. The element  $o_p[i]$  providing `ot_FilePosition` is the offset relative to the start of the binary file at which the `HUNK_HEADER` of the overlay node  $i$  is found. The offset  $o_t[i]$  giving `ot_TrampolineOff` is the offset of the first trampoline to a symbol within overlay node  $i$ ; the offset is relative to the second hunk of the root node, or more precisely, relative to `__H1_org`.

Finally,  $o_s[i]$ , or in memory `ot_SymbolOffset`, is used by the MANX overlay manager to find the first symbol descriptor within the second part of the `HUNK_OVERLAY`, i.e. a `SymTab` structure. The offset is relative to the third long word within this hunk, or as  $l$  is not part of the internal memory representation, relative to `&ot_NodeCount+1`. The target of this offset is a sequence of  $o_h[s], o_c[s]$  pairs. The first member of this pair,  $o_h[s]$ , or `ot_Hunk` in memory, is the hunk number containing the overlaid symbol; this clearly cannot be 0 as this would be within root node. The second member of the pair,  $o_c[s]$  or `ot_Count` is the number of symbols within this hunk. The symbols for the loaded node terminate with an  $o_h[s]$  entry being 0.

The `HUNK_OVERLAY` hunk does not contain the symbol offsets itself. Rather, symbol offsets are part of the trampoline which is included in the second hunk of the root node. The offset to the first trampoline of an overlay node relative to the start the second hunk is provided by  $o_t[i]$ , that is, by `ot_TrampolineOff`.

Each trampoline looks as follows on disk:

**Table 47: MANX Overlay Trampoline**

Size	Code	Syntax
16	0x6100	68K Opcode of <code>bsr.w</code>
16	$t_j$	Branch offset to overlay manager
8	$t_n$	Overlay node number
24	$t_o$	Offset of the overlay symbol within the loaded hunk

In memory, this is equivalent to the following structure:

```

struct MANXTrampoline {
    UWORD mt_BSR;                /* filled with 0x6100      */
    WORD  mt_OvMngrOffset;        /* Offset to overlay manager */
    UBYTE mt_OverlayNode;        /* Overlay node, counts from 0 */
    UBYTE mt_SymbolOffset[3];    /* Big-endian 24-bit offset  */
};

```

The start of the trampoline is a word-sized relative subroutine jump to the overlay manager itself. As the trampoline is typically in the second hunk of the root node, but the code of the overlay manager is in its first hunk, this branch goes to a long absolute jump to the overlay manager. The element  $t_j$ , or `mt_OvMngrOffset` is the branch distance to this jump. When building an overlaid binary, the MANX linker resolves all references to overlaid symbols to a trampoline as indicated above, and when the code of the loaded binary calls through them, the overlay manager fetches from the return stack of the 68K processor the address of the trampoline.

From  $t_n$ , or `mt_OverlayNode` in memory, it finds the entry in the first part of the `HUNK_OVERLAY`, namely a triple  $o_p[i]$ ,  $o_t[i]$ ,  $o_s[i]$  of file offset, trampoline offset and symbol offset, that is, a `OvNode` structure. This overlay node index is zero-indexed, i.e. the first overlay node is node 0, corresponding to the first element of the `ot_Nodes` array. The  $t_o$  offset, or `mt_SymbolOffset` in memory, is finally the offset of the symbol within its hunk.

When an overlay node is loaded, the overlay manager uses the symbol table consisting of `SymTab` structures and relocates from them the trampolines to the symbols; that is, the opcode of the relative branch in the first word of the trampoline is replaced by an absolute jump<sup>1</sup>, opcode `0x4ef9`. The subsequent long is filled by the address of the symbol, computed from the start of the hunk  $o_h[s]$  in `HUNK_OVERLAY` plus the offset  $t_o$  stored in the trampoline. The branch offset  $t_j$  is moved to the last 16 bits of the trampoline to enable the overlay manager to restore it back when the overlay node is unloaded.

Such a patched symbol then looks as follows:

```

struct MANXPatchedTrampoline {
    UWORD mt_JMP;                /* filled with 0x4ef9      */
    APTR  mt_OVSymbol;           /* absolute symbol address  */
    WORD  mt_OvMngrOffset;        /* Offset to overlay manager */
};

```

When unloading an overlay node, the original trampolines have to be restored such that a call to an overlay symbol triggers again loading the hunks containing the symbol from disk. For that, `mt_JMP` is again replaced by a `bsr.w` instruction, `mt_OvMngrOffset` is moved to the next word, and the hunk offset is re-injected by counting the hunks within the singly linked list of loaded segments. Finally, `mt_SymbolOffset` is re-computed by subtracting the base address of the segment from the absolute symbol address.

## 10.4 Structures within Hunks

While the AmigaDOS loader, i.e. `LoadSeg()` and related functions, do not care about the contents of the segments it loaded, some other components of AmigaDOS do actually analyze their contents.

### 10.4.1 The Version Cookie

The `Version` command scans a ROM-resident modules or all segments of a binary for the character sequence `$VER:` and if such a sequence is found, the string following is scanned. The syntax of the string consists of the following elements:

<sup>1</sup> Here the MANX overlay manager fails to clear the instruction cache, causing failure on later members of the 68K family.



- 
- The version cookie `$VER` :
  - one or multiple blank spaces
  - a program name, which is output by the `Version` command
  - a decimal number, representing the *version* of the program
  - a single dot (“.”)
  - a decimal number, representing the *revision* of the program
  - one or multiple blank spaces
  - an opening bracket (“(”)
  - a decimal number, representing the day of the month of the revision
  - a single dot (“.”)
  - a decimal number, representing the month of the revision
  - a single dot (“.”)
  - a decimal number, representing the year of the revision
  - a closing bracket (“) ”)
  - an optional comment that is only output if the `FULL` option of the `Version` is given.

If the number representing the year is below 1900, the `Version` command assumes a two-digit year and either adds 200 if the year is below 78, or 1900 otherwise. The command then re-formats the date according to the currently active locale and prints it to the console, along with the program name and, optionally, the comment string.

An example for the version cookie is

```
const char version[] = "$VER: RKRM-Dos 45.3 (12.9.2023) (c) THOR";
```

Note that the date follows the convention date of the month, month and year, here September 12, 2023. The version in this example is 45, the version is 3. The string behind the date is a comment and usually not printed by the `Version` command.

## 10.4.2 The Stack Cookie

The workbench, the shell, and also `GetDeviceProc()` when loading *handlers* scan the loaded binary for the string sequence `$STACK:`. If this string sequence is found, AmigaDOS attempts to read a following decimal number, and interprets this as stack size in bytes.

The stack of the program is then, potentially increased to the provided size. Note that AmigaDOS also scans alternative sources for a stack size: The `Stack` setting in the icon information window of the workbench, the `Stack` command of the shell, or the `STACKSIZE` entry in the mount list. The stack size indicated by the above stack cookie does not override these settings, it can only *increase* the stack size. This allows program authors to ensure that the stack of their program has a necessary minimal size, though still allows users to increase it if necessary.

An example for the stack cookie is

```
const char stack[] = "$STACK: 8192";
```

---

This ensures that the stack size of the program is at least 8192 bytes.

The *dos.library* provides with the `ScanStackToken()` an optimized function to quickly scan segments for the stack cookie and potentially adjust a default stacksize upwards to the value found in the stack cookie.

```
stack = ScanStackToken(segment, defaultstack)
D0                      D1          D2

LONG ScanStackToken(BPTR segment, LONG defaultstack)
```

This function scans the segment list starting at `segment` for a stack cookie, potentially adjusting the `defaultstack` size in bytes passed in. If a stack cookie is found, and the minimal stack size it finds is larger than the default stack, the stack size found in the stack cookie is returned in `stack`. If no stack cookie is found, or the value in the stack cookie is smaller than the `defaultstack` size, the default size is returned.

The `segment` is a *BPTR* to a singly linked list of segments, e.g. as returned by `LoadSeg()` function.

### 10.4.3 Runtime binding of BCPL programs

BCPL programs depend on a *Global Vector* that includes function entries and data available to all its modules. AmigaDOS includes a runtime binder functionality that creates the *Global Vector* from data found in the segments of the loaded binary and the *dos.library Global Vector*.

Even though this mechanism is deprecated and AmigaDOS has long been ported to C and assembler, some components still depend on this legacy mechanism, namely all *handlers* and *file systems* mounted with the `GLOBVEC = 0` or `GLOBVEC = -2` entry in the mount list. While newer *handlers* should not depend on this mechanism anymore, the `Port-Handler` mount entry is created in the Kickstart ROM as BCPL handler, beyond control of the user. The same goes for the `Shell`, which is also initiated as BCPL process.

If the above components — the `Port-Handler` or the *Shell* — are attempted to be customized, implementors need to be aware that these processes are not started from the first byte of the first segment, but from the *Global Vector* entry #1, which contains the address of the `START` function from which the process is run. All other entries of the vector are of no concern, and should not be used anymore.

The *Runtime Binder* of AmigaOs, initiated only for BCPL handlers and BCPL processes such as the *Shell*, now scans the segments of such programs for information on how to populate the *Global Vector*.

The *first long-word* of the segment, usually the entry point of the process, contains the long-word offset from the start of the process to the start of the *Global Vector* initialization data. This initialization data is *scanned backwards* from the given offset towards lower addresses, starting with the long-word before the offset.

The first long-word of the initialization data is the required size of the *Global Vector* the program requires. This value is only used to check the following initializers for validity. The standard system global vector currently requires 150 entries, which is a safe choice.

All following entries consist of pairs of long-words, scanned again towards smaller addresses, where each pair defines one entry in the global vector. The first (higher address) long-word is the offset of the function which will populate the *Global Vector*, the second (lower) address is the index of the *Global Vector* entry. An offset of 0 terminates the list.

The following assembler stub may be used as initial segment of an (otherwise C-based) handler that instructs the *Runtime Binder* to populate the `START` vector, and then calls into the `@main` function. BCPL unfortunately also uses a custom call syntax, register `a6` is the address of the BCPL return code which cleans up the BCPL stack frame and returns to the caller.

```

SECTION text,code

XREF    _main                ; handler or shell main

G_GLOBMAX EQU    150          ; size of GV
G_START  EQU    1            ; BCPL START functions
G_CLISTART EQU    133        ; shell startup

CodeHeader: DC.L    (CodeEnd-CodeHeader)/4

*        C Startup function, called for GlobVec=-1 or -3
*        see text below why this works
CStart:  sub.l    a0,a0        ; no startup message
        bsr.w    _main        ; need to GetMsg() in main
        rts

        CNOP      0,4

*        BCPL startup function, called for GlobVec=0 or -2
BCPLStart: movem.l a0-a6,-(a7) ; save for BCPL use
        lsl.l    #2,d1        ; get startup packet
        move.l   d1,a0        ; move to a0
        bsr.w    _main        ; get the ball rolling
        movem.l  (a7)+,a0-a6  ; restore everyone
        jmp      (a6)         ; BCPL-style return

BCPLTable: CNOP      0,4

        DC.L     0            ; End of global list
        DC.L     G_CLISTART,BCPLStart-CodeHeader ;for the shell
        DC.L     G_START,BCPLStart-CodeHeader
        DC.L     G_GLOBMAX    ; max global used (default)

CodeEnd:

```

Note that there are other differences for BCPL handlers the `main()` function of the handler needs to take care of. BCPL handlers do not receive their startup message in the process *MsgPort*, but rather receive it as first BCPL argument in register `d1`. It is here converted to a C-style pointer and provided as first argument to the main function, assuming the SAS/C registerized parameters ABI.

The `CStart` label is not called at all if the handler is mounted with `GLOBVEC=0` or `GLOBVEC=-2`, and thus would be, in this example, not required. It is included here to demonstrate another technique, namely *dual use* handlers that can be mounted both as C and as BCPL handlers.

The above startup code also allows `GLOBVEC=-1` in the mount list. In this case, the code *is* started from the first byte, which is, actually, the long-word offset to the BCPL initializer. In this particular case, it also assembles to a harmless `ORI` instruction, provided the offset to the end of the code is short enough, i.e. below 64K. It is therefore harmless. As the calling syntax is different, the main function is now called with a `NULL` argument, and then needs to wait for the startup package itself.

For the *Shell*, in particular, a second entry in the *Global Vector* shall be populated, namely the entry `G_CLISTART` at offset #133. It may point to the same entry code, more on this in section 13. As this entry is not used for handler startup, it does not hurt to include it in the BCPL initializer in either case, and thus the above code may be used as universal “BCPL kludge” for both the shell and legacy handlers that depend on BCPL startup.

## 10.5 Object File Format

Object files are intermediate output files of a compiler or assembler, generated from one translation unit, i.e. typically one source code file. Such files can still contain references to symbols that could not be resolved within the translation unit because the corresponding symbol is defined in another unit. The linker then combines multiple object codes, resolving all unreferenced symbol, and generates an executable binary file as output.

The overall structure of an object file is depicted in table 48:

**Table 48: Object File Format**

Size	Code	Syntax
?	HUNK_UNIT	Defines the start of a translation unit, see 10.5.1
	do {	Multiple segments follow
?	HUNK_NAME	Name of the hunk, defines hunks to merge, see 10.1.8
2	$m_t$	Read the memory type of the next hunk
30	$h_t$	Read the next hunk type
	if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_CODE}$ ) parse_CODE	Code and constant data, see 10.1.2
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_DATA}$ ) parse_DATA	Data, see 10.1.3
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_BSS}$ ) parse_BSS	Zero-initialized data, see 10.1.4
	else if ( $m_t != 0$ ) ERROR_BAD_HUNK	Upper bits shall be 0 for all other hunks
	else do {	Loop over auxiliary information
	if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_RELOC32}$ ) parse_RELOC32	32-bit relocation, see 10.1.5
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_RELOC32SHORT}$ ) parse_RELOC32SHORT	32-bit relocation, see 10.1.6
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_RELRELOC32}$ ) parse_RELRELOC32	32-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.1.7
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_RELOC16}$ ) parse_RELOC16	16-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.5.2
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_RELOC8}$ ) parse_RELOC8	8-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.5.2
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_DRELOC32}$ ) parse_RELOC32	32-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.4
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_DRELOC16}$ ) parse_RELOC16	16-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.5
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_DRELOC8}$ ) parse_RELOC8	8-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.6
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_EXT}$ ) parse_EXT	External symbol definition, see 10.5.7
	else if ( $h_t == \text{HUNK\_SYMBOL}$ ) parse_SYMBOL	Symbol definition, see 10.1.9

	else if ( $h_t$ == HUNK_DEBUG) parse_DEBUG	Debug information, see 10.1.10
	else if ( $h_t$ == HUNK_END) break	abort this segment
	else ERROR_INVALID_HUNK	an error
32	$h_t$	Read next hunk type
	} while(true)	Repeated until HUNK_END
	} while(!EOF)	Repeated with the next hunk until the file ends

Since there is no HUNK\_HEADER in object files, the memory attributes for the hunk are instead stored in the topmost two bits of the hunk type itself. Unlike in HUNK\_HEADER, there is no documented way how to indicate a memory type beyond MEMF\_CHIP and MEMF\_FAST. As the interpretation of object files is up to the linker, a suggested implementation strategy is to set the topmost two bits and store the memory type in the following long-word, similar to how HUNK\_HEADER expects it.

### 10.5.1 HUNK\_UNIT

This hunk identifies a translation unit and provides it a unique name. This hunk shall be the first hunk of an object file. A translation unit typically refers to one source code file that has been processed by the compiler or assembler. Typically, the name of the unit is ignored by linkers.

The structure of this hunk is as follows:

**Table 49: Hunk Unit Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_UNIT [0x3e7]	A hunk identifying a translation unit
32	1	Size of the name in long-words
32 × 1	$h_n$	Unit name

The size of the name is not given in characters, but in 32-bit units. The name is possibly zero-padded to the next 32-bit boundary to fill an integer number of long-words. If the name fills an entire number of long-words already, it is *not* zero-terminated.

Even though not enforced by the format, linkers can limit the size of the unit.

### 10.5.2 HUNK\_RELOC16

This hunk defines relocation information of one hunk into another hunk, and its format is identical to HUNK\_RELRELOC32, see section 10.1.7 and table 37.. Relocation offsets are therefore 32 bits long, though the elements to relocate at offset  $r_o$  within the segment are only 16 bits in size, and refer to PC-relative addressing modes, including PC-relative 16-bit wide branches.

**Table 50: Hunk Reloc16 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_RELOC16 [0x3ed]	16-bit PC-relative relocation information
	...	See table 37

This restricts possible displacements to 16 bits, and thus the segment containing the 16-bit value to be relocated and the segment the hunk is relative to shall be linked together to form a single segment in the final output. In the notation of section 37, the segments  $i$  and  $j$  shall thus be merged. To make this happen, their

names as provided by `HUNK_NAME` shall be identical; alternatively the linker shall be configured to the small data or small code model that forcefully merges hunks of the same type.

However, it may still happen that the joined segment generated by merging two or more segments together is too long to allow 16-bit displacements. In such a case, the relocation can obviously not be performed. Then linkers either abort with a failure, or generate an *automatic link vector*. The PC-relative branch or jump to an out-of-range target symbol is then replaced by the linker with a branch or jump to an intermediate “automatic” vector that performs a 32-bit absolute jump to the intended target.

While such *automatic link vectors* or short *ALVs* solve the problem of changing the program flow by 16-bit displacements over distances exceeding 16-bit, *ALVs* do not work correctly for data that is addressed by 16-bit PC relative modes. Instead of referencing the intended data, the executing code would then see the *ALV* as data.

Thus, authors of compilers or assemblers should disallow data references across translation unit boundaries with 16-bit PC-relative addressing modes as those can trigger linkers to incorrectly generate *ALVs*. Linkers should also generate a warning when creating *ALVs*.

### 10.5.3 HUNK\_RELOC8

This hunk defines relocation information of one hunk into another hunk, and its format is identical to `HUNK_RELRELOC32`, see section 10.1.7 and table 37.. Relocation offsets are therefore 32 bits long, though the elements to relocate at offset  $r_o$  within the current segment are only 8 bits in size, and thus refer to short branches.

The same restrictions as for `HUNK_RELOC16` applies, i.e. the hunk within which the relocation offset is to be adjusted and the target hunk shall be merged to a single hunk as the AmigaDOS loader cannot resolve 8-bit relocations. This can be either arranged by giving the two hunks the same name, or by configuring the linker to the small code or small data model, depending on the type of the hunk. This will instruct the linker to merge hunks of the same type.

**Table 51: Hunk Reloc8 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	<code>HUNK_RELOC8 [0x3ee]</code>	8-bit PC-relative relocation information
	<code>...</code>	See table 37

As for `HUNK_RELOC16`, the linker can generate *ALVs* in case the target offset is not reachable with an 8-bit offset. However, as the possible range for displacement is quite short, it is quite likely that the generated *ALV* itself is not reachable, and thus relocation during the linking phase is not possible at all. Thus, short branches between translation units should be avoided.

Otherwise, the same precautions as for `HUNK_RELOC16` should be taken, i.e. short displacements to data over translation unit boundaries should be avoided as proper linkage cannot be ensured.

### 10.5.4 HUNK\_DRELOC32

This hunk defines relocation of 32-bit data elements within a hunk that is addressed relative to a base register. The name of this hunk shall be `__MERGED`, indicating that the hunk contains data and zero-initialized elements in the *small data model*.

The format of this hunk is identical to `HUNK_RELOC32`, see section 10.1.5 and table 35, where each 32-bit wide relocation offset  $r_o$  points to a long-word within the preceding data or BSS hunk. The long-word at this offset is then adjusted by the position of the first byte of this hunk relative to the start of the target `__MERGED` hunk into which this hunk is merged; in some cases, linkers can include an additional adjustment, see the next paragraph for details.

**Table 52: Hunk DReloc32 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_DRELOC32 [0x3f7]	32-bit base-relative relocation information
	...	See table 35

The hunks named `__MERGED` are typically generated by compilers or assemblers when implementing the *small data model* within which all non-static objects are addressed relative to a base register. Typically, register `a4` is used for this purpose, and it is loaded by the compiler startup code to point either to the start of the `__MERGED` hunk, or 32K into the hunk such that both negative and positive offsets relative to `a4` can be used. In the latter case, linkers need to subtract an additional 32K displacement from the  $r_o$  offsets when performing relocation. The name *small data model* stems for the limitation to 64K of data as the 68000 uses only 16-bit for base-relative addressing.

### 10.5.5 HUNK\_DRELOC16

This hunk defines relocation of 16-bit data elements within a hunk that is addressed relative to a base register, i.e. `__MERGED` hunks in the *small data* memory model.

The format of this hunk is identical to `HUNK_RELOC32`, see section 10.1.5 and table 35, where each 32-bit wide relocation offset  $r_o$  points to an unsigned 16-bit word within the preceding data or BSS segment. The word at this offset is then adjusted by the position of the first byte of this hunk relative to the start of the `__MERGED` hunk into which this hunk is merged.

**Table 53: Hunk DReloc16 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_DRELOC16 [0x3f8]	16-bit base-relative relocation information
	...	See table 35

Similar to the comments made in section 10.5.4, this hunk is typically used to resolve symbols that are reached relative through a base register, e.g. `a4`. As base-relative addressing is restricted to 16-bit displacements for the 68000, linkers typically adjust the base register to point 32K into the `__MERGED` hunk if this hunk exceeds 32K in size. In such a case, they need to include an additional negative offset of -32K in  $r_o$  when performing relocation.

### 10.5.6 HUNK\_DRELOC8

This hunk defines relocation of 8-bit data elements within a hunk that is addressed relative to a base register, i.e. `__MERGED` hunks in the *small data* memory model.

The format of this hunk is identical to `HUNK_RELOC32`, see section 10.1.5 and table 35, where each 32-bit wide relocation offset  $r_o$  points to a byte within the preceding data or BSS hunk. The byte at this offset is then adjusted by the position of the first byte of this hunk relative to the start of the `__MERGED` hunk into which this hunk is merged.

**Table 54: Hunk DReloc8 Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_DRELOC8 [0x3f9]	8-bit base-relative relocation information
	...	See table 35

### 10.5.7 HUNK\_EXT

This hunk defines symbol names and corresponding symbol offsets or values within the currently loaded segment. It is quite similar to `HUNK_SYMBOL` except that it not only includes symbol definitions, but also symbol references. The linker uses this hunk to resolve symbols with external linkage.

The syntax of this hunk reads as follows:

**Table 55: Hunk EXT Syntax**

Size	Code	Syntax
	HUNK_EXT [0x3ef]	A hunk assigning symbols to positions within a segment
	do {	Repeat ...
8	$s_t$	Symbol type
24	$s_l$	Symbol length in long-words
	if ( $s_l == 0$ ) break	Terminate the hunk
$32 \times s_l$	$s_n$	Symbol name, potentially zero-padded
	if ( $s_t < 0x80$ ) {	Symbol definition?
32	$s_v$	Symbol value
	} else {	Symbol reference
	if ( $s_t == 0x82$    $s_t == 0x89$ )	A common block?
32	$s_c$	Size of the common block in bytes
	}	End of common block
32	$s_n$	Number of references of this symbol
	while ( $--s_n \geq 0$ ) {	Repeat over the references
32	$s_o[s_n]$	Offset into the hunk of the reference
	}	End of loop over symbols
	} while(true)	until zero-sized symbol

The length of the symbol name is encoded in long-words, not in characters. If it does not fill an integer number of long-words, it is zero-padded; the name is not zero-terminated if it does fill an integer number of long-words, though.

The symbol type  $s_t$  defines the nature of the symbol. The symbol types are defined in `dos/doshunks.h` and shared with the HUNK\_SYMBOL hunk, see section 10.1.9.

Entries of a symbol type with  $s_t < 0x80$  are symbol definitions, the symbol value is defined by  $s_v$ . See table 56 for possible types of symbol definitions.

The next table includes symbol types that identify symbol references, i.e. they are referenced within a segment of an object file, though not defined there. These types can clearly not be contained within an executable binary, but they may appear within an object file and are then resolved by corresponding symbol definitions from the above table by the linker:

**Table 56: Symbol types in HUNK\_EXT**

EXT_REF32	[0x81]	Reference to a 32-bit symbol that is resolved by a corresponding EXT_ABS to an absolute value or by a EXT_DEF definition to a relocation information to this or another segment.
EXT_COMMON	[0x82]	Reference to a 32-bit symbol that may be resolved by a EXT_ABS or EXT_DEF definition, but if no such definition is found, a BSS hunk of the maximal size of all references to the symbol is created by the linker. Thus, this type generates a zero-initialized object if no definition is found.
EXT_REF16	[0x83]	Reference to a 16-bit PC relative offset within the same segment.
EXT_REF8	[0x84]	Reference to a 8-bit PC relative offset within the same segment.
EXT_DREF32	[0x85]	32-bit reference relative to a base register (typically <code>a4</code> ), resolved by the linker through an entry in a HUNK_DRELOC32 hunk.



EXT_DREF16	[0x86]	16-bit reference relative to a base register, resolved by the linker through an entry in a HUNK_DRELOC16 hunk.
EXT_DREF8	[0x87]	8-bit reference relative to a base register, resolved by the linker through an entry in a HUNK_DRELOC8 hunk .
EXT_RELREF32	[0x88]	32-bit PC-relative reference for 32-bit address, this will be resolved by an EXT_DEF definition into an entry into a HUNK_RELRELOC32 hunk by the linker.
EXT_RELCOMMON	[0x89]	32-bit PC relative common reference for a 32-bit address. Similar to a EXT_COMMON definition, this will be resolved into an HUNK_RELRELOC32 entry where potentially space for the symbol will be allocated in a BSS segment if no corresponding definition is found.
EXT_ABSREF16	[0x8a]	16-bit absolute reference, resolved by the linker to a 16-bit value by an EXT_ABS definition.
EXT_ABSREF8	[0x8b]	8-bit absolute reference, resolved by the linker to an 8-bit value through an EXT_ABS definition.

For references,  $s_n$  identifies the number of times the symbol is referenced, while  $s_o$  defines the offsets into the current segment where the symbol is used and into which the symbol value will be resolved during linking. This value comes from an  $s_v$  entry in a HUNK\_EXT hunk from another translation unit.

Common symbols are symbols that are defined in multiple translation units. The size of the symbol required by the translation  $s_c$ . If no corresponding symbol definition is found, the linker then allocates space of a size that is determined by the maximum of all  $s_c$  values found for the same symbol in all translation units. The symbol will then be created within a BSS segment by the linker without an explicit symbol definition. This mechanism is mostly used by FORTRAN and is therefore rarely used. SAS/C can also be configured to emit common symbols as well.

## 10.6 Link Library File Format

Link Library files are collections of small compiled or assembled program sections that provide multiple commonly used symbols or functions. Unlike AmigaOs libraries, which are loaded dynamically at run time, link libraries resolve undefined symbols at link time; functions or symbols within them become a permanent part of the generated executable.

The *amiga.lib* is a typical example for a link library. It contains functions such as `CreateExtIO()`. While newer versions of the *exec.library* contains with `CreateIORequest()` a similar function, some manual work was required for creating an `IORequest` structure in *exec* versions prior v37. To ease development, it was made available in a (static) library whose functions are merged with the compiled code.

Link libraries come in two forms: Old-style non-indexed libraries, and indexed libraries that are faster to process. Old-style or non-indexed link libraries are simply a concatenation of object files in the form presented in section 10.5 and table 48. Then, of course, one translation unit as introduced by HUNK\_UNIT 10.5.1 is not necessarily terminated by an EOF as specified in table 48, but possibly by the subsequent program unit, starting with another HUNK\_UNIT.

Non-indexed link libraries do not require any tools beyond a compiler or assembler for building them. The AmigaDOS JOIN command is sufficient to build them. The drawback of such libraries is that they are slow to process as the linker needs to scan the entire library to find a specific symbol.

Indexed libraries are faster to parse as they contain a compressed index of all symbols defined in the library. It consists at its topmost level of two hunks: one containing the program units, and a symbol table with an index that are repeated until the end of the file.

The overall format of indexed libraries is depicted in table 57.

**Table 57: Indexed Library**

Size	Code	Syntax
	do {	Multiple repetitions of the following
?	HUNK_LIB [0x3fa]	Object code modules, see section 10.6.1
?	HUNK_INDEX [0x3fb]	Indices into HUNK_LIB, see section 10.6.2
	} while(!EOF)	Until the end of the file

### 10.6.1 HUNK\_LIB

The HUNK\_LIB hunk contains the actual payload in the form of multiple code, data or BSS hunks along with their relocation, symbol and debug information. It looks almost like the contents of a HUNK\_UNIT hunk, with a couple of changes noted below.

Table 58 depicts the syntax of this hunk.

**Table 58: Hunk LIB Format**

Size	Code	Syntax
?	HUNK_LIB [0x3fa]	Identifies the start of an indexed library
32	<i>l</i>	Length of this hunk in long-words not including the header and this length field
	do {	Multiple segments follow
2	<i>m<sub>t</sub></i>	Read the memory type of the next hunk
30	<i>h<sub>t</sub></i>	Read the next hunk type
	if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_CODE) parse_CODE	Code and constant data, see 10.1.2
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_DATA) parse_DATA	Data, see 10.1.3
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_BSS) parse_BSS	Zero-initialized data, see 10.1.4
	else if ( <i>m<sub>t</sub></i> != 0) ERROR_BAD_HUNK	Upper bits shall be 0 for all other hunks
	else do {	Loop over auxiliary information
	if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_RELOC32) parse_RELOC32	32-bit relocation, see 10.1.5
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_RELOC32SHORT) parse_RELOC32SHORT	32-bit relocation, see 10.1.6
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_RELRELOC32) parse_RELRELOC32	32-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.1.7
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_RELOC16) parse_RELOC16	16-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.5.2
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_RELOC8) parse_RELOC8	8-bit PC-relative relocation, see 10.5.2
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_DRELOC32) parse_RELOC32	32-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.4
	else if ( <i>h<sub>t</sub></i> == HUNK_DRELOC16) parse_RELOC16	16-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.5

	else if ( $h_t ==$ HUNK_DRELOC8) parse_RELOC8	8-bit base-relative relocation, see 10.5.6
	else if ( $h_t ==$ HUNK_EXT) parse_EXT	External symbol definition, see 10.5.7
	else if ( $h_t ==$ HUNK_SYMBOL) parse_SYMBOL	Symbol definition, see 10.1.9
	else if ( $h_t ==$ HUNK_DEBUG) parse_DEBUG	Debug information, see 10.1.10
	else if ( $h_t ==$ HUNK_END) break	abort this segment
	else ERROR_INVALID_HUNK	an error
32	$h_t$	Read next hunk type
	} while(true)	Repeated until HUNK_END
	} while(!EOF)	Repeated with the next hunk until the file ends

Additional restrictions arise for the HUNK\_EXT hunk; as symbol definitions are included in the HUNK\_INDEX hunk, they shall be removed from this hunk; the corresponding symbol types to be removed are listed in table 40. Unlike symbol definitions, symbol references as given by table 56 shall be retained as only the reference, but not the type of the reference is included in HUNK\_INDEX.

The translation unit name and the hunk names shall also be stripped, i.e. neither HUNK\_UNIT nor HUNK\_NAME shall be included in HUNK\_LIB. The corresponding names are also defined in HUNK\_INDEX by means of the string table included there.

Due to restrictions of HUNK\_INDEX, the size of a HUNK\_LIB shall not exceed  $2^{16}$  long-words and shall be split over multiple HUNK\_LIB, HUNK\_INDEX pairs otherwise.

## 10.6.2 HUNK\_INDEX

The HUNK\_INDEX hunk contains a string table and indices into the preceding HUNK\_LIB.

Table 59 depicts the syntax of this hunk.

**Table 59: Hunk Index Format**

Size	Code	Syntax
32	HUNK_INDEX [0x3fb]	Defines symbols and references into the library
32	$l$	Length of this hunk in long-words
16	$s_l$	Length of the string table in <b>bytes</b>
	do {	Repeat over the strings
?	$s_y[i]$	A NUL-terminated (C-style) string
	$s_l -= \text{strlen}(s_y[i]) + 1$	Remove from the length of the symbol table
	} while( $s_l > 0$ )	Repeat until all $s_l$ bytes are parsed
	do {	Loop over translation units
16	$u_o$	Byte offset of the unit name into the string table
16	$h_o$	Long-word offset of the first hunk of the unit within HUNK_LIB
16	$h_c$	Number of hunks within the unit
	for ( $j=0; j < h_c; j++$ ) {	Loop over all hunks

16	$h_n$	Byte offset of the hunk name into the string table
2	$m_t$	Memory type of the hunk
14	$h_t$	(Shortened) hunk type
16	$x_c$	Number of references in the hunk
	<code>for (k=0; k&lt;x<sub>c</sub>; k++) {</code>	Loop over references
16	$x_n$	Byte offset of the reference name into the string table
	<code>}</code>	
16	$d_c$	Number of definitions in the hunk
	<code>for (k=0; k&lt;d<sub>c</sub>; k++) {</code>	Loop over definitions
16	$d_n$	Byte offset of the defined name into the string table
16	$d_o$	Byte offset into the hunk or absolute value
8	$a_u$	Bits 23-16 of EXT_ABS definition
1	0	This bit shall be 0 to identify a definition
1	$a_s$	Sign bit and bits 30 to 24 of an EXT_ABS definition
6	$d_t$	Type of the definition from table 40
	<code>}</code>	
	<code>}</code>	
	<code>} while (!end)</code>	Repeated until the end of hunk is found

The initial part, the string table, contains all strings that can be used by the rest of the hunk. Strings within this table are indexed as byte offset from the start of the string, i.e. the first string has offset 0. To enable unnamed hunks, the first entry in a string table shall be the empty string, that is, an isolated 0-byte.

The rest of HUNK\_INDEX contains the offsets into the hunks along with symbols referenced and defined within them. The memory type of the hunk is again expressed in two bits. The current specification does not define the meaning of both bits set. The hunk type itself is abbreviated, i.e. only the lower 14 bits of the hunk type are stored.

The first part of the subsequent data defines references, that is, symbols that are used but not defined within the hunk. The  $x_n$  values define the names of these symbols as offsets from the start of the string table. These names correspond to symbol types defined in table 56. The precise reference type of the symbols is then found in an HUNK\_EXT hunk as part of the preceding HUNK\_LIB hunk.

Unlike symbol references, symbol definitions are stored directly in the HUNK\_INDEX hunk. While  $d_n$  identifies the name of the symbol as offset into the string table, the  $d_o$  value is either the offset of the defined symbol within the hunk, or the least significant 16 bits of an EXT\_ABS definition. As some absolute values can exceed 16 bits,  $a_o$  stores bits 23 to 16 of the symbol value, and bit  $a_s$  is copied into bits 31 to 24 of the symbol to enable negative values. The type of the symbol definition is  $d_t$ , which shall be a value from table 40.

As seen from this definition, symbols can only be defined within the first 64K of a hunk. This is typically not a problem as link libraries typically contain short service functions. For absolute values, larger values are required, e.g. for the base address of the custom chips, and thus split into  $a_s$ ,  $a_o$  and  $d_o$ .

---

## Chapter 11

# Handlers, Devices and File Systems

Handlers are AmigaDOS processes that provide all the services to implement many functions of the *dos.library*. Operations on files, such as opening files, reading data or seeking in files are implemented in the corresponding handler and not the *dos.library* itself. *File systems* are special handlers that organize data streams on volumes such as hard disks in files, and also provide locks to reserve access rights to files. Most file systems also support directories and thus a hierarchical organization of files.

Handlers are recognized by an entry in the *device list* whose `dol_Task` element provides a pointer to a message port through which the *dos.library* communicates with the handler, section 7 provides further details on this structure.

To ease communication, the `FileHandle` structure representing a file also includes with its `fh_Type` element a pointer to such a port that is typically a copy of `dol_Task` when a file is opened, see section 4.9.1 for this structure. It is created by the *dos.library* when opening files.

Similarly, the `fh_Type` element of the `FileLock` structure includes the port through which communication with the file system concerning the lock is routed. Unlike `FileHandles`, the `FileLock` structure is created by the *file system* itself which initializes its `fh_Type`. This is again in many cases identical to the `dol_Task` message port within the *device list*.

### 11.1 The DosPacket Structure

While it is in many cases more practical to interact with handlers through the functions of the *dos.library*, it is also possible to communicate with the handler directly through this port. This communication is based on *packets*, represented by a `DosPacket` structure documented in `dos/dosextens.h`:

```
struct DosPacket {
    struct Message *dp_Link;
    struct MsgPort *dp_Port;
    LONG dp_Type;
    LONG dp_Res1;
    LONG dp_Res2;
    LONG dp_Arg1;
    LONG dp_Arg2;
    LONG dp_Arg3;
    LONG dp_Arg4;
    LONG dp_Arg5;
    LONG dp_Arg6;
    LONG dp_Arg7;
```

---

```
};
```

*Packets* ride on top of *exec* messages, see `exec/ports.h`, but they do not extend the `Message` structure as it would be usually the case. Instead, `mn_Node.ln_Name` of the *exec* message is (mis-)used to point to the `DosPacket`. The reply port of the message in `mn_ReplyPort` is *not* used; instead, the message carrying the packet is send back to `dp_Port`.

Members of the `DosPacket` structure shall be initialized as follows:

`dp_Link` shall point to the message which is used for transmitting the `DosPacket`. The message node name in `mn_Node.ln_Name` shall be initialized to point to the `DosPacket` itself.

`dp_Port` shall point to the `MsgPort` structure to which the packet shall be send back after the handler has completed the requested activity. This is typically, but not necessary `pr_MsgPort` of the process sending the packet. See section 9 for the definition of the `Process` structure.

`dp_Type` identifies the action requested from the handler. It shall be filled by the process requesting an activity from a handler and is interpreted by the handler. Section 12 lists the currently documented packet types.

`dp_Res1` is the primary result code of the activity performed by the handler. For many, but not for all packet types, this is a boolean result code that is 0 for failure and non-zero for success. Many functions of the *dos.library* return `dp_Res1` as their return code.

`dp_Res2` is the secondary result code installed by the handler and is typically is 0 for success, or an error code on failure. Many functions of the *dos.library* install this error code into `IoErr()`. Section 9.2.9 lists the error codes defined by the *dos.library*.

`dp_Arg1` to `dp_Arg7` provide additional arguments to the handler. They shall be filled by the process submitting a packet to a handler. Most packet types do not require all 7 possible arguments; in such a case, only the necessary arguments may be initialized.

### 11.1.1 Send a Packet to a Handler and Wait for Reply

The `DoPkt()` function creates from its arguments a `DosPacket` structure along with an *exec* `Message` carrying it on the fly, transmits the packet to a target port and waits for the packet to return.

```
result1 = DoPkt(port, action, arg1, arg2, arg3, arg4, arg5)
D0          D1      D2      D3      D4      D5      D6      D7
```

```
LONG DoPkt(struct MsgPort *, LONG, LONG, LONG, LONG, LONG, LONG)
```

This function performs low-level packet IO to a target message port belonging to a handler. The `port` is the `MsgPort` of the handler to contact. Depending on the context, this port should be taken from various sources. If low-level file I/O is to be performed, the best source for the port is the `fh_Type` pointer in the `FileHandle` structure. If the communication is related to a *Lock*, the `fl_Task` member of the `FileLock` is the right source. For activities unrelated to locks or files, the `dol_Task` member of the *device list* is another source.

`action` identifies the activity to be performed by the handler or file system. Section 12 lists the packet types and how they relate to the functions of the *dos.library*.

`arg1` through `arg5` are arguments to the packet and filled into their `dp_Arg1` through `dp_Arg5` elements. If more arguments are required, the packet needs to be created and transmitted manually.

This function returns the primary result code of the handler from `dp_Res1` in `result1`, and `dp_Res2` in `IoErr()`.

If the caller is a process and the `pr_PktWait` pointer in the `Process` structure is set, `DoPkt()` calls through it to wait for the packet (or rather the message carrying it) to return, see section 9. Otherwise,

---

`DoPkt()` waits on `pr_MsgPort` with `WaitPort()` and removes the message through `GetMsg()`. If the caller is a task, the function even builds an `exec_MsgPort` on the fly and waits on this temporary port — thus unlike many other functions of the *dos.library*, this function is even callable from tasks.

If the return `MsgPort` contains a message different from the one carrying the issued packet, this function aborts with a deadend alert of type `AN_QPktFail`, defined in `exec/alerts.h`. Note that this is quite different from `exec`-style communications with `exec` devices through `DoIO()`; this function is able to extract the `send_IORquest` from the port without creating a conflict if another message is still pending in the port. This problem of packet communication manifests itself typically when attempting to perform I/O operations through the *dos.library* while the workbench startup message is still queued in the process message port.

Because packets typically require less than 5 arguments, additional prototypes are supplied that do not take all arguments. They all access the same entry within the *dos.library*, the only difference is that the function prototypes do not enforce initialization of the data registers carrying the unneeded arguments. These functions are named `DoPkt0()` to `DoPkt5()` and carry 2 to 7 arguments: The target `port`, the type of the packet `action` and 0 to 5 additional arguments which are filled into `dp_Arg1` upwards.

### 11.1.2 Send a Packet to a Handler Asynchronously

The `SendPkt()` function transmits a packet to a target message port of a handler without waiting for it to return. Instead, a reply port is provided to which the packet will be returned once the handler acted upon it.

```
SendPkt(packet, port, replyport)
D1      D2 D3
```

```
void SendPkt(struct DosPacket *, struct MsgPort *, struct MsgPort *)
```

This function transmits `packet` to the handler port, requesting to return it to `replyport`. The function returns immediately without waiting for the packet to return.

The `packet` shall be partially initialized; in particular, `dp_Link` shall point to an `exec Message` whose `mn_Node.ln_Name` field points back to `packet`. This function *does not* supply or initialize a suitable message, this is up to the caller.

`dp_Type` shall be filled with the type of the packet, i.e. an identifier specifying the type of activity requested from the handler, see section 12. Depending on this type, `dp_Arg1` through `dp_Arg7` shall be initialized with additional arguments.

`DosPackets` can be constructed in multiple ways; the `AllocDosObject()` function may be called to construct a `StandardPacket`. This is a structure that contains both the `Message` and the `DosPacket`. It is defined in `dos/dosextens.h`:

```
struct StandardPacket {
    struct Message  sp_Msg;
    struct DosPacket sp_Pkt;
};
```

`AllocDosObject()` ensures that the linkage between `Message` and `DosPacket` are properly initialized.

Another option is to use `AllocMem()` to allocate sufficient storage to hold a `StandardPacket` and initialize the structure appropriately:

```
struct StandardPacket *sp;

sp->sp_Msg.mn_Node.ln_Name = (UBYTE *) &(sp->sp_Pkt);
sp->sp_Pkt.dp_Link         = &(sp->sp_Msg);
```

---

### 11.1.3 Waiting for a Packet to Return

The `WaitPkt()` function waits on the message port of the calling process for a packet to return.

```
packet = WaitPkt()  
D0
```

```
struct DosPacket *WaitPkt(void);
```

This function performs all activities to receive a message returning from a handler; it is also implicitly called by `DoPkt()` after sending the messages to the handler.

If the `pr_PktWait` pointer in the `Process` structure is set, `WaitPkt()` calls through this function to wait for the arrival of a message. Otherwise, the `WaitPkt()` calls `WaitPort()` to wait for a arrival of a message on `pr_MsgPort` of the calling process, and then calls `GetMsg()` to remove it from the port. The function then returns `mn_Node.ln_Name` of the received message, i.e. the packet corresponding to the message.

This function does not test whether the received message does, actually, belong to a packet. The caller shall ensure that only Messages corresponding to `DosPackets` can arrive at the process message port.

### 11.1.4 Aborting a Packet

The purpose of the `AbortPkt()` funktion is to attempt to abort a packet already send to a handler. However, as of the current Os release, it does nothing and is not functional.

```
AbortPkt(port, pkt)  
D1      D2
```

```
void AbortPkt(struct MsgPort *, struct DosPacket *)
```

What this function should do is to scan `port`, presumably the `MsgPort` of the handler to which `pkt` was send, and dequeue it there if the handler is not yet working on it. Then, it would be placed back into the port of its initiator. However, as of V47, this function does nothing.

### 11.1.5 Reply a Packet to its Caller

The `ReplyPkt()` function returns a packet to its initiator, filling the primary and secondary result codes. This function is intended to be used by handlers.

```
ReplyPkt(packet, result1, result2)  
D1      D2      D3
```

```
void ReplyPkt(struct DosPacket *, LONG, LONG)
```

This function fills `dp_Res1` and `dp_Res2` of the packet with `result1` and `result2`, and sends the packet to `dp_Port`, the initiating port. Note that `mn_ReplyPort` of the message pointed to by `dp_Link` is ignored, i.e. packets do *not* follow the exec protocol for replying messages.

The `result1` argument is the primary result code and identical to the return code of many *dos.library* functions. `dp_Res2` is the secondary result code and typically accessible through `IoErr()` if the packet is replied to a *dos.library* function.



---

## 11.2 Implementing a Handler

A *handler* or a *file system* is an Amiga process that retrieves commands in the form of `DosPackets`. The main loop of a handler is conceptionally similar to a program implementing a graphical user interface, except that the latter retrieves messages via the *intuition* IDCMP system and works them off, whereas the handlers receive commands from the port in the `pr_MsgPort` of its process, or any other port they may provide to its clients.

### 11.2.1 Handler Startup

When a user of the *dos.library* attempts to access an absolute path, i.e. a path including a device name, the *dos.library* walks the *device list* (see section 7) to find the handler responsible for it by comparing the device name in the path with the `dol_Name` element of the *device list*. Once a suitable entry has been found, the *dos.library* checks whether a handler is already running by checking the `dol_Task` field of the `DosList`. If so, a packet corresponding to the called *dos.library* function is sent to the port pointed to by `dol_Task`. The relation between library functions and packet types is further explained in subsequent sections.

If `dol_Task` is `NULL`, the *dos.library* checks next whether `dol_SegList` is `ZERO`. If it is, the handler code is not yet present and will be loaded from the file name indicated in `dol_Handler` through `LoadSeg()`, and its return code is used to initialize `dol_SegList`. Once the handler is present, a new process is created from the segment, and a startup packet is delivered to `pr_MsgPort` of the created handler process. The *dos.library* will not continue processing the initiating call until the handler replies to this packet.

How the startup packet is delivered depends on the `dol_GlobVec` element of the *device list* entry, see Table 27. For C or assembler handlers with a `dol_GlobVec` value of `-1` or `-2`, the startup packet is delivered to the `pr_MsgPort` of the handler process. For all other values of `dol_GlobVec`, the startup packet becomes the first argument of the `START` entry at offset 4 of the global vector of the process.

If the “fake” BCPL startup code from section 10.4.3 is used, this packet is delivered in register `a0` of the main function. The following code demonstrates this:

```
LONG __asm __savesd main(register __a0 struct DosPacket *pkt)
{
    SysBase = *((struct ExecBase **) (4L));
    struct Process *proc = (struct Process *)FindTask(NULL);
    struct Message *msg;
    const UBYTE *path;
    ULONG startup;
    struct DosList *dlist;
    LONG error = 0;

    /* if NULL, this was a C startup, retrieve
    ** the packet manually
    */
    if (pkt == NULL) {
        /* Wait and retrieve the startup message
        */
        WaitPort(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        msg = GetMsg(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        pkt = (struct DosPacket *)msg->mn_Node.ln_Name;
    }

    path = (const UBYTE *)BADDR(pkt->dp_Arg1);
```

```

startup = pkt->dp_Arg2;
dlist   = (struct DosList *)BADDR(pkt->dp_Arg3);
... /* Handler initialization */

if (error) {
    ReplyPkt(pkt,DOSFALSE,error);
    ... /* shutdown, terminate */
    return;
} else {
    BOOL run = TRUE;
    ReplyPkt(pkt,DOSTRUE,0);
    /* main program loop */
    do {
        LONG res1 = DOSFALSE;
        LONG res2 = ERROR_ACTION_NOT_KNOWN;
        WaitPort(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        msg = GetMsg(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        pkt = (struct DosPacket *) (msg->mn_Node.ln_Name);
        switch(pkt->dp_Type) {
            case ACTION_....
                ....
        }
        ReplyPkt(pkt,res1,res2);
    } while(run);
}
}

```

The startup packet is populated as follows:

**Table 60: Handler Startup Packet**

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_STARTUP (0)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to BSTR of path
dp_Arg2	Copy of dol_Startup
dp_Arg3	BPTR to DosList
dp_Res1	DOSTRUE
dp_Res2	0

dp\_Type is set to ACTION\_STARTUP, which is defined to be 0. As the startup packet is always received first, there is no need to test for this particular type. However, as its type is identical to ACTION\_NIL, the startup packet may also be processed within the main handler loop.

dp\_Arg1 is set to a BPTR to a BSTR representing the path name under which the client of the *dos.library* attempted to access the handler. Note that this is not a NUL-terminated C string, but a BSTR whose first element is the size of the string.

This argument is for example taken from the first argument to `Open()`, just that it has been converted to a BSTR by the *dos.library*. For the Console-Handler for example, this is the window specification that instructs the handler on the position, size and title of the console.

dp\_Arg2 is a copy of the dol\_Startup element of the DosList structure, see section 7. It is used to configure the properties of the handler. The type that is placed here is depends on the mount list. While its use is handler, it is typically, but not necessarily, a BPTR to a FileSysStartupMsg structure. Other

---

possibilities for `dol_Startup` are a `BPTR` to a `BSTR` or an integer. What exactly the handler will receive depends on the `MountList` and is discussed in more detail in section 7.1.1 and section 7.1.2.

`dp_Arg3` is a *BPTR* to the `DosList` structure that triggered starting this handler.

Multiple strategies exist how handlers make use of this information. A *file system* process would typically handle multiple files at once through the same process. To ensure that the *dos.library* sends requests for the file system to the process just started, the *file system* shall place a pointer to the `MsgPort` incoming packets are supposed to be send to in `dol_Task` of the `DosList` structure received in `dp_Arg3`. This is typically, but not necessarily, the `pr_MsgPort` of the handler process.

Whenever a client program opens a file on this *file system* or attempts to lock an object, the handler process will be contacted by sending a packet to the port listed in `dol_Task`.

A *handler* such as the `CON` handler requires a separate process for each window it manages. In such a case, `dol_Task` remains `NULL`. Thus, handlers can decide whether they require a new process for each file opened from the handler.

While the *dos.library* will also send a packet to open the file for which the handler was launched, the path of this second packet or any subsequent packet to open a file on the same process is not relevant to the `Console-Handler` anymore as the window will be opened during startup, and not during opening a file. Even though the handler is started once for the initial open and does not fill in its port in `dol_Task`, multiple requests to open a file may arrive at the handler, e.g. when opening the “\*” file indicating the current console.

Once the *handler* or *file system* initiated itself from the startup packet, the packet shall be replied. If startup failed, the primary result code shall be `DOSFALSE` and the secondary result code shall be an error code suitable for reporting through `IoErr()`, see section 9.2.9 for a list of common error codes. Then, the handler shall release all resources acquired so far and terminate.

## 11.2.2 Handler Main Processing Loop

If startup succeeded, the primary result code for the packet shall be `DOSTRUE`, and the secondary result code shall be 0. Handler operations then proceed by waiting for incoming packets, and processing them one by another.

The *dos.library* keeps the *device list* locked while the handler is starting up. This means in particular that an attempt to gain access to the *device list* with `LockDosList()`, see section 7.3.1, can deadlock. Even if such a call is not made explicitly, *dos.library* functions can require implicitly such a lock, and thus attempting to access files or lock objects within handlers should be avoided, not only during startup.

If `dol_GlobVec` is `-2` or `-3`, the *dos.library* will only acquire a shared lock, and thus will allow the handler to retrieve a shared lock on the *device list* as well.

Once started up, handlers or file systems should wait for incoming packets. Depending on how a handler is contacted, the *dos.library* uses multiple sources to identify a suitable port:

If the handler is contacted through the special path “\*” or a path starting with “`CONSOLE:`”, the port in `pr_ConsoleTask` is used to send packets to.

If the handler is contacted through a path starting with “`PROGDIR:`” and the `pr_HomeDir` element of the calling process is non-`NULL`, the `fl_Task` element of the lock stored there is used to contact the handler.

If the handler is contacted through an absolute path, the *dos.library* scans the *device list* to locate a `DosList` structure whose `dol_Name` element matches the device name in the path. The `dol_Task` field, if non-`NULL`, is then used as destination of a packet. If it is `NULL`, a new process of the handler is created. From this follows that a handler or file system can customize the port through which it expects packets. File systems will typically place the `pr_MsgPort` of their process there.

---

If a handler is contacted through a relative path, and `pr_CurrentDir` of the calling process is non-ZERO, the `fl_Task` element of the current directory of the process attempting to resolve a path is used as target port. If `pr_CurrentDir` is ZERO, the `pr_FileSystemTask` is used as target port.

If the handler is contacted through a *File Handle*, for example to read or write bytes from a file, the `fh_Type` element of the handle is used as destination port. A file system may place a custom port in this element on opening files through `ACTION_FINDINPUT`, `ACTION_FINDOUTPUT` or `ACTION_FINDUPDATE` in the `fh_Type` element of the handle to receive all packets associated to this particular file on an alternative port. The *dos.library* places by default there the port it found through the path, see above.

If the handler is contacted through a lock, the `fl_Task` element of the `FileLock` structure is used to send out packets. A file system thus may customize a port through which all packets related to a particular lock are transmitted by placing this port in `fl_Task` when creating a lock.

The special path “NIL:” does not correspond to any handler but sets the `fh_Type` element to ZERO. Any attempt to write out data through such a handle ignores all bytes written, and any attempt to read bytes will return zero bytes. This is a special case in which the *dos.library* does not go through a handler at all.

The main loop of a handler then checks its own process port, or all ports it provided through the above mechanisms for incoming packets and tests their `dp_Type` field, identifying the requested action to be performed. Subsequent sections will provide information on all packets documented within AmigaDOS, though third-party handlers may implement additional packet types.

A handler or file system receiving a packet it does not implement shall set its `dp_Res2` element to `ERROR_ACTION_NOT_KNOWN`. `dp_Res1` shall be set for non-implemented packets according to the packet type as shown in the following table:

**Table 61: Primary Result Code for Unimplemented Packets**

dp_Type	dp_Res1
ACTION_READ	-1
ACTION_WRITE	-1
ACTION_SEEK	-1
ACTION_SET_FILE_SIZE	-1
ACTION_STACK	-1
ACTION_QUEUE	-1
ACTION_FORCE	-1
all others	0

This ensures that clients of the handler or file system will receive a result that is an indication of an error.

### 11.2.3 Handler Shutdown

A *handler* that does not initialize the `dol_Task` element of its `DosList` structure should keep a counter that is incremented for each object it creates, and decremented for each object deleted or disposed. For example, if the handler supports opening files, then the initialization of each file handle should increment the counter, and each file handle closed through `ACTION_END` should decrement the counter. Once the use counter reaches zero, the handler process should die by releasing all of its resources and falling off its main function. This ensures that the system is not congested by creating more and more processes of the same handler that, effectively, cannot be contacted anymore because its process part is not referenced in any object passed out of the *dos.library*.

A typical example of a handler is the Con-Handler of the system that opens its window from its startup message but any file opened to it will interact with the same window. The window will be closed when each of these files had been closed<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is a simplification, ignoring `AUTO` and `WAIT` parameters, see section 11.3 for details

---

*File systems* such as the FFS, however, typically do initialize `dol_Task` and thus can be reached even if all files, locks or notification requests on the volume they manage have been released. Thus, in addition to such resource tracking, file systems should check for incoming packets of the type `ACTION_DIE` and then attempt to shutdown, see section 12.9.5.

The `MsgPort` or ports of such a handler may still contain packets that have not yet been worked on after `ACTION_DIE` has been received. In order to avoid a deadlock, the packets pending in the input queue still need to be replied, for example using the default return codes from table 61.

Despite such precautions, `ACTION_DIE` cannot be implemented in a fully reliable way as the `MsgPort` of the file system could still be cached by some client programs even if no active locks or open file handles exist. Section 12.9.5 contains further details.

## 11.3 The CON-Handler

The CON-Handler implements the console of AmigaDOS. It not only serves the graphical console, but also the serial console. The AUX-Handler is only a minimal wrapper that locates the CON-Handler in the ROM and then initiates the CON-Handler with a suitable startup packet. Therefore, it serves the `CON:`, `RAW:` and `AUX:` device.

Quite similar to file systems, the CON-Handler does not implement all of its functionality itself. It rather depends on services of exec devices. For the graphical console, it creates an intuition window and initializes the `console.device` to run within. For the serial console, i.e. `AUX:`, it operates on top of the `serial.device`, but can be made to use any other interface device with proper mount parameters.

### 11.3.1 CON-Handler Path for Graphical Consoles

The path through which a stream to the CON-Handler is opened determines for the graphical console the size, position and features of the window the console appears within; for the serial console, it defines connection parameters such as the baud rate and the parity. The path for the graphical console accessed through `CON:`, and for `RAW:` likewise are as follows:

```
CON:<left>/<top>/<width>/<height>/<title>[/<options>]
```

The `<left>` parameter determines the left edge of the window within which the console shall appear; it is measured in pixels. If this parameter is not present or negative, intuition is instructed to pick a default. This is usually under the cursor position.

The `<top>` parameter is the top edge of the window, also measured in pixels. If this parameter is not present or negative, intuition is instructed to pick a default.

The `<width>` parameter is the width of the window, including all window decorations. If this is not present or negative, the handler instructs intuition to pick a default. This is typically the width of the screen. If no parameters are present at all, i.e. the path is just `CON:`, the width of the window is set to 640 pixels for legacy reasons.

The `<height>` parameter is the height of the window, including all window decorations. If this parameter is not present, the window height is set to 100 pixels for legacy reasons. If this parameter is negative, the window height will be the height of the screen.

The `<title>` parameter is the string that is put into the drag bar of the console window to create. To insert the forward slash (“/”) into the string, it is escaped with a backslash, i.e. “\” creates a single forwards slash that does not act as a path separator<sup>2</sup>, the backslash is escaped by itself, i.e. “\\” creates a single backslash in the title.

---

<sup>2</sup>Given the overall syntax of AmigaDOS, the asterisk `*` would have been a more logical choice.

---

All following path components configure options for the graphical terminal; multiple of these parameters may be combined, separated by a forwards slash (“/”) from each other:

`CLOSE` adds a close gadget to the window. Pressing on it creates an end-of-file indication on the next attempt to read data from the console, similar to the key combination Ctrl+\.

`NOCLOSE` is the negative form of the above option and removes a potentially added close gadget from the window.

`AUTO` delays opening the window to the point where an attempt is made to read data from the console or write data into the console. Up to that point the console remains closed. If neither read requests nor write requests are pending, the close gadget will also close the window without queuing an end-of-file; the window will pop-open again as soon as input or output requests appear. Unfortunately, an `ACTION_DISK_INFO` will lock the window open, see section 12.8.3 for alternatives to this packet or how to regain the `AUTO` feature.

`WAIT` delays closing the window after every file handle to the console has been closed. With this flag, the window stays open until the close gadget has been pressed, even if no client is connected to the terminal anymore to receive input or perform output.

`SMART` enforces smart refresh of the window. If this is enabled, more RAM is required, but it is not necessary to re-render the contents of the console window if it is made visible behind another window. In most cases, this makes little difference and only increases the RAM footprint.

`SIMPLE` enforces simple refresh of the window. If hidden window contents are made visible again they will be reprinted. This does usually not cost a lot of time, saves RAM and is also the default.

`INACTIVE` prevents that the window is receiving automatically the input focus when it is opened. The user has to click into it to type in the console.

`BACKDROP` instructs intuition to place the window behind all other windows on a screen. This works best in conjunction with `NOBORDER`, an empty window title, the `NOSIZE`, `NODRAG` and `NODEPTH` option and a console redirected to a public screen. If the window is made as large as the screen, the result will create a full-screen console.

`NOBORDER` removes the window decorations; if a title is present, the drag bar will still appear. Thus, this option is ideally combined with an empty title string.

`NOSIZE` removes the size gadget of the console on the top right edge of the window and thus creates a fixed-size window.

`NODRAG` removes the dragbar at the top of the window and makes the window non-movable. A potential application is to create a non-movable console as screen background.

`WINDOW` instructs the console to hijack an already open window and place the console within this window. This window will also be closed if the console closes. The address of the `Window` structure is provided in hexadecimal behind the parameter, optionally separated by spaces, e.g. `WINDOW 200AFC0`. An optional “0x” string may appear upfront the hexadecimal window address to indicate the base. This parameter replaces a legacy startup mechanism by which the console could also be placed into an already opened window.

`SCREEN` provides a name of a public screen on which the console shall appear instead of the workbench. The public screen name follows, optionally separated by spaces, e.g. `SCREEN myProgram.1`. If the screen name is `*`, then the frontmost public screen will be used as host for the console.

`ALT` provides alternative window dimensions and placement to which the window can be toggled by the top-left zoom gadget of the window. The alternative window placement provides left edge, top edge, width and height, similar to the main window placement, though numerical arguments are separated by comma (“,”) and not by the forwards slash. This alternate placement shall follow directly behind the `ALT` keyword, e.g. `ALT 0,0,320,200`.

`ICONIFY` equips the window with an iconification gadget. This requires the `ConCip` program running in order to have an icon available for the console. If the iconification gadget is pressed, this icon will appear on the workbench, and the window will disappear. The window will be forced open when a

---

incoming read or write request requires a window to read from or write data into. Similar to the `AUTO` option, windows will lose the ability to become iconified if a program requests the window pointer through `ACTION_DISK_INFO`, see again section 12.8.3 for details.

### 11.3.2 CON-Handler Path for Serial Consoles

If the console is a serial console, e.g. mounted as `AUX :` handler, another set of parameters becomes available that configures the serial connection; if the console is run on any other than the `serial.device` through mount parameters, this device shall support the `SDCMD_SETPARAMS` command through which these path parameters are installed.

`AUX:<baud>/<control>[/<options>]`

`baud` defines the baud rate of the serial console, e.g. 9600. If this parameter is not provided, it is taken from the `BAUD` mount option, and if that is not provided, the settings come from the serial preferences.

`control` defines the number of data bits, the parity and the number of stop bits, all concatenated into a string of 3 characters. The number of data bits is a digit between “1” and “8” and does not include the parity bit. The parity is either “N” for no parity, “E” for even and “O” for odd parity, or “M” for mark and “S” for space parity. The number of stop bits is either the digit “0”, “1” or “2”. A rather typical setting is 8N1, i.e. 8 data bits, no parity, one stop bit. This is also the configuration within which the performance of the `serial.device` is optimal. If this parameter is not present, it is taken (with identical encoding) from the `CONTROL` parameter of the mount list, and if it is not present there, from the serial preferences editor.

As for the graphical console, several optional parameters follow:

`RAW` forces the console into the (non-cooked) raw mode within which input characters are not echoed and no line buffering takes place. The same can be reached with the mount parameter `STARTUP=1`.

`UNIT` defines the unit of the device over which the connection shall be made if multiple units exist. The unit follows the keyword as decimal number, optionally separated by spaces, e.g. `UNIT 1`. The unit can also be configured through the mount list `UNIT` keyword.

`AUTO` indicates that the serial connection shall not be opened immediately, but only after the first attempt is made to write data through it or to read data from it. This works similar to the `AUTO` keyword for the graphical console.

`WAIT` indicates that the serial connection stays open even after every file handle to the console was closed. To shut down the serial connection, an ASCII FS character = Hex 0x1c shall be send by the user. This character is created on the Amiga keyboard with Ctrl+\. This also mirrors the `WAIT` keyword of the graphical console.

### 11.3.3 CON-Handler Line Buffer Modes

In addition to the window or serial parameters communicated to the path, the console is also configured through the `SetMode()` function, see section 4.10.3 and table 12. This mode sets the buffer mode of the console, regardless of the device the console runs on. In particular, `SetMode()` allows to convert a `CON :` window into a `RAW :` window, create an equivalent of a `RAW :` handler from an `AUX :` connection.

The buffer mode 0 corresponds to a regular `CON :` window and also to the `AUX :` console. In this so called *cooked mode*, the console echoes every keystroke on the window, and provides line editing functionalities such as cursor movements. Only when the user presses `RETURN`, an entire line of data enters the output buffer, and there becomes available for an `ACTION_READ`.

One particular difference between the V47 console and previous versions its predecessors is that the console no longer offers a history. Rather, the history functions have been moved to the Shell using the medium mode corresponding to buffer mode 2 described below.

In the cooked mode, and also in the medium mode, the CON-Handler interprets the following keystrokes:

**Table 62: Cooked Keyboard Sequences**

Keystroke	Function
Cursor left	Move left one character
Cursor right	Move right one character
Cursor up	Do nothing*
Cursor down	Do nothing*
Shift+cursor up	Do nothing*
Shift+cursor down	Do nothing*
Shift+cursor left	Move to the start of line
Shift+cursor right	Move to the end of line
Shift+cursor up	Move to the start of line*
Shift+cursor down	Erase line*
TAB	Inserts a TAB control code*
Shift+TAB	Do nothing*
Ctrl+a	Move to the start of line
Ctrl+b	Erase entire line
Ctrl+c	Sends signal 12
Ctrl+d	Sends signal 13
Ctrl+e	Sends signal 14
Ctrl+f	Sends signal 15
Ctrl+x	Erase entire line
Ctrl+k	Kill characters into yank buffer
Ctrl+q	Resume output
Ctrl+s	Suspend output
Ctrl+r	Do nothing*
Ctrl+u	Delete beginning of line
Ctrl+w	Delete word
Ctrl+y	Paste characters from yank buffer
Ctrl+z	Move to end of line
Ctrl+\	Signal an end-of-file
Backspace	Delete character upfront cursor
Del	Delete character under cursor
* Interpreted differently in medium mode, see table 63	

As seen in the table, some keystrokes operate differently in the medium mode; in that mode, they request a particular function from the shell by sending a “TAB Report” CSI sequence.

The “yank buffer” keeps characters that have been cut out with Ctrl+k. Its contents can be reinserted into the console with Ctrl+y. It operates independently of the clipboard and is local to each console window.

The buffer mode 1 corresponds to a RAW: window and is denoted the *raw mode*. In this mode, every keystroke becomes available to client programs as it enters the output buffer immediately. Cursor movements thus become available as CSI sequences. In this mode, the console does not echo user input. The CSI sequences are those defined by the `console.device`, resp. the current keymap of the device.

The buffer mode 2 is not available under a device name, even though one could in principle create a suitable mount list for it. The mode is reserved for the shell and forwards TAB-Expansion and history functions to the shell. While the console again provides line editing features and echoes most keys on the screen, some keyboard sequences create immediate output through a “TAB Report” CSI sequence that enters the output buffer immediately. These sequences are interpreted by the Shell and trigger there corresponding functions, such as expanding a pattern or working through the command history. A TAB Report sequence looks as follows:



---

CSI <m>;<s>;<c>U <line>

Here CSI is the ANSI “control sequence introducer”, which has the byte value 0x9b. The <m> value is a decimal number that identifies the keystroke and also the function the Shell is requested to perform. Such functions browse in the history or expand a file name pattern. The Shell re-inserts the result of such a function back into the console with an ACTION\_FORCE packet, see section 12.8.7.

The parameters <s> and <c> provide the length of the current line input buffer of the console the user is editing, and the (1-based, i.e. cursor at the left edge corresponds to <c> = 1) cursor position within this buffer.

The U is a literal character and identifies this sequence as TAB-Report. <line> is a copy of the current line that is edited by the user. For many sequences, this input is used as a template the shell to perform the requested action, e.g. for a TAB-expansion, it provides the entire input, though the command line argument within which the cursor is positioned is used to generate a wildcard the Shell uses to find possible candidates for its expansion.

The keystrokes that trigger such TAB Report sequences, along with their purpose, are as follows:

**Table 63: Medium Mode CSI Sequences**

Keystroke	Sequence
Cursor up	<U>=2, move upwards in the history
Cursor down	<U>=3, move downwards in the history
Shift+cursor up	<U>=4, search history upwards
Shift+cursor down	<U>=5, search history downwards
Ctrl+r	<U>=6 ,search history upwards, partial pattern
Ctrl+b	<U>=10,rewind history
TAB	<U>=12,iterate forwards through expansion
Shift+TAB	<U>=13,iterate backwards through expansion

The only difference between the cases <U>=6 and <U>=4 is that the former only uses the line input buffer up to the cursor position as search pattern and ignores everything past it.

### 11.3.4 CON-Handler Startup Parameters

In addition to the window or serial parameters communicated to the path, the console is also configured through the handler startup mechanism. It provides defaults for the serial console, but also defines the line buffer mode of the console described in the previous section.

The mount parameters for CON: and RAW: are hard-coded into the Kickstart ROM, though the mountlist for AUX: is available in the DEVS:DosDrivers directory and can be altered there; however, users can create custom mount lists for additional devices with custom mount parameters.

The handler startup mechanism is described in section 11.2.1, and in particular, dp\_Arg2 of the startup packet is a copy of the dol\_Startup entry of the DosList created from the mount list; details on this mechanism are described in section 7.1.2.

The following table specifies the values of dol\_Startup the CON-Handler recognizes:

**Table 64: CON-Handler Startup Code**

dol_Startup	Description
< 0	RAW: raw mode, within a window pointed to by dp_Arg1
0	CON: cooked mode, create a new window
1	RAW: raw mode, create a new window
2	CON: medium mode, create a new window
3	RAW: reserved for future extensions
BPTR with bit 30 cleared	raw mode open on a device specified by a FileSysStartupMsg
BPTR with bit 30 set	cooked mode open on a device specified by a FileSysStartupMsg

The values 0 to 3 configure the line buffer mode and are correspond to the buffer mode selected through `SetMode()`. The buffer mode 3 is currently not used and reserved for future extensions.

The case of a negative `dol_Startup` value is a legacy startup mechanism of the console. In this configuration, `dp_Arg1` of the startup packet (see section 11.2.1) is not a BPTR to a path as usual, but instead a pointer (not a BPTR) to an intuition `Window` structure; the CON-Handler then creates a graphical console within this window. It is quite hard to make practical use of this startup mechanism and thus it is discouraged, but [10] provides example code how to trigger it. A better mechanism to redirect a console to a particular window is the `WINDOW` argument of the command path which is described in section 11.3.1.

In all other cases, `dol_Startup` is a BPTR to a `FileSysStartupMsg` described in more detail in section 7.1.2. The `fssm_Device` and `fssm_Unit` elements of this structure provide a device and unit the console shall run on. The `AUX:` handler uses this mechanism to create a `FileSysStartupMsg` to the CON-Handler which points to the `serial.device` unit 0, but also accepts custom mount parameters to mount it on other devices through the `EHandler` mount parameter. The `Device` parameter of the mount list is then extracted, and forwarded to the CON-Handler through a startup packet. Thus, a console can be generated on either type of device provided it supports `CMD_WRITE` to write data out and `CMD_READ` to receive keystrokes.

As BPTRs are upshifted by two bits to gain a regular pointer, the otherwise unused bit 30 of the BPTR is used for mode selection. If this bit is 1, the console will be a cooked console with line buffer, and if this bit is 0, the console is raw.

To make the `Mount` command create a `DosList` corresponding to the latter case, the CON-Handler needs to be mounted as `EHANDLER`. The following is an example mountlist providing a serial console on a custom serial hardware:

```
EHandler = CON-Handler
Device   = uart.device
Unit     = 0
Baud     = 9600
Control  = "8N1"
```

The very same mountlist can be used with the `AUX-Handler`; if it is mounted as an extended handler, it will just take its mount parameters and forwards them to the CON-Handler. If mounted with the (regular) `HANDLER` keyword in the mountlist, it will create a `FileSysStartupMsg` corresponding to the `serial.device` and provide this to the CON-Handler. The `AUX-Handler` is therefore rather minimal.

## 11.4 The Port-Handler

The Port-Handler is responsible for the `PAR:`, `SER:` and `PRT:` devices and thus represents the Amiga hardware interfaces as AmigaDOS devices. Clearly, `PAR:` interfaces to the `parallel.device`, `PRT:` to the `printer.device` and `SER:` to the `serial.device`. The difference between `SER:` and `AUX:` is that the former processes raw streams of bytes transmitted over a serial connection, whereas `AUX:` provides line buffering and line editing capabilities and thus implements a console.

---

### 11.4.1 Port-Handler Path

Access to the Port-Handler is configurable through the path following the device name. The path looks as follows:

`SER: [<options>]`

The following keywords in `options` exist, where options are separated by a forwards slash ("/") from each other.

`BAUD` sets the baud rate, which is only relevant for serial connections. It specifies the number of bits per second transmitted over a serial connection. If this parameter is not present, the default from the serial preferences is used. Optionally, this parameter may be introduced with the keyword `BAUD` which shall be separated from the decimal baud rate by spaces or an equals sign, e.g. `BAUD 9600`. Clearly, this parameter is only used by `SER:`.

`control` specifies additional parameters of the serial connection such as number of data bits, parity and number of stop bits, represented as 3 letter string. The string follows the same convention used for the `AUX:` terminal. The first digit is between "1" and "8", specifying the data bits, the second letter the parity, which is either N, E, O, M or S, indicating no parity, even or odd parity, or mark or space parity. The last digit is the number of stop bits and is a digit between "0" and "2".

A typical control string is `8N1` indicating 8 data bits, no parity and 1 stop bit, corresponding to the fastest possible console. Optionally, this parameter may be introduced with the keyword `CONTROL` which shall be separated from the control string by spaces or an equals-sign, e.g. `CONTROL 8N1`.

If this parameter is not present, the default from the serial preferences is used. Obviously, this parameter is only used by `SER:` and ignored otherwise.

`TRANSPARENT` is a boolean switch that, if present, indicates that CSI sequences written over this device shall not be translated to the configured printer, but shall rather be send directly to the printer. By default, the `PRT:` device uses the AmigaDOS defined CSI sequences that are device independent. This option is only used by the `PRT:` device and ignored otherwise.

`RAW` is a boolean switch that, if present, disables translation of the AmigaDOS newline-character `0x0a` to `0x0a 0x0c` pairs, i.e. a line feed followed by carriage return. This switch only applies to the `PRT:` device and is not used otherwise.

`UNIT` takes a numeric argument and provides the device unit that will be opened. This makes most sense if the Port-Handler is not mounted on the standard exec devices, but a custom device is provided through the `DEVICE` keyword of a custom mountlist. The unit number is represented as decimal number separated from the keyword by spaces or an equals-sign, e.g. `UNIT 1`. This option is operational regardless of the underlying device.

`NOWAIT` is boolean switch that, if present, avoids blocking when reading from a serial connection. If no data is available at the serial port, a connection configured with `NOWAIT` will report an end-of-file condition. Otherwise, such a stream would block until data is available. This option is only supported for serial connections.

Another possibility to implement non-blocking reading from the serial port is to use `WaitForChar()` which is also supported by the Port-Handler. It blocks until either the specified timeout is reached, or input data is available on the port.

### 11.4.2 Port-Handler Startup

The Port-Handler is also configurable through a mountlist, though mount parameters for `PAR:`, `SER:` and `PRT:` are hard-coded within the Kickstart ROM. However, users may create custom mountlists and mount the handler under a custom name.

As for all handlers, it is customized through `dol_Startup`, transmitted in `dp_Arg2` in the handler startup packet. The following values are recognized:

**Table 65: Port Handler Startup Code**

dol_Startup	Description
0	SER: serial output through the serial.device
1	PAR: parallel output through the parallel.device
2	PRT: printer output through the printer.device
BPTR	serial output with parameters from the FileSysStartupMsg

The values 0 to 2 represent the standard handlers SER:, PAR: and PRT: mounted by the kickstart. They can be recreated by a STARTUP=<n> entry in a mountlist. For these options, the standard Amiga device names for the serial, parallel and printer interface is used.

The last option allows to customize the target exec device to run on. In this case, dol\_Startup is a BPTR to a FileSysStartupMsg described in section 7.1.2. To make the Mount command create a suitable DosList entry, EHANDLER keyword is used, and a DEVICE and UNIT option can be provided. If the mountlist includes in addition a BAUD value, that is used as default value for the baud rate, which can be overridden by the Port-Handler path described in the previous section. The CONTROL parameter in the mountlist, if present, also control sthe serial settings. An example mountlist would look as follows:

```
EHandler = Port-Handler
Device   = duart.device
Unit     = 1
Baud     = 19200
Control  = "8N1"
```

## 11.5 The Queue-Handler

The Queue-Handler provides inter-process communication on the basis of AmigaDOS file handles. It is used by the Shell to implement pipes; they collect the output of one command and provide it as input to another, without requiring to store the entire output. The reading end of a pipe blocks as long as no data becomes available at the writing end, and the writing end blocks if the reading end is not able to consume data fast enough. If the reading end closes the pipe, the Queue-Handler attempts to abort the writing end.

Even though the Queue-Handler is disk-based, it is already mounted by the Kickstart-ROM as PIPE:, though additional instances under other device names can be mounted through the user.

### 11.5.1 Queue-Handler Path

Pipes are created and identified by a unique name; reading and writing ends of the same name are connected together. The name itself does not matter as long as it uniquely identifies the pipe; the Shell constructs a pipe name from the process indicator and a second unique number that is incremented for each pipe used. The packet ACTION\_FINDINPUT opens the reading end, and ACTION\_FINDOUTPUT the writing end. The third open mode, ACTION\_FINDUPDATE is not supported.

The empty name establishes a special case. It identifies a pipe that is already open as standard input or standard output of a process. In case a pipe is openend without a name, the Queue-Handler checks whether the standard input or standard output of the client process is already open to a pipe, and if so, this end is reused. This allows constructions such as

```
list | type PIPE: hex
```

where the reading end of the pipe is explicitly addressed by an empty pipe name as it is already established by the Shell as standard input of the type command. It is necessary here because the command line syntax of type does not include provisions to read from its input stream.

The pipe path may follow by options configuring the pipe, thus the complete path specification is as follows:

---

`PIPE:name[/quantumsize[/buffercount]]`

The `quantumsize` is the size of a block the Queue-Handler uses to buffer intermediate data. Written data is queued up until a buffer is full or the writing end is closed, and the full block is then made available to the reading end. This minimizes the communication overhead as the reading process does not need to wake up for every single byte. The default quantum size is 1024 bytes.

The `buffercount` configures the number of buffers the Queue-Handler makes available to the writing end. If all buffers are full without being retrieved by the reading end, the writing end blocks. This avoids that a fast writing process floods the memory of the system. The special value of 0 indicates that system memory may be filled up to a safety margin of 64K. The default buffer count is 8, i.e. at most 8K of data can be waiting in a pipe.

### 11.5.2 Queue-Handler Startup

The Queue-Handler can also be configured through its startup packet. For this, `dol_Startup` in its `DosList` entry shall be a BPTR to a `FileSysStartupMsg` as specified in section 7.1.2. The device and unit found there are irrelevant, though the environment vector in `fssm_Environ` discussed in section 7.1.3 contains some relevant entries.

`de_SizeBlock` set the size of the Quantum, and thus corresponds to the default of the first optional argument in the path.

`de_NumBuffers` sets the number of such buffers for each pipe and corresponds to the default of the second optional argument of the path.

The Kickstart ROM does not provide a startup value and thus mounts the Queue handler with its defaults parameters. However, within a custom mountlist, they can be provided as follows:

```
EHandler      = Queue-Handler
BlockSize     = 1024
Buffers       = 8
```

The `BlockSize` keyword sets the quantum size, and the `Buffers` keyword the number of quantum buffers.

## 11.6 The RAM-Handler

The RAM-Handler is a ROM-based file system that places its data in available RAM of the system. It implements almost all of the file system packets listed in sections 12.1 and following, with the exception of record locking. The RAM-Handler provides one extended feature, namely external links, also explained in section 6.4. Such a link points to a target outside of the RAM disk; while such objects are initially empty, their contents will be made accessible by copying the objects within the link target to the RAM disk.

This feature is used within AmigaDOS to realize the `ENV:` assign which contains the system preferences. This allows to save RAM by only keeping those files in RAM: that are actually accessed.

The RAM handler does not interpret any arguments in its startup packet and cannot be configured through it.

## 11.7 The Fast File System

The Fast File System (FFS) is the standard Amiga file system and as such included in the ROM. However, the bootstrap code of Amiga hostadapters are typically able to load an updated version of this (and other) file

---

systems from the *rigid disk block* of the boot disk and make it available to the system. The *System-Startup* module will make such updated version then also available for all other devices.

The same code serves multiple flavours of the file system that differ in the structure and organization of on disk. Table 28 in section 7.1.3 provides an overview on the available flavours.

As standard file system, the FFS supports all file-system relevant packets listed from section 12.1 onwards with the exclusion of packets specific to interactive handlers listed in section 12.8, and the `ACTION_SET_OWNER` packet which remains exclusive to multi-user network file systems. The FFS does support record locking, soft- and hard links and notification requests. External links remain currently exclusive to the RAM-Handler and are neither supported. Latest versions of the FFS can also be shut down by `ACTION_DIE`.

### 11.7.1 Configuring the FFS

The FFS is configured through multiple sources. First of all, the `DosList`, the `FileSysStartupMsg` pointed to by this structure, and the environment vector in the latter. Section 7.1 provides a list of the configurable options and the corresponding entries in the mountlist.

In some situations, however, the FFS will override the parameters found in the above sources, and therefore parameters from the mountlist. In case the device name is either “`trackdisk.device`” or “`carddisk.device`”, the FFS will instead request the disk geometry from the underlying exec device by a `TD_GETGEOMETRY` when validating an available medium. The same logic can also be enabled for all other devices by the mountlist parameter `SUPERFLOPPY`, which corresponds to the `ENVF_SUPERFLOPPY` flag in the `de_Interleave` element of the environment vector. This flag, along with the environment vector is defined in the file `dos/filehandler.h` and also introduced in section 7.1.3.

Upon detecting device parameters, data from the device provided `DriveGeometry` structure documented in `devices/trackdisk.h` are copied into the environment vector of the file system. The following algorithm is used to adjust the data in the environment vector:

```
void AdjustEnv(struct DosEnvec *env,
               const struct DriveGeometry *dg) {
    env->de_SizeBlock      = dg->SectorSize >> 2;
    env->de_HighCyl        = dg->dg_Cylinders - 1;
    env->de_Surfaces       = dg->dg_Heads;
    env->de_BlocksPerTrack = dg->dg_TrackSectors;
}
```

All other entries of the environment vector remain untouched. The right-shift for the sector size is necessary because the environment vector measures it in long-words rather than bytes as provided by the drive geometry, and `dg_Cylinders` is a count, whereas `de_HighCyl` is an inclusive upper bound. In particular, `dg_BufMemType` is not copied over, and therefore `de_BufMemType` shall be setup though the mountlist or the rigid disk block. Ideally, of course, any memory type should be supported and this workaround should not be necessary.

The number of blocks kept in the file system cache is read from `de_NumBuffers` in the environment vector, but `ACTION_MORE_CACHE` can be used to adjust this parameter anytime.

### 11.7.2 The Boot Block

The FFS flavour is initially read from `de_DosType` element of the environment vector, see section 7.1.3. However, the initial choice is overridden either by formatting (initializing) a volume, or during the (quick) validation that is triggered if a volume becomes available to the FFS.

During formatting, the flavour is taken from `dp_Arg2` of the `ACTION_FORMAT` packet. If `dp_Arg2` is none of known FFS flavours from table 28, the currently active flavour remains in force and is used to

initialize the disk structure. If the FFS did not adjust its flavour from accessing a previous volume, this remains the value from `de_DosType`.

During disk insertion, or if a volume becomes accessible to the FFS by other means such as mounting it or uninhibiting a volume through `ACTION_INHIBIT`, the FFS reads the flavour from the first long-word of the *boot block*, even if this block is placed on a hard-disk and not actually used for booting. It is found at sector

$$\text{BootBlock} = \text{de\_LowCyl} \times \text{de\_Surfaces} \times \text{de\_BlocksPerTrack}$$

of the device. Note that this is not necessarily the sector 0 if the volume is a partition of a hard-disk. The remaining data of the boot block is not used by the FFS but, at least for floppy disks, for bootblock booting which is described in more detail in [8].

### 11.7.3 Disk Keys and Sectors

Except for the boot block, the FFS does not address sectors through their physical sector number, but due to their *key*, which addresses data on disk relative to the start of the partition in blocks, and not sectors. The relation between the physical sector  $S$  and the key  $K$  is given by the following equation:

$$S = \text{de\_LowCyl} \times \text{de\_Surfaces} \times \text{de\_BlocksPerTrack} + K \times \text{de\_SectorPerBlock}$$

In particular, the boot block has therefore the key 0. The sector number is used directly for the “direct SCSI” transfer which is enabled by the `ENVF_SCSIDIRECT` flag in the `de_Interleave` element of the environment vector.

For the default trackdisk-like transfer, exec device drivers expect a byte offset instead of a sector, which is computed by multiplying  $S$  by `de_SizeBlock` × 4. The additional factor of 4 is because `de_SizeBlock` is in units of long-words and not a byte count.

Even though `de_SizeBlock` and `de_SectorPerBlock` could be any number, the FFS, and likely many other file systems, only accept powers of two here. Thus, any multiplication or division by these numbers are easily implementable as shifts.

### 11.7.4 The Root Block

The Root Block represents the root directory of a volume and contains the creation date and the volume name. It is placed in the middle of the volume at key

$$\left\lfloor \frac{\text{de\_Reserved} + \left\lfloor \frac{(\text{de\_HighCyl} - \text{de\_LowCyl} + 1) \times \text{de\_Surfaces} \times \text{de\_BlocksPerTrack}}{\text{de\_SectorPerBlock}} \right\rfloor - 1}{2} \right\rfloor$$

Note that the element name `de_BlocksPerTrack` is actually misleading as this the size of a track in (physical) sectors and not in (logical) blocks or keys. The division by `de_SectorPerBlock` computes from the sector index a key. The brackets  $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$  indicate rounding down to the next integer.

The structure of the root block is as follows:

**Table 66: FFS Root Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	0	header key, always 0 in root
2	0	highest sequence number, always 0 in root
3	HTSize	entries in the hash table = Block size - 56

4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Hash	hash chains for objects in the root
L-50	BMFlag	-1 if Bitmap is valid
L-49	BMKeys	keys of the bitmap
L-24	BMExt	key of the bitmap extension block
L-23	Days	timestamp of last directory change
L-22	Mins	
L-21	Ticks	
L-20	Name	volume name as BSTR
L-12	0	reserved for future use
L-11	0	reserved for future use
L-10	Days	timestamp of last volume change
L-9	Mins	
L-8	Ticks	
L-7	Days	volume creation time
L-6	Mins	
L-5	Ticks	
L-4	0	reserved for future use
L-3	0	reserved for future use
L-2	DCache	key of directory cache block if used
L-1	SecType	shall be 1, this is the BPCL constant ST.ROOT

Each entry in the above table is 4 bytes, i.e. one long-word large. As the FFS supports multiple block sizes, some elements of this structure are placed relative to the end of the block. Such element are indicated in the above table as  $L - x$  where  $L$  is the block size in long works, i.e.

$$L = \text{de\_SizeBlock} \times \text{de\_SectorPerBlock}$$

Dashed table boundaries indicate that the corresponding element extends over multiple long-words. In particular, the list of hash-keys is a variably sized number of long-words large, it always extends over  $L - 56$  longs.

The block type is indicated by `Type` and `SecType`. For the root block, these elements shall be 2 and 1, respectively.

`HTSize` is the number of hash keys stored in the root block. The FFS stores in the root block  $L - 56$  hash keys, from offset 6 to  $L - 51$ .

`Chksum` is a checksum over the block. Its value is chosen such that the long-word sum over all long-words, including the checksum, is zero.

`Hash` stores the hash-chain of all objects in the root directory. The FFS computes for each file system object a *hash key* that is derived from its name. As multiple objects can have the same hash and thus hash conflicts may arise, all objects of the same hash are kept in a singly linked list. The head of each list is kept in the `Hash` array.

How the FFS computes the hash key from the name depends on the FFS flavour. The following algorithm computes the hash key from the object name, represented as a BSTR, i.e. the first character is the length of the string:



```

ULONG ComputeHash(UBYTE *name)
{
    ULONG size = *name++; /* String size, this is a BSTR */
    ULONG hash = size;    /* Initial hash is string length */

    while(size) {
        ULONG c = *name++;
        /* Is this an international flavour? */
        if (isInternational) {
            if (c != 0xf7 && ((c >= 0xe0 && c <= 0xfe) ||
                               (c >= 0x61 && c <= 0x7a))) {
                c -= 0x20; /* make upper case */
            }
        } else if (c >= 0x61 && c <= 0x7a) {
            c -= 0x20; /* make upper case */
        }
        hash = (hash * 13 + c) & 0x7ff;
    }
    return hash % HTSize;
}

```

In the above, `HTSize` is the value of the element of the same name in the disk root block. As seen from the code, the non-international versions of the FFS only convert the ASCII characters between 'a' and 'z' to upper case, whereas the international version performs this conversion also for all characters in the latin-1 character set. The FFS *does not* use the *utility.library* for the upper-case conversion and thus hashing does not depend on the selected locale. However, it depends on the latin-1 encoding and will not map characters correctly for many other encodings. Latin-15 only replaces the international currency symbol with the Euro-sign which is outside the range of characters that are converted to upper case. It therefore also works correctly for this encoding.

`BMFlag` is `DOSTRUE` in case the bitmap is valid. If the quick validation on disk insertion finds that this element is 0, then the disk status is set to non-validated and the bitmap is recomputed through a complete disk scan. The bitmap keeps information on which blocks of the volume are allocated and which are free.

`BMKeys` is an array containing the keys of the bitmap blocks. How many bitmap blocks are required to represent the bitmap depends on the size of the volume and the size of a bitmap block. Unused keys remain 0.

`BMExt` is the key of a bitmap extension block if the above bitmap array is not sufficient to represent all blocks of the volume.

The elements at offsets  $L - 23$  to  $L - 21$  form a `DateStamp` structure as specified in section 3. The date and time there indicate the last change within the root directory.

`Name` is the volume name, encoded as BSTR; the first character is therefore the size of the name. This element is 8 long-words large and thus limits the volume name to 30 characters (one extra character is reserved, even though there would be sufficient space for 31 characters).

The elements at offsets  $L - 10$  to  $L - 8$  form a `DateStamp` structure that is updated on every change of the volume.

The elements at offsets  $L - 7$  to  $L - 5$  are also a `DateStamp` structure that represent the time and date at which the volume was initialized. The packet `ACTION_SERIALIZE_DISK` updates this date, too, but it remains otherwise unchanged.

`DCache` is the key of the directory cache list of blocks. It is only used for the flavours of the FFS that utilize such a cache.

Unlike user directories, the root block lacks a list of hard-links that points to it. This has the consequence that the FFS does not allow to create hard-links to the root directory of a volume.

### 11.7.5 The User Directory Block

The user header block represents a sub-directory of the volume root, or another user directory. It is enqueued in one of the hash-chains of the root block or its parent user directory block. This block exists in multiple variants, depending on the flavour of the FFS. Table 68 applies to all FFS variants except the long-file variants DOS\06 and DOS\07.

**Table 67: FFS User Header Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	0	reserved for future use
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Hash	hash chains for objects in the directory
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID
L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	0	reserved for future use
L-46	Comment	directory comment as BSTR
L-26	0	reserved for future use
L-23	Days	timestamp of last directory change
L-22	Mins	
L-21	Ticks	
L-20	Name	directory name as BSTR
L-12	NameX1	name extension for DOS\08
L-11	0	reserved for future use
L-10	BckLink	key of first hard-link to this object
L-9	NameX2	name extension for DOS\08
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	DCache	key of directory cache block if used
L-1	SecType	shall be 2, setthis is the BCPL constant ST.USERDIR

Type is the primary type of this block. It is always 2, which is the BCPL constant T.SHORT

OwnKey is the key of this object, i.e. it is the block number of this block itself.

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

Hash contains for user directories all the hash keys of the file system objects contained within.

OwnerID is reserved for the owner ID of this directory that can be set with ACTION\_SET\_OWNER. As the FFS has no means to validate the directory owner, this element does not bear any practical meaning.

`PrtBits` are the protection bits of this directory. The FFS actually ignores the protection bits on the directory, but stores the value here anyhow.

`Comment` contains a potential comment for this directory. The comment is represented as a BSTR with the comment length in the first character. There is room for 80 bytes, i.e. the maximum comment size is 79 characters.

The elements at offset  $L - 23$  to  $L - 21$  form a `DateStamp` structure that identifies the timestamp of the last change of this directory.

`Name` is the name of this directory encoded as BSTR with the name length in the first byte; even though 32 bytes are available here, the FFS reserves one character, thus limiting the maximal directory name size to 30.

`NameX1` and `NameX2` are name extensions that are used by the DOS\08 flavour of the FFS. They add additional 24 bytes of storage for the directory name. Again, one character is reserved, limiting the maximum directory name size for this variant to 54. The directory name extends from `Name`, then overflows into `NameX1` and from there to `NameX2`.

`BckLink` is the key of the first hard link to this directory. The link of this key replaces the original directory header block in case the directory itself is deleted, and then is converted from a link to a directory.

`NxtHash` is the key of the next object using the same hash key as this directory itself.

`Parent` is the key of the parent directory, or the key of the root block in case this directory is directly in the volume root.

`DCache` is the key of the first directory cache block. This key is only used for FFS flavours with directory caching enabled. Otherwise, it stays 0.

`SecType` along with `Type` identifies the type of this block. The value of this element shall be 2, identifying this as a user directory block.

For the long file-name enabled flavours of the FFS, namely DOS\06 and DOS\07, this block looks somewhat different:

**Table 68: Long-Filename FFS Directory User Header Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	0	reserved for future use
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Hash	hash chains for objects in the directory
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID
L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	0	reserved for future use
L-46	NaC	name and comment BSTR
L-18	CmtBlk	key of comment block if necessary
L-17	0	reserved for future use
L-16	0	reserved for future use
L-15	Days	timestamp of last directory change
L-14	Mins	
L-13	Ticks	

L-12	0	reserved for future use
L-11	0	reserved for future use
L-10	BckLink	key of first hard-link to this object
L-9	0	reserved for future use
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	DCache	key of directory cache block if used
L-1	SecType	shall be 2, setthis is the BCPL constant ST.USERDIR

Compared to the regular directory header block, the time stamp of the last modification date is relocated to offsets  $L - 15$  and following, and the name and comment field is replaced by a new field at offset  $L - 46$ .

NaC contains both the file name and file comment as two BSTRs, directly placed next to each other. The file name comes first, followed by the comment. This element is capable of storing 112 bytes, but the FFS reserves one byte making in total 110 bytes available. In case the comment is too long and cannot be placed in this element, an additional comment block is created keeping only the comment, and this element then only keeps the file name.

CmtBlk is the key of the comment block, keeping the file comment if the NaC element is too short. If no comment block is needed, this element is 0.

### 11.7.6 The File Header Block

The file header block represents a file in a directory or the volume root. It is enqueued in one of the hash-chains of the root block or its parent user directory block. This block exists in multiple variants, depending on the flavour of the FFS. Table 69 applies to all FFS variants except the long-file variants DOS\06 and DOS\07.

**Table 69: FFS File Header Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	BlkCnt	number of data block keys included
3	0	reserved for future use
4	Data1st	first data block of the file
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	DataBlk	first $L - 56$ data blocks of the file
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID
L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	Size	size of the file in bytes
L-46	Comment	file comment as BSTR
L-26	0	reserved for future use
L-23	Days	timestamp of last file change
L-22	Mins	
L-21	Ticks	

L-20	Name	directory name as BSTR
L-12	NameX1	name extension for DOS\08
L-11	0	reserved for future use
L-10	BckLink	key of first hard-link to this object
L-9	NameX2	name extension for DOS\08
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	FileExt	key of first file extension block
L-1	SecType	shall be -3, this is the BCPL constant ST.FILE

Type is the primary type of this block. It is always 2, which is the BCPL constant `T.SHORT`

OwnKey is the key of this object, i.e. it is the block number of this block itself.

BlkCnt is the number of occupied data block keys included in this block. Due to the limited number of slots, this number is smaller or equal than  $L - 56$ .

Data1st is the key of the first data block of the file. This data block is actually made available twice, once here, and once again at offset  $L - 49$ . Probably the key at this offset was historically used for sequential access into the file, whereas the block list at offset  $L - 6$  following were used for random access.

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

DataBlk is an array containing the first  $L - 56$  data blocks of the file. The array is filled from its bottom-end, i.e.  $L - 49$  contains the key of first data block,  $L - 50$  the second key and so on. If this array overflows, additional blocks are in one or more file extension blocks chained at  $L - 2$ .

OwnerID is reserved for the owner ID of this file that can be set with `ACTION_SET_OWNER`. As the FFS has no means to validate the file owner, this element does not bear any practical meaning.

PrtBits are the protection bits of the file, encoded as in section 6.1. The four least-significant bits corresponding to the readable, writable, executable and deletable features are stored inverted, i.e. a bit being 0 indicates that the corresponding feature is available. This is the same encoding as in the `FileInfoBlock` structure.

Comment contains a potential comment for this file. The comment is represented as a BSTR with the comment length in the first character. There is room for 80 bytes, i.e. the maximum comment size is 79 characters.

The elements at offset  $L - 23$  to  $L - 21$  form a `DateStamp` structure that identifies the timestamp of the last change of this file.

Name is the name of this file encoded as BSTR with the name length in the first byte; even though 32 bytes are available here, the FFS reserves one character, thus limiting the maximal file name size to 30 characters.

NameX1 and NameX2 are name extensions that are used by the DOS\08 flavour of the FFS. They add additional 24 bytes of storage for the file name. Again, one character is reserved, limiting the maximum file name size for this variant to 54. The file name extends from Name, then overflows into NameX1 and from there to NameX2.

BckLink is the key of the first hard link to this file. The link of this key replaces the original directory header block in case the file itself is deleted, and then is converted from a link to a file.

NxtHash is the key of the next object using the same hash key as this directory itself.

Parent is the key of the directory containing this file, or the key of the root block in case this file is directly in the volume root.

`FileExt` is the key of the first file extension block. This key is only used if the file requires more than  $L - 56$  blocks. Otherwise, it stays 0.

`SecType` along with `Type` identifies the type of this block. The value of this element shall be -3, identifying this as file header block.

For the long file-name enabled flavours of the FFS, namely `DOS\06` and `DOS\07`, this block looks somewhat different:

**Table 70: Long-Filename FFS File Header Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	HighSeq	total number of blocks occupied
3	0	reserved for future use
4	Data1st	first data block of the file
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	DataBlk	first $L - 56$ keys of data blocks
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID
L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	0	reserved for future use
L-46	NaC	name and comment BSTR
L-18	CmtBlk	key of comment block if necessary
L-17	0	reserved for future use
L-16	0	reserved for future use
L-15	Days	timestamp of last file change
L-14	Mins	
L-13	Ticks	
L-12	0	reserved for future use
L-11	0	reserved for future use
L-10	BckLink	key of first hard-link to this object
L-9	0	reserved for future use
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	FileExt	key of first file extension block
L-1	SecType	shall be 2, set this is the BCPL constant ST.USERDIR

Compared to the regular file header block, the time stamp of the last modification date is relocated to offsets  $L - 15$  and following, and the name and comment field is replaced by a new field at offset  $L - 46$ .

`NaC` contains both the file name and file comment as two BSTRs, directly placed next to each other. The file name comes first, followed by the comment. This element is capable of storing 112 bytes, but the FFS reserves one byte making in total 110 bytes available. In case the comment is too long and cannot be placed in this element, an additional comment block is created keeping only the comment, and this element then only keeps the file name.

`CmtBlk` is the key of the comment block, keeping the file comment if the `NaC` element is too short. If no comment block is needed, this element is 0.

### 11.7.7 The Soft- and Hard-Link Block

The soft- and hard-link block represent a soft-link or a hard-link to another file system object. Similar to the file header and user directory blocks, this block exists in two variants, depending on the flavour of the FFS. Table 71 applies to all FFS variants except the long-file variants DOS\06 and DOS\07.

**Table 71: FFS Link Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	0	reserved for future use
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Target	link target for soft-links
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID
L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	0	reserved for future use
L-46	Comment	link comment as BSTR
L-26	0	reserved for future use
L-23	Days	timestamp of link creation
L-22	Mins	
L-21	Ticks	
L-20	Name	link name as BSTR
L-12	NameX1	name extension for DOS\08
L-11	Link	key of link target for hard-links
L-10	BckLink	key of next hard-link to the same object
L-9	NameX2	name extension for DOS\08
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	0	reserved for future use
L-1	SecType	identifies the type of the link

Type is the primary type of this block. It is always 2, which is the BCPL constant T.SHORT

OwnKey is the key of this object, i.e. it is the block number of this block itself.

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

Target is the path of the link target for soft-links. This is stored as NUL-terminated C-string, not as BSTR<sup>3</sup>. The maximum path name that can be stored here is  $(L - 56) \times 4 - 1$  characters long. Unfortunately, all versions of the FFS currently do not check the maximum link name and damage the file system structure if this path is too long, though in a default floppy with 512 bytes per sector, this element leaves room for paths up to 287 characters.

<sup>3</sup>The information in [1] that this is a BSTR is incorrect

`OwnerID` is reserved for the owner ID of this link that can be set with `ACTION_SET_OWNER`. As the FFS has no means to validate the link owner, this element does not bear any practical meaning.

`PrtBits` are the protection bits of the link, encoded as in section 6.1. However, the practical value of these protection bits is zero as locking a link provides a lock to the linked object, and thus the protection bits stored here are not actually checked and neither accessible, except by walking a directory through `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT` or `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL`.

`Comment` contains a potential comment for this link. The comment is represented as a BSTR with the comment length in the first character. There is room for 80 bytes, i.e. the maximum comment size is 79 characters. Comments of links *can* be set with `ACTION_SET_COMMENT` as the FFS does not attempt to follow the link.

The elements at offset  $L - 23$  to  $L - 21$  form a `DateStamp` structure that identifies the timestamp of the creation of the link. For hard-links, this element bears no practical meaning as even an `ACTION_SET_DATE` will update the date of the link target and not the link itself. An attempt to change the date of a soft-link creates an `ERROR_IS_SOFT_LINK` and thus instructs the client of the FFS to rather redirect the request to the linked target. Thus, this date may potentially be seen when walking a directory, but it cannot be changed.

`Name` is the name of this file encoded as BSTR with the name length in the first byte; even though 32 bytes are available here, the FFS reserves one character, thus limiting the maximal file name size.

`NameX1` and `NameX2` are name extensions that are used by the DOS\08 flavour of the FFS. They add additional 24 bytes of storage for the directory name. Again, one character is reserved, limiting the maximum name for this variant to 54. The link name extends from `Name`, then overflows into `NameX1` and from there to `NameX2`.

`Link` is the key of the file header or user directory key for hard-links. For soft-links, this element is not used and set to 0.

`BckLink` is the key to the next hard-link to the same link target, or 0 if there is no further hard-link to the same target. Thus, all links to the same target are chained through `BckLink`.

`NxtHash` is the key of the next object using the same hash key as this directory itself.

`Parent` is the key of the directory containing this link, or the key of the root block in case this file is directly in the volume root.

`SecType` along with `Type` identifies the type of this block. This can be either  $-4$ , corresponding to `ST.LINKFILE` for a hard-link to a file, or  $4$  (`ST.LINKDIR`) for a hard-link to a directory, or  $3$ , corresponding to `ST.SOFTLINK` for soft-links.

For the long file-name enabled flavours of the FFS, namely DOS\06 and DOS\07, this block looks somewhat different:

**Table 72: Long-Filename FFS Link Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 2, this is the BCPL constant T.SHORT
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	0	reserved for future use
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Target	link target for soft-links
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-49	Owner	reserved for owner ID



L-48	PrtBits	protection bits as in section 6.1
L-47	0	reserved for future use
L-46	NaC	name and comment BSTR
L-18	CmtBlk	key of comment block if necessary
L-17	0	reserved for future use
L-16	0	reserved for future use
L-15	Days	timestamp of last directory change
L-14	Mins	
L-13	Ticks	
L-12	0	reserved for future use
L-11	Link	key of link target for hard-links
L-10	BckLink	key of next hard-link to the same object
L-9	0	reserved for future use
L-4	NxtHash	next key of the same hash
L-3	Parent	key of the parent directory
L-2	0	reserved for future use
L-1	SecType	identifies the type of the link

Compared to the regular link block, the time stamp of the last modification date is relocated to offsets  $L - 15$  and following, and the name and comment field is replaced by a new field at offset  $L - 46$ .

NaC contains both the link name and file comment as two BSTRs, directly placed next to each other. The link name comes first, followed by the comment. This element is capable of storing 112 bytes, but the FFS reserves one byte making in total 110 bytes available. In case the comment is too long and cannot be placed in this element, an additional comment block is created keeping only the comment, and this element then only keeps the file name.

CmtBlk is the key of the comment block, keeping the file comment if the NaC element is too short. If no comment block is needed, this element is 0.

### 11.7.8 The File Extension Block

The file extension block keeps keys of additional file data blocks in case the  $L - 56$  keys in the file header block are not sufficient to keep all keys. It looks as follows:

**Table 73: File Extension Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 16, this is the BCPL constant T.LIST
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	BlkCnt	number of data block keys included
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	DataBlk	next $L - 56$ keys of data blocks
L-50	0	reserved for future use
L-3	Parent	key of the file header block
L-2	NextExt	key of next file extension block
L-1	SecType	shall be -3, this is the BPCL constant ST.FILE

Type is the primary type of this block. It is always 16, which is the BCPL constant `T.LIST`

OwnKey is the key of this block itself.

BlkCnt is the number of occupied data block keys included in this block. Due to the limited number of slots, this number is smaller or equal than  $L - 56$ .

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

DataBlk is an array containing the next  $L - 56$  data blocks of the file. The array is filled from its bottom-end, i.e.  $L - 49$  contains the key of first data block referenced in this extension block,  $L - 50$  the second key and so on. If this array overflows, additional blocks are in another file extension block chained at  $L - 2$ .

Parent is the key of the file header block of the file whose data block keys are extended by this block.

FileExt is the key of the next file extension block if this block is not sufficient to keep all data block keys. Otherwise, it is 0.

SecType along with Type identifies the type of this block. The value of this element shall be -3, identifying this block as belonging to a file.

### 11.7.9 The Bitmap Extension Block

The bitmap extension block keeps the keys of additional bitmap blocks in case the number of bitmap keys in the root block (25, namely) are not sufficient. This block has the following structure:

**Table 74: Bitmap Extension Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	BMKeys	additional $L - 1$ bitmap keys
L-1	BMNext	key of another bitmap extension block

BMKeys is an array of  $L - 1$  keys, each of contains a bitmap for the subsequent part of the volume. The slots in this block are allocated top to bottom, with non-used entries set to 0.

BMNext is the key of another extension block if this extension block is not sufficient. It is 0 in case this is the last bitmap extension block.

### 11.7.10 The Comment Block

This block keeps a file comment for the long filename FFS flavours `DOS\06` and `DOS\07` in case the file header, user directory or link block does not provide sufficient room to keep both the file name and the file comment.

**Table 75: Comment Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 64, this is <code>T.COMMENT</code>
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	Parent	key of the header block
3	0	reserved for future use
4	0	reserved for future use
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Comment	object comment as BSTR

26	0	reserved for future use
----	---	-------------------------

Type identifies the type of this block. The value placed here shall be 64, corresponding to the constant T.COMMENT.

OwnKey is the key of this block itself.

Parent is the key of the file header, user directory or link block to which the comment in this block applies and which is extended by this block.

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

Comment is the comment, stored as a BSTR with the first character containing its size. This element is 80 bytes large, sufficient for comments of 79 characters.

The remaining bytes of this block shall be 0 and remain available for future extension.

### 11.7.11 The Directory Cache Block

This block type is only used by the directory cache flavours of the FFS, namely DOS\04 and DOS\05. It keeps, in a more compact form, the contents of directories. This block looks as follows:

**Table 76: Directory Cache Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 33, this is T.DIRLIST
1	OwnKey	key of this block (self-reference)
2	Parent	key of the user directory block
3	NumNtry	number of entries in this block
4	NextBlk	key of the next directory cache block
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Entries	Directory content (see below)

Type identifies the type of this block; the constant put here is actually DIRLIST\_KEY = 32 or'd with the version of the directory cache data, which is currently 1.

OwnKey is the key of this block itself.

Parent is the key of the directory header block of the user directory cached here, or the key of the root block if this is the cache of the volume root directory.

NumNtry is the number of directory entries cached in this block. Each entry has a structure as indicated in table 77. Such entries cannot extend over block boundaries; if a new entry does not fit entirely into a block, another directory cache block is allocated. A directory cache block may also contain 0 entries as these blocks are never released. Thus, directory caches can grow very large, and they are only rebuild when the disk requires full validation.

NextBlk is the key of the next directory cache block for the same directory, or 0 in case this is the last block.

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

Entries contains the payload data of the directory cache. It consists of zero or more entries of the following variably sized structure:

**Table 77: Directory Cache Entry**

Size	Content	Notes
32	Key	key of the referenced object
32	Size	size of the object in bytes
32	PrtBits	protection bits of the object
32	Owner	owner ID of the object
16	Days	timestamp of last change
16	Mins	
16	Ticks	
8	SecType	secondary type of the object
variable	Name	object name as BSTR
variable	Comment	object comment as BSTR
pad(16)	padding	padding to 16-bit boundary

The elements of this structure are as follows:

`Key` is the key of the file header block, the user directory block or the link block, depending on the file system object to which this entry belongs.

`Size` is the byte size of the object, or 0 for links and directories.

`PrtBits` are the protection bits as represented in the `FileInfoBlock` structure.

`Owner` is reserved for a 32-bit group and owner ID that can be set by the `ACTION_SET_OWNER` packet. However, as the FFS has no means to verify access rights to an object, the purpose of this field remains opaque.

`Days`, `Mins` and `Ticks` are the timestamp of the last time the corresponding object was modified and a copy from the corresponding header block provided by `Key`. However, unlike there, only 16 bits are available for each element. This is sufficient if the `DateStamp()` structure is normalized, i.e. each element is as small as possible.

`SecType` is a copy from the `SecType` element of the file, user directory or link block indexed by `Key`. All possible values can be represented by a signed byte and are thus abbreviated here in an 8-bit element.

`Name` is a copy of the `Name` element of the file, user directory or link, though only the minimal number of bytes are copied, i.e.  $N + 1$  bytes for a file name of size  $N$ . The first byte of `Name` is its length, i.e. it is a BSTR without NUL-termination.

`Comment` follows directly after the last byte of `Name` and is a copy of the `Comment` element of the file, user directory or link block; again, only the minimal amount of bytes are copied to the directory cache, i.e. the length byte and the comment itself. This forms again a BSTR, not a C string, and there is no NUL-termination.

`padding` is an optional padding byte to make the entire structure an even number of bytes large such that the key of the next directory entry is on an even address in memory.

The directory cache does not store the targets of hard-links or soft-links; that is, if the contents of a directory of a cache-enabled file system is listed, this information is gained from the regular directory structure.

Within a directory cache block, zero or more directory cache entries follow each other; their count is provided by the `NumNtry` element in the directory cache block. If the FFS has to delete entries from the directory, it moves entries within the current block upwards over the released entry. In worst case, no entries remain in a directory cache block. Such blocks are not released, but remain available to accept new entries.

While the directory cache increases the performance of listing directory contents, keeping the directory cache in sync with the regular directory structure requires additional overhead as directory cache blocks need to be allocated, filled, and entries be moved within the blocks.

### 11.7.12 The Data Block

Data blocks contain the payload data of files. It comes in two variants: The “OFS” variants of the FFS, namely `DOS\00`, `DOS\02`, `DOS\04` and `DOS\06` keep a lot of redundant information within the data block that makes the file system structure very robust against media corruption; however, this information needs to be stripped off before the payload data is delivered to the FFS client, these variants are very slow.

All remaining variants, including `DOS\08` only keep payload data in the data blocks. This enables the FFS to directly transmit data from the medium to the target buffer of the client if the `de_Mask` allows it. If the host adapter offers DMA, the CPU is not even involved in copying the data and thus these variants of the FFS are faster, though also less robust. However, modern media rarely corrupt data, unlike floppy disks, and therefore are generally recommended. The OFS flavours are therefore only useful for slow and unreliable data carriers.

The following table describes the structure of an OFS data block:

**Table 78: OFS Data Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 8, this is T.DATA
1	Header	key of the file header
2	SeqNum	sequence number of this block
3	Size	data bytes in this block
4	NxtBlk	next data block of this file
5	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
6	Data	payload data

`Type` is the primary type of this block. It is always 8, which is the BCPL constant `T.DATA`

`Header` is the key of the file header block this file belongs to.

`SeqNum` is the sequential number of this block within the file. The first data block of the file has the sequential number 1, the next one 2 and so on.

`Size` is the number of valid bytes within this data block. Valid data does not necessarily extend to the end of the block.

`Chksum` is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

`Data` is the actual payload data of the block. It consists of `Size` arbitrary bytes.

The FFS data block does not have any structure, it contains only payload data. This has the consequence that a disk scan, e.g. by a disk salvage tool, cannot safely identify whether a block carries administrative information of the disk, or is rather a data block that, by pure coincidence, reassembles an administrative block of one of the types listed in this section. Various disk salvage tools fell into this pitfall identifying blocks as administrative blocks that were, actually, data blocks allocated for a file.

### 11.7.13 The Bitmap Block

Bitmap blocks keep a bitmap — one bit per key — which keys are already occupied for administrative or payload data, and which keys are still free. Depending on the size of the volume, one or many bitmap blocks exist, sometimes even so many that bitmap extension blocks are needed as the 25 keys available in the root block.

The structure of a bitmap block is as follows:

**Table 79: Bitmap Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Chksum	LW sum over block is 0
1	Bitmap	bitmap of available blocks

Chksum is the checksum over the entire block. It is chosen such that the long-word sum over the entire block, including this element, is zero.

Bitmap holds for every available key administrated by this bitmap a bit that indicates whether that key is available or not. If the bit is 1, the key is free, and if 0, the key is released.

Bits are addressed in groups of long-words such that the least-significant bit of each long-word corresponds to the lowest key and the most significant bit of a long-word to the highest key within this long-word. The least significant bit of the long-word at offset 1 of the first bitmap of a volume corresponds to the key `de_Reserved`, i.e. the reserved blocks at the start of a volume *are not* represented in the bitmap. As key 0 corresponds to the boot-block and this block keeps the flavour of the FFS, and potentially boot code, `de_Reserved` cannot be 0 as otherwise the FFS could allocate it as key, and thus overwrite parts of its administration information. While the FFS could, in principle, always reserve key 0 for such purpose, no such provisions are made.

Identifying whether a particular key is allocated is demonstrated by the following algorithm: It takes the number of long words per block (e.g. 128 for a standard floppy disk, i.e. 512 bytes per block), the number of reserved blocks, the key to investigate and the key of the root block. It assumes that `readKey()` brings the key provided by its argument to memory, and that this function returns a pointer to an array of ULONGs representing the block contents:

```

/* Bring key to memory */
ULONG *readKey(ULONG key);

/* Check whether a particular key is allocated */
LONG isKeyAllocated(ULONG longspersblock, ULONG reservedblocks,
                    ULONG key, ULONG rootkey)
{
    ULONG keysperbitmap;
    ULONG bitmap;
    ULONG keyinbitmap;
    ULONG longoffset;
    ULONG *block;

    /* compute the number of keys per bitmap */
    keysperbitmap = (longspersblock - 1) * 32;
    /* compute the bitmap index in all bitmaps */
    bitmap = (key - reservedblocks) / keysperbitmap;
    /* compute the key within the bitmap */
    keyinbitmap = (key - reservedblocks) % keysperbitmap;
    /* compute the LW offset within the bitmap */
    longoffset = keyinbitmap / 32 + 1;
    /* compute the bit within the long */
    bitinlong = keyinbitmap % 32;
    /* read the root block */
    block = readKey(rootkey);

    /* Check whether the bitmap is linked in the root

```

```

** block or not. The first 25 are.
*/
if (bitmap < 25) {
    /* Bring the proper keymap into memory */
    block = readKey(block[bitmap + BMKeys]);
} else {
    LONG extension, keyoffset;
    /* Compute the extension block required,
    ** and key offset within the extension block
    ** to the bitmap block.
    */
    extension = (bitmap - 25) / (longsperblock - 1);
    keyoffset = (bitmap - 25) % (longsperblock - 1);
    /* read the first extension block */
    block = readKey(block[BMExt]);
    /* Follow the link chain of extension
    ** blocks to find the right one
    */
    while(extension > 0) {
        block = readKey(block[BMNext]);
        extension--;
    }
    /* Now read the right bitmap */
    block = readKey(block[keyoffset]);
}

/* check the bit corresponding to the key */
if (block[longoffset] & (1UL << bitinlong)) {
    return DOSTRUE; /* is allocated */
} else {
    return DOSFALSE; /* is free */
}
}

```

### 11.7.14 The Deleted Block

The FFS also mark unused administration blocks as deleted to ensure that a disk scan does not confuse them with a used block. This change of the block type does not happen to data blocks of deleted files.

**Table 80: Deleted Block**

Long-word Offset	Content	Notes
0	Type	shall be 1, this is T.DELETED
1	junk	whatever remained here

This makes it particularly easy for disk salvage tools to identify which keys are actually still in active use and which have been scratched on purpose.





---

## Chapter 12

# Packet Documentation

Packets are the mechanism by which the *dos.library* communicates with file systems and handlers. Their structure is specified in section 11.1. The activity a handler is requested to perform is defined through the packet type, contained in the `dp_Type` element of the handler.

This chapter documents all packets the AmigaDOS handlers and file systems support. Third party handlers may support additional packets. It is permissible to implement additional packet types as long as they do not conflict with existing packets. In particular, the range from 2050 to 2999 is available for third party handler implementations.

The following packets are not implemented nor defined by AmigaDOS but are either obsolete or currently in use by some third-party handlers. Their functionality is beyond the scope of this work. This list does not claim to be complete:

**Table 81: Some Third Party Packets**

dp_Type	Purpose
ACTION_GET_BLOCK (2)	obsolete, used by the BCPL file system
ACTION_SET_MAP (4)	obsolete, used by the BCPL file system
ACTION_EVENT (6)	obsolete, used by the BCPL file system
ACTION_DISK_TYPE (32)	obsolete, used by the BCPL file system
ACTION_DISK_CHANGE (33)	not used, not related to C:DiskChange
ACTION_FINDREADONLY (1009)	open a file for exclusive reading
ACTION_FINDONEWRITER (1010)	open a file for exclusive writing
ACTION_DIRECT_READ (1900)	used by the CDTV
ACTION_DOUBLE (2000)	create two file handles for a pipe
ACTION_PEEK (2005)	retrieve console input line
ACTION_REPLACE (2006)	replace console input line
ACTION_GET_HISTORY (2007)	retrieve history of the console
ACTION_HANDLER_DEBUG (2010)	install a debug hook into a handler
ACTION_SET_TRANS_TYPE (2011)	configure LF/CR translation
ACTION_NETWORK_HELLO (2012)	network handler support package
ACTION_JUMP_SCREEN (2020)	move console to another screen
ACTION_SET_HISTORY (2021)	update or set console history
ACTION_GET_DISK_FSSM (4201)	get FileSysStartupMsg structure
ACTION_FFS_INTERNAL1 (7654)	was reserved for the v37 FFS
ACTION_FFS_INTERNAL2 (8765)	was reserved for the v37 FFS
ACTION_TOGGLE_INTL (331122)	reserved to toggle the international mode

## 12.1 Packets for File Interactions

The packet types listed in this section are used to implement file-specific functions, such as those listed in chapter 4. The arguments of the packets typically follow the calling conventions of the *dos.library* functions closely, though are typically represented in their BCPL equivalents, i.e. *BPTR*s instead of regular pointers or *BSTR*s instead of NUL-terminated C strings.

### 12.1.1 Opening a File for Shared Access

The packet `ACTION_FINDINPUT` initializes a `FileHandle` structure for shared access to a file.

**Table 82:** `ACTION_FINDINPUT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_FINDINPUT</code> (1005)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	<i>BPTR to FileHandle</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	<i>BPTR to FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	<i>BPTR to BSTR of the file name</i>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is used by the `Open()` function of the *dos.library* where the packet type is taken copied from the second argument, i.e. the packet type is identical to the `accessMode` argument of `Open()`, and thus `ACTION_FINDINPUT` is identical to `MODE_OLDFILE`.

`dp_Arg1` is initialized to *BPTR* to a `FileHandle` structure whose `fh_Arg1` handle should be initialized to a value the handler or file system may use later on to identify the file it operates on. This is particularly important to *file systems* that handle multiple files by a single process. In a typical implementation, this opaque value may be the (internal) lock to the opened file.

A handler or file system may also replace the `fh_Type` element of the `FileHandle` structure request that packets concerning this particular file shall be delivered to an alternative port. This element otherwise defaults to the process port of the handler.

`dp_Arg2` is initialized to the *BPTR* to a `FileLock` structure describing the directory within which the file to be opened is located. Typically, this corresponds to the current directory of the caller of `Open()`. If this lock is `ZERO`, then the *file system* shall assume that the provided path is relative to the root directory of the currently inserted volume. Flat file systems or handlers may ignore this argument.

`dp_Arg3` is initialized to a *BPTR* to a `BSTR` providing the path of the file relative to the directory provided by `dp_Arg1`.

All other arguments of the packet shall be ignored. The handler should locate the file indicated by `dp_Arg3` relative to `dp_Arg2`, and fill in a boolean success code in `dp_Res1`. It shall be set to `DOSTRUE` for success or `DOSFALSE` for error. `dp_Res2` shall be set to an error code from `dos/dos.h` or 0 for success.

The purpose of this packet is to prepare a *FileHandle* for shared access, either for reading or for writing. If the file cannot be located, this packet *shall not* create it but rather fail with `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND`. This packet is used by the `Open()` function if its second argument is set to `MODE_OLDFILE`.

Handlers such that the `Port-Handler` or the `Console-Handler` may already open its resources as part of the startup-packet handling and thus may not perform a lot of activities here. Note that both handlers do not initialize `dol_Task` of the `DosList` structure and thus each opened file will launch a new process. The FFS, however, runs on a single process and thus distinguishes its files through `fh_Arg1` in the `FileHandle` structure.

Note that both the Lock provided by `dp_Arg2` and the path `dp_Arg3` are required for locating a file on a hierarchical file system. The path from `dp_Arg3` is logically “appended” to the path implied by `dp_Arg2`, i.e. the file system starts interpreting the former by scanning the directory hierarchy at the position given by `dp_Arg2`, or the root directory if `dp_Arg2` is ZERO.

A special case arises if `dp_Arg3` is the empty string; in such a case, `dp_Arg2` shall be already a Lock to the file to open. This is implied by the above algorithm to locate a file that ends walking the directory tree whenever `dp_Arg3` ends.

The type of this packet, `ACTION_FINDINPUT`, is intentionally identical to `MODE_OLDFILE` as the `Open()` function currently initializes the packet type from its second argument.

### 12.1.2 Opening a File for Exclusive Access

The packet `ACTION_FINDOUTPUT` initializes a `FileHandle` structure for exclusive access to a file and potentially creates the file if it does not yet exist.

**Table 83:** `ACTION_FINDOUTPUT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_FINDOUTPUT (1006)</code>
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileHandle</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	BPTR to BSTR of file name
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is used by the `Open()` function of the *dos.library* where the packet type is taken copied from the second argument, i.e. the packet type is identical to the `accessMode` argument of `Open()`, and thus `ACTION_FINDOUTPUT` is identical to `MODE_NEWFILE`.

The arguments of the packet are initialized as for `ACTION_FINDINPUT`, see section 12.1.1.

### 12.1.3 Opening or Creating a File for Shared Access

The packet `ACTION_FINDUPDATE` initializes a `FileHandle` structure for shared access to a file, potentially creating the file if it does not yet exist.

**Table 84:** `ACTION_FINDUPDATE`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_FINDUPDATE (1004)</code>
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileHandle</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	BPTR to BSTR of file name
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is used by the `Open()` function of the *dos.library* where the packet type is taken copied from the second argument, i.e. the packet type is identical to the `accessMode` argument of `Open()`, and thus `ACTION_FINDUPDATE` is identical to `MODE_READWRITE`.

The arguments of the packet are initialized as for `ACTION_FINDINPUT`, see section 12.1.1.

### 12.1.4 Opening a File from a Lock

The packet ACTION\_FH\_FROM\_LOCK initializes a FileHandle structure from a lock on an existing file. Whether this access is shared or exclusive depends on the type of the lock. Upon success, the lock is absorbed into the FileHandle.

**Table 85:** ACTION\_FH\_FROM\_LOCK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_FH_FROM_LOCK (1026)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to FileHandle
dp_Arg2	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet type implements the OpenFromLock() function of the dos.library, see section 5.2.3. It opens a file from a lock. On a hierarchical file system, this is equivalent to an ACTION\_FINDINPUT packet with dp\_Arg3 set to an empty string.

To uniquely identify the file handle and resources associated to it later on, the handler may place an identifier or a handle or pointer to internal resources in the fh\_Arg1 element of the FileHandle provided by dp\_Arg1. Before replying the packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set by the handler to DOSTRUE on success, or DOSFALSE on error. On success, dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0, and to an error code from dos/dos.h otherwise.

### 12.1.5 Closing a File

The packet ACTION\_END releases all file system internal resources of a file handle.

**Table 86:** ACTION\_END

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_END (1007)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the FileHandle
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

dp\_Arg1 is initialized to the fh\_Arg1 element of the FileHandle structure corresponding to the file that is supposed to be closed. This value may be used by the File System or Handler to uniquely identify the resources associated to the file, for example any implicit lock on the file system object.

Before replying to the packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE on success or DOSFALSE on failure. On success, dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0, or to an error code otherwise.

The dos.library uses this packet to implement the Close() function. If it receives an error code, the library will not release the memory of the FileHandle structure, and as such, it remains available to the caller of Close() to perform other activities on the file.

### 12.1.6 Reading from a File

The packet ACTION\_READ reads data from a file system or handler and advances the file pointer accordingly.

**Table 87:** ACTION\_READ

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_READ (82)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg2	Pointer to the buffer
dp_Arg3	Number of bytes to read
dp_Res1	Bytes read or -1
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `Read()` function of the *dos.library*. The elements of the packet are initialized as follows:

dp\_Arg1 is a copy from fh\_Arg1 of the *FileHandle* structure and may be used by the *file system* or *handler* to identify the file. Note that it is *not* the *FileHandle* itself; instead, the *handler* may create and insert such an identifier into the *FileHandle* when opening a file.

dp\_Arg2 is a pointer (not a BPTR) to the buffer to be filled.

dp\_Arg3 is the number of bytes to read.

Before replying this packet, the *handler* shall fill dp\_Res1 with the number of bytes that could be transferred into the buffer, or -1 for an error condition. This number may also be 0 if no data could be transferred, either because the end of file has been reached, or because currently no data is available on an interactive file, such as the console or the serial port. In case of an error, i.e. for the primary result code -1, dp\_Res2 shall be filled with an error code, otherwise it shall be set to 0.

Note that there are no separate packet types corresponding to the buffered IO functions from section 4.8. Instead, the *dos.library* functions at the caller side manage the buffer, monitor its fill state and potentially call into `Read()` which then generates this packet.

### 12.1.7 Writing to a File

The packet ACTION\_WRITE writes data to a *file system* or *handler* and advances the file pointer accordingly.

**Table 88:** ACTION\_WRITE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_WRITE (87)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg2	Pointer to the buffer
dp_Arg3	Number of bytes to write
dp_Res1	Bytes written or -1
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `Write()` function of the *dos.library*. The elements of the packet are initialized as follows:

dp\_Arg1 is a copy from fh\_Arg1 of the *FileHandle* structure and may be used by the *file system* or *handler* to identify the file.

dp\_Arg2 is a pointer (not a BPTR) to the buffer containing the data to be transferred.

dp\_Arg3 is the number of bytes to write.

Before replying this packet, the *handler* shall fill dp\_Res1 with the number of bytes that could be transferred from the buffer, or -1 for an error condition. In case of an error, i.e. for the primary result code -1, dp\_Res2 shall be filled with an error code, otherwise it shall be set to 0.

Note that there are no separate packet types corresponding to the buffered IO functions from section 4.8. Instead, the *dos.library* functions at the caller side manage the buffer, monitor its fill state and potentially call into `Write()` which then generates this packet.

### 12.1.8 Adjusting the File Pointer

The packet ACTION\_SEEK sets the file pointer relative to a base location.

**Table 89:** ACTION\_SEEK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SEEK (1008)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg2	File pointer offset
dp_Arg3	Seek mode from Table 10
dp_Res1	Previous file position
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements, to a major degree, the `Seek()` function of the *dos.library*. The elements of the packet are initialized as follows:

dp\_Arg1 is a copy from fh\_Arg1 of the *FileHandle* structure and may be used by the *file system* or *handler* to identify the file.

dp\_Arg2 defines the new location of the file pointer relative to a position identified by dp\_Arg3.

dp\_Arg3 defines the position to which dp\_Arg2 is relative. It is one of the modes in table 10 and is therefore identical to the third argument of `Seek()`.

Before replying this packet, the *handler* shall fill dp\_Res1 with the previous value of the file pointer, i.e. before making the requested adjustment, or to `-1` in case an error occurred. In the latter case, dp\_Res2 shall be filled with an error code, otherwise it shall be set to 0.

While this packet type mostly implement the `Seek()` function, the latter is also aware of the (caller-side) buffer of the *FileHandle* and performs a flush of this buffer. The packet cannot, of course, perform a flush.

### 12.1.9 Setting the File Size

The packet ACTION\_SET\_FILE\_SIZE adjusts the size of a file, either truncating or extends it beyond its current end of file.

**Table 90:** ACTION\_SET\_FILE\_SIZE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SET_FILE_SIZE (1022)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg2	File size adjustment
dp_Arg3	Mode from Table 10
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetFileSize()` function of the *dos.library*. The elements of the packet are initialized as follows:

dp\_Arg1 is a copy from fh\_Arg1 of the *FileHandle* structure and may be used by the *file system* or *handler* to identify the file.

dp\_Arg2 defines the new size of the file or equivalently the new position of the end of file, relative to a position identified by dp\_Arg3.

dp\_Arg3 defines the position to which dp\_Arg2 is relative. It is one of the modes in table 10 and is therefore identical to the third argument of `SetFileSize()`. The new end-of-file position of the file can therefore be set relative to the start of the file, i.e. dp\_Arg2 is the new size of the file, relative to the current file pointer, or relative to the current end-of-file.

Before replying this packet, the *handler* shall fill `dp_Res1` with a boolean success indicator, `DOSTRUE` in case it could extend or truncate the file as requested, or `DOSFALSE` in case of error. In case of success, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0, otherwise it shall be set to an error code.

Additional information on this packet is found in section 4.7.5 which describes the *dos.library* function that is based on it.

### 12.1.10 Locking a Record of a File

The packet `ACTION_LOCK_RECORD` locks a record of a file. Such a record lock neither provides reading nor writing to the locked region, it just prevents locking the same region with an exclusive lock, see section 4.11 for details how the protocol is supposed to use.

**Table 91:** `ACTION_LOCK_RECORD`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_LOCK_RECORD</code> (2008)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	<code>fh_Arg1</code> of the <i>FileHandle</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	Start offset of record
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	Length of record
<code>dp_Arg4</code>	Type of lock from table 13
<code>dp_Arg5</code>	Timeout (if applicable) in ticks
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `LockRecord()` function of the *dos.library* and attempts to lock a record of a file, given as start offset from the beginning of the file and a byte size. The file is identified by `dp_Arg1` which is a copy from `fh_Arg1` of the *FileHandle* structure<sup>1</sup>. There is no packet corresponding to `LockRecords()`. Instead, the latter locks records sequentially.

The record to lock is identified by `dp_Arg2` and `dp_Arg3` which correspond to the `offset` and `length` arguments of the `LockRecord()` function.

The mode by which the record is supposed to be locked is given by `dp_Arg4`, it identifies whether the access is shared or exclusive, and whether a timeout is applied or not. The mode is a value from table 13, and more information on the modes is found in section 4.11.1.

If the mode from `dp_Arg4` includes a timeout the *file system* should wait for the record to become available, it is provided by `dp_Arg5`. Otherwise, this argument is ignored, see table 13.

If locking the record is possible, or possible within the timeout, then `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` when replying this packet. In such a case, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure to obtain the record lock, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.1.11 Release a Record of a File

The packet `ACTION_FREE_RECORD` releases a record lock on a portion of a file.

<sup>1</sup>The information on `dp_Arg1` in [1] is incorrect.

**Table 92:** ACTION\_FREE\_RECORD

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_FREE_RECORD (2009)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg2	Start offset of record
dp_Arg3	Length of record
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `UnLockRecord()` function of the *dos.library* and releases a lock on a subset of a file, identified by start position and length. There is no packet corresponding to `UnLockRecords()`; instead, the *dos.library* sequentially calls `UnLockRecord()` for each record.

The file itself is identified by `dp_Arg1` which is a copy from the `fh_Arg1` element of the *FileHandle* structure. The record to release is given by the start offset within the file provided by `dp_Arg2` and the byte size of the record in `dp_Arg3`.

On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.2 Packets for Interacting with Locks

The packets listed in this section implement the *dos.library* functions listed in section 5; they create, release or duplicate locks or create directories.

### 12.2.1 Obtaining a Lock

The `ACTION_LOCATE_OBJECT` packet locates an object — a file or a directory — on a *file system* and creates from it a *Lock* identifying the object uniquely. The object can later be used as active directory, to open a file from it or to retrieve metadata such as comments or protection bits associated to the identified object.

**Table 93:** ACTION\_LOCATE\_OBJECT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_LOCATE_OBJECT (8)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Arg2	Mode of the Lock
dp_Arg3	BPTR to BSTR of the object name
dp_Res1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet creates a lock from a path and a directory to which this path is relative, also represented as a lock. As such, it implements the `Lock()` function of the *dos.library*.

`dp_Arg1` is a BPTR to a *FileLock* structure that represents the object to which the path given in `dp_Arg3` is relative. This is usually a directory, and the `Lock()` function fills it from the current directory of the calling process. This argument can be `ZERO` in which case the *file system* shall assume that `dp_Arg3` is relative to the root of the currently inserted volume handled by the file system.

`dp_Arg2` is the type of the lock to be created as defined in table 14. The value `SHARED_LOCK` requests a non-exclusive lock on an object; multiple of such locks can be held on the same object. The value `EXCLUSIVE_LOCK` requests an exclusive an object; only a single exclusive lock can be held on an object at once, and no other locks, including shared locks, are permissible. Attempting to exclusively lock an object



that is already locked shall fail, and attempting to lock an object that is already exclusively locked shall as well. Unfortunately, some programs call `Lock()` with an invalid argument for the mode, and thus *file systems* should be prepared to handle invalid values for `dp_Arg2`. Such values should be considered equivalent to `SHARED_LOCK`.

`dp_Arg3` is a BPTR to a BSTR of an absolute or relative path of the object to be locked. Relative paths are relative to the lock in `dp_Arg1`, and if this argument is `ZERO`, relative to the root — the topmost directory — of the volume currently managed by this file system. If this string is empty, the identified object to be locked is identical to the one identified by `dp_Arg1`.

On success, `dp_Res1` shall be a BPTR to a `FileLock` structure. These objects are created and maintained by the *file system*. This structure shall be initialized as indicated in section 5.2.5:

`fl_Task` shall point to a `MsgPort` through which the maintaining *file system* can be contacted, which is typically, but not necessarily the process message port `pr_Port` of the *file system* itself.

`fl_Volume` shall be a BPTR to the `DosList` structure representing the volume on which the locked object is located, see section 7.

`fl_Access` shall be filled by `dp_Arg2`, identifying the type of the lock.

`fl_Link` may be used to queue up locks on a volume that is currently not inserted. When a volume with locked objects is removed from the drive, the *file system* may store all these locks in a singly linked list starting at `dol_LockList` and chained by `fl_Link`. If the same volume is then re-inserted into another drive, another instance of the same file system is able to pick up these locks and manage them instead. Thus, for example, a lock on an object in drive `df0:` will remain valid even if the volume is removed and re-inserted into `df1:`.

`fl_Key`, finally, may be used for the purpose of the *file system* for uniquely identifying the locked object. It is an opaque value as far as the *dos.library* is concerned.

On success, the BPTR to the created `FileLock` shall be stored in `dp_Res1` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `ZERO` and `dp_Res2` to an error code from `dos/dos.h` identifying the source of the problem, see also section 9.2.9.

## 12.2.2 Duplicating a Lock

Despite its misleading name, the packet `ACTION_COPY_DIR` makes a copy of a (shared) lock.

**Table 94:** `ACTION_COPY_DIR`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_COPY_DIR</code> (19)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `DupLock()` function of the *dos.library* and attempts to replicate the lock passed in `dp_Arg1`. If this argument is `ZERO`, the packet is supposed to create a lock on the root directory of the currently mounted volume.

On success, `dp_Res1` is filled with the BPTR to a copy of the `FileLock` passed in, and `dp_Res2` is set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` is set to `ZERO` and `dp_Res2` to an error code. While [1] indicates that `dp_Res1` may be `ZERO` on an attempt to replicate the `ZERO` lock, this is not advisable as most users of this packet may misinterpret this result as failure case.

This packet is identical to `ACTION_LOCATE_OBJECT` with `dp_Arg2` set to `SHARED_LOCK` and `dp_Arg3` set to an empty string.

### 12.2.3 Finding the Parent of a Lock

The packet ACTION\_PARENT obtains a shared lock on the directory containing a locked object.

**Table 95:** ACTION\_PARENT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_PARENT (29)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the ParentDir() function of the *dos.library* and attempts to create a lock on the directory containing the object identified by dp\_Arg1. If no parent exists because dp\_Arg1 is a lock on the root directory or the ZERO lock, the *file system* shall set dp\_Res1 to ZERO and dp\_Res2 to 0, indicating that this is not a failure case.

Otherwise, this function returns on success a BPTR to the FileLock representing the parent directory in dp\_Arg1 and sets dp\_Res2 to 0. On error, dp\_Res1 is set to ZERO and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

### 12.2.4 Duplicating a Lock from a File Handle

The packet ACTION\_COPY\_DIR\_FH creates a shared lock from an object opened by a *file handle*; that is, it copies the implicit lock of the handle.

**Table 96:** ACTION\_COPY\_DIR\_FH

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_COPY_DIR_FH (1030)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Res1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the DupLockFromFH() function of the *dos.library*, and thus creates a copy of the lock that is implicit to an open file handle. This works only if the file is open in a non-exclusive mode, i.e. either MODE\_READWRITE or MODE\_OLDFILE.

dp\_Arg1 is a copy of the fh\_Arg1 element of the FileHandle structure and thus serves to identify the opened file.

On success, dp\_Res1 is filled by the BPTR to the FileLock created, namely a lock to the object opened by the file handle. In such a case, dp\_Res2 is set to 0. On error, dp\_Res1 is set to ZERO and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

### 12.2.5 Finding the Parent Directory of a File Handle

The packet ACTION\_PARENT\_FH creates a lock on the directory containing a file identified by a file handle.

**Table 97:** ACTION\_PARENT\_FH

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_PARENT_FH (1031)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of the <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Res1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `ParentOfFH()` function of the *dos.library* and as such creates a lock on the directory that contains a given *file handle*. `dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of the `FileHandle` structure and thus identifies the handle.

On success, `dp_Res1` is filled with a BPTR to the `FileLock` created, and `dp_Res2` is set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` is set to ZERO and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.2.6 Creating a new Directory

The packet `ACTION_CREATE_DIR` creates a new directory and represents it by an exclusive lock on the directory created.

**Table 98:** ACTION\_CREATE\_DIR

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_CREATE_DIR</code> (22)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to BSTR of the directory name
<code>dp_Res1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `CreateDir()` function of the *dos.library* and creates a new directory of the name `dp_Arg2` within the directory identified by the lock `dp_Arg1`.

On success, it creates a new exclusive lock which is returned in `dp_Res1`, and `dp_Res2` is set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` is set to ZERO and `dp_Res2` is set to an error code.

## 12.2.7 Comparing two Locks

The packet `ACTION_SAME_LOCK` compares two locks on the same file system and checks whether the two locks are on the same object.

**Table 99:** ACTION\_SAME\_LOCK

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_SAME_LOCK</code> (40)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is the core of the `SameLock()` function of the *dos.library*, which, however, first checks whether the two locks to compare are on the same file system. Only if so, the file system corresponding the two locks is contacted with the above packet to compare the two locks. For this, `dp_Arg1` and `dp_Arg2` are BPTRs to the two `FileLocks` to compare.

Upon reply, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` if the two locks are on the same object, and in that case, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. If the two locks are on two different objects, then `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` shall also be set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` is set to 0 and `dp_Res2` to an error code<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup>The documentation in [1] on `dp_Res1` is incorrect.

## 12.2.8 Changing the Mode of a Lock or a File Handle

The packet ACTION\_CHANGE\_MODE changes the access mode of a lock or a file handle, thus potentially granting exclusive access — if possible — or lowering the rights to shared access.

**Table 100:** ACTION\_CHANGE\_MODE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_CHANGE_MODE (1028)
dp_Arg1	Object type from table 15
dp_Arg2	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i> or <i>FileHandle</i>
dp_Arg3	Target mode
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `ChangeMode()` function of the *dos.library* and thus changes the access mode of files or locks to exclusive or shared access mode.

dp\_Arg1 identifies the object whose mode is to be changed. This is a value from table 15, i.e. either CHANGE\_LOCK to adjust the type of the lock, or CHANGE\_FH to change the access mode of a file handle.

dp\_Arg2 is the BPTR to the object whose mode is to be changed. If dp\_Arg1 is CHANGE\_LOCK, this is a BPTR to a *FileLock* structure, if dp\_Arg1 is CHANGE\_FH, it is a BPTR to a *FileHandle* structure. Note that this is unusual as files are typically identified by their fh\_Arg1 element and not by the handle itself. This packet is an exception.

dp\_Arg3 is the target mode. This is either SHARED\_LOCK for shared access to the file or the lock, or EXCLUSIVE\_LOCK for exclusive access to the file or the lock<sup>3</sup>. However, as information on this packet is sparse and application programs can call the corresponding `ChangeMode()` function with incorrect target modes, *file handlers* should also accept ACTION\_FINDINPUT and ACTION\_FINDUPDATE for shared access and ACTION\_FINDOUTPUT for exclusive access.

Note that it is not always possible to change the mode of a lock or a file to exclusive access, namely if it is accessed by a second file handle or locked a second time. This packet shall then fail.

Upon reply, dp\_Res1 shall include a boolean success indicator, DOSTRUE for success or DOSFALSE for failure. In the former case, dp\_Res2 shall be 0, in the latter case, it shall contain an error code.

## 12.2.9 Releasing a Lock

The packet ACTION\_FREE\_LOCK releases a lock on a file system.

**Table 101:** ACTION\_FREE\_LOCK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_FREE_LOCK (15)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to <i>FileLock</i>
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the *dos.library* function `UnLock()` and releases a *FileLock*. A BPTR to the lock to release is provided in dp\_Arg1. If this argument is ZERO, the *file system* shall ignore the request and return success.

When replying this packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE on success and DOSFALSE on error. On success, dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0, otherwise it shall be set to an error code. There are actually few reasons

<sup>3</sup>The information in [1] is incorrect on this subject matter.

why this packet could fail, probably because the passed in BPTR is invalid and does not point to a valid FileLock. The `UnLock()` function does not return this result code, but adjusts `IoErr()` according to `dp_Res2`.

## 12.3 Packets for Examining Objects

The packets in this section implement the functions of section 6.1 on packet level, i.e. they retrieve information from the file system on the metadata of objects and allow to scan all objects of a directory. Unfortunately, the packets in this section are the hardest to implement in a robust way as the directory contents can change while a directory scan is active, e.g. because files or directories are created or deleted.

### 12.3.1 Examining a Locked Object

The `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT` packet retrieves metadata such as file name, comment and protection bits from a lock on an object on a file system and fills a `FileInfoBlock` with this data.

**Table 102:** `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT</code> (23)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to FileLock
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to a <code>FileInfoBlock</code> structure
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `Examine()` function of the *dos.library* and retrieves metainformation on the object represented by the lock in `dp_Arg1`. This information is provided in a `FileInfoBlock` structure that is documented in section 6.1.

However, as the AmigaDOS handler design is due to historic reasons based on BCPL, small differences exist between how this packet operates and how the `Examine()` function provides its results to the caller. In specific, the `fib_FileName` and `fib_Comment` elements shall be filled with a BSTRs, i.e. the first character is the length of the file name or the comment. The conversion to a NUL-terminated C string is performed by the *dos.library*.

The elements `fib_DirEntryType` and `fib_EntryType` shall be filled with the same value as some programs check one and others the other element. In particular, the value filled in shall be taken from table 20. The value 0 shall be avoided as some programs check for directories by testing against a positive value whereas some others check for a non-negative value, i.e. accept 0 as a directory.

The fields `fib_OwnerUID` and `fib_OwnerGID` shall be set to 0, unless the file system has an idea on user and group IDs — unfortunately AmigaDOS cannot make use of these values anyhow, and it is not documented how these fields shall be interpreted; they are probably an opaque value. `fib_Reserved` shall be left alone, in particular file systems *shall not* use it to store internal state information. Such information may *only* go into `fib_DiskKey`, which is an element application programs, i.e. callers of the *dos.library*, shall not interpret.

This packet is also used to start a scan over the contents of a directory. In such a case, the examined object is the directory itself, i.e. the lock in `dp_Arg1` is on a directory. As such, the file system should prepare for a scan over this directory and potentially initialize an internal state machine.

This function returns a boolean success code in `dp_Res1`, it shall be either set to `DOSTRUE` in case information on the locked object could be retrieved and had been successfully deposited into the `FileInfoBlock` given by `dp_Arg2`, or shall be set to `DOSFALSE` in case of error. In the success case, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0, or to an error code otherwise.

### 12.3.2 Scanning Directory Contents

The `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT` continues a scan over the directory contents and delivers meta-information on the subsequent entry in a directory. Such a scan is started by an `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT` on the directory to be scanned; the first `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT` then provides information on the first entry in this directory and each subsequent packet to the corresponding next entry.

**Table 103:** `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT</code> (24)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <code>FileLock</code>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to a <code>FileInfoBlock</code> structure
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This function continues a directory scan by providing information on the next subsequent object in the directory identified by the lock in `dp_Arg1`. Meta-information on the object itself is copied into the `FileInfoBlock` structure pointed to by the BPTR in `dp_Arg2`. Similar to `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT` discussed in 12.3.1, the file name and comment shall be provided as BSTRs and not as NUL-terminated C strings. Conversion to the latter format is performed within the *dos.library*.

Unlike Unixoid file systems, AmigaDOS does not keep entries in directories that correspond to the directory itself or its parent directory, i.e. AmigaDOS file systems do not carry “.” or “..” directory entries. When parsing paths, the current directory is identified by the empty string, and the parent directory by the isolated slash (“/”).

Unfortunately, this packet is one of the hardest to implement in a file system as the directory may change while the scan is active. In particular, file systems shall handle the situation gracefully in which the object from the previous iteration identified by `fib_DiskKey` has been deleted, moved or replaced by another object, or in which `dp_Arg1` is a different lock than the lock that was used to start the scan by `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT`. The file system may only assume that the lock in `dp_Arg1` is a lock on the same directory on which the scan has been started. Similarly, `dp_Arg2` may have changed from the last iteration, and the file system shall only depend on `fib_DiskKey` and `fib_DirEntryType` being identical compared to the last iteration, all other entries can be potentially trashed or inconsistent. Thus, the file system shall only use these two elements to store state information. Also, file systems shall not depend on application programs scanning directories up to the last entry; application programs can abort a directory scan at an arbitrary point, yet file system shall release all resources required for storing state information of the scan after at least the lock on the scanned directory is released.

A possible implementation strategy is to store full state information in the lock given by `dp_Arg1`, though keep sufficient information in `fib_DiskKey` to rebuild the full information in case the lock is released and replaced during the scan. In the simplest possible case, `fib_DiskKey` could be a counter that enumerates the elements in the directory, whereas the lock contains the full state information to access the element directly. In case the lock is replaced, `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT` would find the state information in the lock missing, and would then scan forward to the element enumerated by `fib_DiskKey`. While this is less efficient than using the (now missing) state information in the lock, it will at least provide information on a valid object in the directory. Also, if an object is removed or moved out of the scanned directory, the file system would update the state information kept within the lock to the directory, though losing the lock would at least continue the scan within the directory, even though not necessary from the same object. Storing a block number (for disk-based file systems) or a pointer to an object (for RAM-based file systems) is, however, a bad strategy as the corresponding disk block or RAM location may have found other uses at the time the next object is examined. Unfortunately, such implementation defects are rather common and have been found in multiple file systems of AmigaDOS in the past.

This packet shall provide a boolean success code in `dp_Res1`. In case the next object in a directory could be successfully examined and information on it could be stored in `FileInformationBlock`, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0. In case of an error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code. In case the end of the directory has been reached and no further entries remain to be examined, this error code shall be `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`.

### 12.3.3 Examining Multiple Entries at once

The `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL` packet scans a directory supplying multiple entries at once, potentially filtering entries through a pattern or through a hook.

**Table 104:** `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL</code> (1033)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <code>FileLock</code>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	APTR to a buffer to fill
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	Size of the buffer
<code>dp_Arg4</code>	Type defining the requested entries
<code>dp_Arg5</code>	Pointer to struct <code>ExAllControl</code>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Continuation flag
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `ExAll()` function of the *dos.library* and thus takes parameters similar to the above function. Note that unlike many other packets, `dp_Arg2` and `dp_Arg5` are regular pointers and not BPTRs<sup>4</sup>. If the *file system* does not implement this packet, i.e. returns `ERROR_ACTION_NOT_KNOWN`, then the *dos.library* emulates it using `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT` and `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT`.

`dp_Arg1` is a lock on the directory to be examined.

`dp_Arg2` is a pointer to the buffer to be filled with information on the objects found in the directory, it is *not* a BPTR. This buffer is filled with a singly linked list of `ExAllData` structures, see section 6.1.4 for the definition of this structure. Only the elements requested by `dp_Arg4` are filled, remaining entries are undefined.

`dp_Arg3` is the size of the buffer provided in `dp_Arg2` in bytes.

`dp_Arg4` defines which elements of the `ExAllData` are filled. The encoding of this argument is given by table 22 in section 6.1.4.

`dp_Arg5` is a pointer to a `ExAllControl` structure, also defined in section 6.1.4. A detailed description of this structure is also provided in section 6.1.4. Note that this is really a regular pointer, not a BPTR.

The *file system* shall provide in the `eac_Entries` element of this structure the number of `ExAllData` structures it could fit into the target buffer provided by `dp_Arg2`.

It may store internal state information of the directory scanner in `eac_LastKey`. This state information could, for example, correspond to the `fib_DiskKey` in the `FileInfoBlock` identifying an element in a directory. It is zero-initialized before the first packet, and thus the *file system* may assume that a value of 0 for the key identifies the start of the scan.

If non-NULL, `eac_MatchString` is a parsed pattern as generated by the `ParsePatternNoCase()` function, see section 8.2.2. If this pattern is present, only directory entries whose name matches the pattern shall be filled into the target buffer.

`eac_MatchFunc` provides even finer control of which elements are filled into the target buffer; it supplies a `Hook` structure whose `h_Entry` function is called for each candidate directory entry. If the hook

<sup>4</sup>The information on `dp_Arg5` in [1] is incorrect, it is really a pointer and not a BPTR

returns non-zero, the `ExAllData` copied to the buffer shall be considered accepted and shall remain in the buffer; if it returns zero, this candidate entry is rejected and will be removed from the final output. Calling conventions of this hook are also described in section 6.1.4.

The same precautions as for `ACTION_EXAMINE_NEXT` hold for this packet, too. In particular, the *file system* shall be prepared for the directory to get modified between scans, by either adding, removing, renaming or moving objects out or into the directory. Using a disk block or a pointer to a structure representing a specific object as `eac_LastKey` is therefore discouraged. Similarly, `dp_Arg1` will be a lock to the same directory, though may not necessarily be the identical lock as used in the previous iteration over the same directory, only the directory that is locked may assumed to be the same. In other words, `eac_DiskKey` shall hold sufficient state information to reconstruct the point from which the scan is to be continued. What is, however, ensured is that the pointer to the `ExAllControl` structure stored in `dp_Arg5` did not change and the *file system* may depend on the pointer having the same value as on a the previous iteration over a directory. Also, *file systems* may depend on the client sending a packet of type `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END` to abort a scan before reaching the end of the directory.

This packet shall be replied with `dp_Res1` set to `DOSTRUE` if not all entries could be fit into the buffer, i.e. if `dp_Arg3` bytes were not sufficient to hold all matching directory entries and at least another iteration over the directory is necessary to supply (some of) the missing entries. In such a case, `dp_Res2` shall also be set to 0. Such an incomplete scan is either continued with another `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL` packet, or aborted by an `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END` packet.

In case the end of the directory has reached and all directory entries could be supplied, `dp_Res1` shall be set to 0, and `dp_Res2` to `ERROR_NO_MORE_ENTRIES`. In case the directory scan had been aborted due to an error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to 0 and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.3.4 Aborting a Directory Scan

The packet `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END` aborts a directory scan started with `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL` that returned with `dp_Res1` non-zero and thus indicated that the end of the directory has not yet been reached.

**Table 105:** `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END</code> (1035)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to FileLock
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	APTR to a buffer to fill
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	Size of the buffer
<code>dp_Arg4</code>	Type defining the requested entries
<code>dp_Arg5</code>	Pointer to struct <code>ExAllControl</code>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean success flag
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `ExAllEnd()` function of the *dos.library* and aborts a partial directory scan started with `ExAll()` but for which neither the end of the directory has been reached nor an error code has been received. This packet may be used by an implementing *file system* to release any temporary resources allocated for the purpose of the scan.

`dp_Arg1` is the lock on the directory on which a partial directory scan has been started. It is not necessarily the original lock passed into `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL`, but a lock on the same directory.

`dp_Arg2` and `dp_Arg3` are a pointer to a buffer and its size. This buffer, however, will not be touched and no data will be deposited there; as this buffer is not necessarily the same as the one for which the scan has been started, this information is likely not very useful, but it is provided here anyhow.



dp\_Arg4 is a type information which would define the information that would go into the buffer provided by dp\_Arg2; however, as this packet does not request to add any data to the buffer, it is probably not very helpful and *file systems* should probably ignore it as no useful decisions can be derived from what the requested information actually was.

dp\_Arg5 is a pointer to a `ExAllControl` structure, and the pointer provided here is identical to the pointer provided to `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL`. Thus, *file systems* may use this pointer value and specifically the `eac_DiskKey` element therein to release any resources related to this scan.

Before replying this packet, the *file system* shall set `dp_Res1` to a boolean success code whether it could abort the scan. If `dp_Res1` is set to `DOSTRUE` indicating that the scan was aborted successfully, then `dp_Res2` shall also be set to 0.

If the *file system* does not implement this packet, it shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to `ERROR_ACTION_NOT_KNOWN`. The *dos.library* then (attempts to) emulates this packet by setting the match pattern in the `ExAllControl` structure to a pattern that matches no entry, and then continues the scan with a `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL` packet. This would then clearly reach the end of the directory without overrunning the buffer. However, due to a defect in the *dos.library* up to the latest release, the (non-matching) pattern is a literal pattern and not a pre-parsed pattern and thus, actually, could match an entry in the directory. Thus, it is advised to always implement `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL_END` if `ACTION_EXAMINE_ALL` is implemented, even if it is just replied with success and no additional resources need to be released.

On any other error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code from `dos/dos.h`.

### 12.3.5 Examining from a File Handle

The `ACTION_EXAMINE_FH` packet provides meta data on an object identified by a *file handle* rather than a *lock*; that is, it uses the (implied) lock of the opened file to retrieve information.

**Table 106:** `ACTION_EXAMINE_FH`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_EXAMINE_FH</code> (1034)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	<code>fh_Arg1</code> of the <code>FileHandle</code>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to a <code>FileInfoBlock</code> structure
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `ExamineFH()` function of the *dos.library* and retrieves information on an object from a *file handle* rather than a *lock*.

`dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of the `FileHandle` that is to be examined and thus serves to identify the object to be examined<sup>5</sup>.

`dp_Arg2` is a BPTR to a `FileInfoBlock` structure as documented in section 6.1, and which shall be filled by the *file system* with the information on the object identified by `dp_Arg1`. As for the packet type `ACTION_EXAMINE_OBJECT` specified in section 12.3.1, the `FileInfoBlock` passed out to the caller of the *dos.library* and what the packet shall deliver differ. In specific, `fib_FileName` and `fib_Comment` shall be BSTRs with the length of the string in the zeroth element, and not NUL-terminated C strings. The conversion to C strings happens within the *dos.library*.

Before replying this packet, the *file system* shall set `dp_Res1` to a boolean result code. On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

<sup>5</sup>Note, again, that the information in [1] on `dp_Arg1` is incorrect.

---

## 12.4 Packets for Working with Links

The packets in this section interact with links; they create them, or in case of soft-links, resolve them and update a path given the link. Section 6.4 provides background information on links and on the interface within the *dos.library* for links.

### 12.4.1 Creating Links

The ACTION\_MAKE\_LINK packet creates a link in a file system.

**Table 107:** ACTION\_MAKE\_LINK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_MAKE_LINK (1021)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to a FileLock
dp_Arg2	BPTR to BSTR of the link to create
dp_Arg3	BPTR to FileLock or APTR to C-string
dp_Arg4	Type of the link, from table 24
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `MakeLink()` function of the *dos.library* and as such creates soft- or hardlinks within the *file system*.

`dp_Arg1` is a BPTR to a FileLock structure that identifies the directory within which the object is to be created.

`dp_Arg2` is a BPTR to a BSTR that provides the name of the link to be created.

`dp_Arg3` identifies the target of the link, i.e. the object the link points to. If `dp_Arg4` is LINK\_HARD, then this argument is a BPTR to a FileLock structure identifying the target. If this FileLock identifies an object on the same file system as `dp_Arg1`, then a hard link is created. If the object locked by `dp_Arg3` is a file, then the created link will represent a file, otherwise a directory.

Resolution of hard links is up to the *file system*. That is, if the link is accessed, it is up to the *file system* to locate the target of the link and access it instead of the link. Multiple implementation strategies exist for hard links: Either, each object includes a reference count that is incremented for each directory entry pointing to it, that is for each link created; likewise, this counter is decremented each time a directory entry is removed. If the counter reaches 0, the object itself is deleted.

Alternatively, each link is pointing to the linked object, and the object itself contains a list of links that reference it. If a link is deleted, it is removed from its directory and from the list of links within the target object. If the object itself is deleted, one of the links becomes the object itself and the list of links is copied from the deleted object to this link. The FFS follows (mostly for backwards compatibility) this latter approach.

If `dp_Arg4` is LINK\_HARD and the FileLock pointed to by `dp_Arg3` is on a different file system, then an external link shall be created. That is, the *file system* addressed by the packet shall create a file or directory within its own file system in the directory identified by `dp_Arg1`, and this file or directory shall mirror the contents of the link target given by `dp_Arg4` whenever the link or an object within the link is accessed; the file system shall thus implement a “copy on read” for the linked object and all objects within the linked object if this object is a directory.

If the target of such a link is deleted or an object within the linked target, the copy within the *file system* containing the link remains accessible as a regular file or directory. If no copy has been created so far, an attempt to access the linked object fails with ERROR\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND.

Currently, only the *RAM-Handler* implements this type of link, and it is there used to realize the `ENV :` assign containing all preferences settings. The external link pulls only those preferences settings into the RAM disk that are actually required, at the time they are required.

If `dp_Arg4` is `LINK_SOFT`, then `dp_Arg3` is a pointer to a NUL-terminated C string providing the target of the link. This string is interpreted as a path name relative to the location of the link source at the time the link is resolved<sup>6</sup>.

Resolution of soft links is performed within the *dos.library* or within the client application as not all functions of the library implement soft link resolution. For a list of functions that *do* implement it, see table 23.

Upon accessing a soft link, or a path containing a soft link, the *file system* shall create an error code `ERROR_IS_SOFT_LINK`. If this error is returned, the sender of a packet accessing the link — thus typically the *dos.library* itself — shall read the target of the link with the `ReadLink()` function specified in section 6.4.2. This function then again contacts the file system containing the link with a `ACTION_READ_LINK` which will construct from the link an updated path to the object.

From this follows that a *file system* is not aware whether the target of a soft link actually exists as it can only provide the path to the object, but not necessarily the object itself; in particular, soft links may cross file system boundaries. If the target of a soft link is deleted, the soft link itself remains and becomes a “dangling” link. When accessing such a link, its resolution fails with an error `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND`.

Upon replying the packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0 on success. On failure, `dp_Res2` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res1` to an error code.

## 12.4.2 Resolving a Soft Link

The `ACTION_READ_LINK` packet constructs from a path containing a soft link an updated path by inserting the target of the link.

**Table 108:** `ACTION_READ_LINK`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_READ_LINK (1024)</code>
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to a FileLock
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	APTR to C string
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	APTR to buffer
<code>dp_Arg4</code>	Buffer size
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Actual buffer size needed
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `ReadLink()` function of the *dos.library* and is used there to resolve soft links and obtain the link target. Implementing this packet correctly requires, however, some care as the soft link may be in the middle of the path provided by `dp_Arg2` and not just its last component, and the soft link itself may be an absolute or relative path. This packet needs to provide from the original path an updated path that points to the intended location relative to the location of the soft link, and not relative to `dp_Arg1`.

`dp_Arg1` is a lock to a directory in the *file system* to which this packet has been send and relative to which the path in `dp_Arg2` shall be interpreted. This *need not* to be the directory containing the link.

`dp_Arg2` is a pointer to a path name containing a soft link on this *file system*. This is, unlike in many other packets, not a BPTR to a BSTR but a pointer to a regular NUL-terminated C string.

<sup>6</sup>This is quite unusual as AmigaDOS otherwise depends on BSTR representation for packets.

---

The *file system* shall now proceed with soft link resolution as follows: Starting from the directory given by `dp_Arg1`, it shall interpret the path in `dp_Arg2` component by component as explained in section 4.3, until it finds a soft link. That is, colons (":") indicate that the scan should continue at the root directory of the volume, an isolated slash ("/") shall enter the parent directory, and all other components terminated by a slash shall be interpreted as names of directories that shall be recursively entered. This process continues until either the end of the path is found, or — and this is the purpose of this packet — a soft link is detected.

If a soft link is detected as part of the path, the target of the link as stored in the file system shall be read. Note that the link target may not only consist of an isolated file or directory name, but may well be an absolute or relative path that shall be merged with the path provided in `dp_Arg2`.

In particular, if the path stored in the soft link contains a colon (":"), and hence is an absolute path, the components parsed off from `dp_Arg2` up to the detection of the soft link shall be disregarded in order to start from the root directory. If no device or volume name is provided in the absolute link target, the *file system* shall insert the name of the current volume, and a colon, in order to provide an unambiguous anchor of the newly constructed path. The remaining of the path stored in the soft link is then concatenated to this device or volume specification. Finally, the rest of the components from `dp_Arg2` behind the component name of the soft link are concatenated to this intermediate path, forming the final link target.

If the path stored in the soft link is a relative path, then it shall be concatenated to the path from `dp_Arg2` up to the component name of the soft link at which iterating through `dp_Arg2` was interrupted. The remaining components from `dp_Arg2` behind the component name of the soft link is then attached to this intermediate path, forming the final result.

This procedure is tedious, but it ensures that the soft link is interpreted relative to the path from which the client application detected it, even if the soft link is the middle of the supplied path and not contained in the directory provided by `dp_Arg1`. Note that the above algorithm only resolves a single soft link in a path; this is intentional, the *dos.library* will send another `ACTION_READ_LINK` packet to the same or another file system if the remaining path contains additional soft links, or even in case the soft link points to another soft link. It is therefore important at the level of client application — or the *dos.library* — to detect endless loops of soft links pointing to each other. The *dos.library* aborts soft link resolution after 15 links.

`dp_Arg3` is the pointer (not a BPTR) to a target buffer into which the newly constructed path, with the soft link resolved, shall be provided as a NUL-terminated C string.

`dp_Arg4` is the size of this target buffer in bytes.

On an error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to  $-1^7$  and `dp_Res2` to an error code. In particular, if the target buffer size `dp_Arg4` is too small to hold the resolved path, `dp_Res2` shall be set to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`.

If the source path in `dp_Arg2` does actually not contain a soft link and the scanning algorithm aborted without finding one, this also constitutes an error that shall be reported by setting `dp_Res1` to  $-1$ . This error is not handled consistently in AmigaDOS. The RAM-Handler reports `ERROR_OBJECT_WRONG_TYPE`, the FFS the error code `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND`. The former error is probably more sensible.

On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to the length of the constructed path, i.e. to the length of the string in `dp_Arg3` (not including the terminating NUL), and `dp_Res2` to 0.

The following example is a skeleton code implementing the above algorithm:

```
/*
** Skeleton of an implementation of the readlink function
** lock   is from dp_Arg1 and a BPTR to a filelock
** string is from dp_Arg2 and the path containing a link
** buffer is from dp_Arg3 and the target buffer
** size   is from dp_Arg4 and the size of the buffer.
*/
```

---

<sup>7</sup> [1] recommends to set it to  $-2$  on a target buffer overflow, though currently any negative value will do. Unfortunately, even the latest version of the FFS will *not* return a negative value but 0 in case of an error; this is a defect.

---

```

LONG readlink(BPTR lock, UBYTE *string, UBYTE *buffer, ULONG size)
{
    struct node *node, *linknode;
    UBYTE *src = string;
    LONG is_dir = FALSE;
    LONG path_before;
    LONG path_pos;
    LONG res, len;
    /* Pointer to DosList of this handler, needed
    ** for the name of the volume.
    */
    extern struct DosList *volumenode;

    /*
    ** Find the object from lock and string. This is a file
    ** system internal function that need to be provided
    ** by the user.
    ** path_before is the offset of the last component
    ** of the path in the string that could be resolved
    ** successfully. If a softlink is found in the
    ** middle of the path, or some other error was found,
    ** NULL is returned.
    ** link_node is set to a pointer to a structure that
    ** represents the link.
    ** path_pos is set to the offset of the "/" behind
    ** the soft link if a soft link is in the middle.
    ** If the link is the last component of the path, then
    ** the node that represents the soft link is returned,
    ** Otherwise, the node is returned.
    */
    node = locatenode(lock, string, &path_before,
                      &linknode, &path_pos);
    if (!node) {
        if (IoErr() == ERROR_IS_SOFT_LINK) {
            is_dir = TRUE; /* remember... */
            node = linknode;
        } else {
            /* Resolution did not work for some
            ** other error. Return an error.
            */
            return -1;
        }
    }

    /*
    ** Check whether the found object is a softlink
    */
    if (node->type != ST_SOFTLINK) {
        res2 = ERROR_OBJECT_WRONG_TYPE;
        return -1;
    }
}

```

```

/*
** Check whether the link is in the middle or the end of
** the path.
*/
if (is_dir) {
    /* must deal with '/' and ':' correctly in the soft link
    ** code below counts on these assigns!
    */
    string = string + path_pos;
    len = strlen(string) + 1;          /* + 1 for slash */
} else {
    len = 0; /* softlink is last part of string */
}

/*
** Check whether there is sufficient room in the
** target buffer.
*/
if (node->size + 1 + path_before + len >= size) {
    res2 = ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG;
    return -2;
}

/*
** Copy the head of the link resolution path to the
** target buffer, ready to append the contents of
** the link.
*/
memcpy(buffer, src, path_before);

/*
** copy the target of the soft link into the buffer behind
** the path of the link as zero-terminated C string.
** This function also need to be provided by the
** implementation of the file system. It returns
** the size of the soft link as result, or -1 on error.
*/
res = readsoftlink(node, buffer + path_before, size - path_before);
if (res < 0)
    return res; /* Deliver the error */

/*
** If the link is absolute, i.e. contains a ':', then ignore the
** start of the string. 'res' is the length of the link location.
*/
src = strchr(buffer + path_before, ':');
if (src) {
    /* Yes, is absolute. First check whether it is ":", thus
    ** whether it refers to this volume.
    */

```

```

if (src == buffer + path_before) {
    /* Is relative to our root, but not necessarily
    ** to the root of the caller, so fix up.
    */
    char *volname = (char *)BADDR(volumenode->dl_Name);
    LONG len      = *volname; /* It's a BSTR */
    /* Check whether there is enough buffer */
    if (len + res >= size) {
        SetIoErr(ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG);
        return -2;
    } else {
        /* Move soft link behind the volume name,
        ** note that the softlink is ":" here and
        ** the ":" becomes part of the volume name.
        */
        memmove(buffer + len, buffer + path_before, res + 1);
        /* Prepend the volume name */
        memcpy(buffer, volname + 1, len);
        res += len;
    }
} else {
    /* Here the link is absolute to a given volume
    ** so move the soft link behind the volume name
    */
    memmove(buffer, buffer + path_before, res + 1);
}
}

/* add on the rest of the path behind
** the soft link if it sits in the middle
*/
if (is_dir) {
    if (!AddPart(buffer, string, size)) {
        SetIoErr(ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG);
        return -2;
    }
}

/*
** The result is the length of the path created
*/
return strlen(buffer);
}

```

## 12.5 Packets for Adjusting Metadata

Packets in this section change metadata associated with file system objects, such as name, comment, creation date or protection flags.

### 12.5.1 Renaming or Moving Objects

The `ACTION_RENAME_OBJECT` changes the name of an object such as a file, directory or a link, and relocates it within the directory tree of a volume.

**Table 109:** `ACTION_RENAME_OBJECT`

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	<code>ACTION_RENAME_OBJECT</code> (17)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to source FileLock
dp_Arg2	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Arg3	BPTR to target FileLock
dp_Arg4	BPTR to BSTR of the target path
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `Rename()` function of the *dos.library* and relocates and renames objects within the directory structure of a volume. This packet cannot relocate across volumes, i.e. `dp_Arg1` and `dp_Arg3` are locks to objects within the same volume, and `dp_Arg2` and `dp_Arg4` represent paths within this volume.

`dp_Arg1` represents the directory to which the source `dp_Arg2` is relative to.

`dp_Arg2` is the path of the original object location. This path need not to consist of a single component, though the object to rename or relocate is the last component of this path. The *file system* needs to walk the provided path, starting from `dp_Arg1`, to identify the object that is to be renamed or moved.

`dp_Arg3` is the directory to which the target path `dp_Arg4` is relative to.

`dp_Arg4` is the target path of the object, relative to `dp_Arg3`.

Several cases for renaming exist the *file system* shall consider: If the last component does not yet exist within the file system, the object identified by `dp_Arg1` and `dp_Arg2` shall be moved into the directory represented by the second to last component of `dp_Arg4` starting from `dp_Arg3`, or directly into `dp_Arg3` if `dp_Arg4` only consists of a single component, and shall be renamed to the last component of the path in `dp_Arg4`.

If the object identified by `dp_Arg3` and the path in `dp_Arg4` does already exist and represents a directory, the object shall be moved *into* this directory, retaining its original name.

If the last component does already exist and is a file, and this file is different from the source object, an error shall be generated. Renaming a file or directory to itself, or to a file name that only differs in case shall, however, be accepted, and shall adjust its case (i.e. changing letters in its name to lower or upper case is permissible).

Particular care needs to be taken if the object to be relocated is a directory. In such a case, the *file system* shall test whether an attempt is made to move the object into itself, i.e. into one of the subdirectories of its own. As this would render the directory unreachable, an error shall be generated.

Before replying the packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.5.2 Deleting an Object

The `ACTION_DELETE_OBJECT` removes an object from a directory, releasing the storage it occupies.



**Table 110:** ACTION\_DELETE\_OBJECT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_DELETE_OBJECT (16)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Arg2	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `DeleteFile()` function of the *dos.library*, which can delete files, directories and links.

`dp_Arg1` is a lock to the directory to which the path in `dp_Arg2` is relative. The `DeleteFile()` function fills it with the current directory of the calling process.

`dp_Arg2` is the path to the object to be deleted. The path can contain multiple components, in which case the file system need to walk the path starting at `dp_Arg1` until reaching its last component which is the object to be deleted. If the target is a directory, the *file system* shall check, in addition, if the directory is empty, and if not so, refuse to delete it.

Before replying the packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. In case of success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.5.3 Changing the Protection Bits

The `ACTION_SET_PROTECT` changes the protection bits of a file system object.

**Table 111:** ACTION\_SET\_PROTECT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SET_PROTECT (21)
dp_Arg2	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Arg3	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Arg4	New protection bits
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetProtection()` function of the *dos.library*; it changes the protection bits of an object on the file system to that given in `dp_Arg4`. For the definition of protection bits, see section 6.1, table 21. Some *file systems* may support only a subset of all protection bits, or may not be able to carry them on all objects, such as directories; in such a case, they may ignore the request, or may only implement a subset of all bits.

`dp_Arg2` is a lock of a directory which the path in `dp_Arg3` is relative to<sup>8</sup>.

`dp_Arg3` is a path relative to `dp_Arg2` whose last component is the object whose protection bits are to be changed.

`dp_Arg4` are the new protection bits as specified in table 21. Note that the first four bits are shown inverted by most system tools such as the `List` command.

Before replying to this packet, the *file system* shall set `dp_Res1` to a boolean result code. On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

<sup>8</sup>This not a typo, `dp_Arg1` is really unused

## 12.5.4 Setting the Comment to an Object

The ACTION\_SET\_COMMENT packet changes, adds or removes a comment on a file system object such as a directory, file or link.

**Table 112:** ACTION\_SET\_COMMENT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SET_COMMENT (28)
dp_Arg2	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Arg3	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Arg4	BPTR to BSTR of comment
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetComment()` function of the *dos.library* and as such changes, adds or removes a comment on a file, directory or link. Not all file systems will support this request, or may only support comments on a subset of objects.

dp\_Arg2 represents a directory relative to which the path in dp\_Arg3 shall be interpreted.

dp\_Arg3 is the path relative to dp\_Arg2 of the object whose comment is to be changed.

dp\_Arg4 is a BPTR to a BSTR of the new comment to be set. If this string is empty, the comment will be removed.

Before replying to this packet, the *file system* shall set dp\_Res1 to a boolean result code. On success, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0. On error, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

## 12.5.5 Setting the Creation Date of an Object

The ACTION\_SET\_DATE packet sets the creation date of an object on a file system.

**Table 113:** ACTION\_SET\_DATE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SET_DATE (34)
dp_Arg2	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Arg3	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Arg4	BPTR to DateStamp structure
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetFileDate()` function of the *dos.library* and sets the creation date of an object on a file system. Not all *file systems* will support this packet, or may only support it with reduced precision of the date.

dp\_Arg2 represents a directory relative to which the path in dp\_Arg3 is interpreted<sup>9</sup>.

dp\_Arg3 is the path of the object whose creation date is to be changed. This path shall be interpreted relative to dp\_Arg2, and its last component is the object whose creation date shall be changed.

dp\_Arg4 is a BPTR to a DateStamp structure as specified in section 3 and defines the target date to install for the object.

Before replying to this packet, the *file system* shall set dp\_Res1 to a boolean result code. On success, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0. On error, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

<sup>9</sup>The information in [1] is incorrect, and dp\_Arg1 is, indeed, unused.

## 12.5.6 Setting the Owner of an Object

The ACTION\_SET\_OWNER packet sets the owner and group ID of an object in a file system.

**Table 114:** ACTION\_SET\_OWNER

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SET_OWNER (1036)
dp_Arg2	BPTR to FileLock
dp_Arg3	BPTR to BSTR of the object path
dp_Arg4	Owner information
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetOwner()` function of the *dos.library* and is supposed to set a group and user ID of an object in a file system; the actual encoding of this information is specific to the *file system* and not defined by the *dos.library* or the packet. `dp_Arg4` is a literal copy of the second argument of `SetOwner()`. Note further that most if not all AmigaDOS *file systems* do not implement this packet, and as AmigaDOS is not a multi-user system, the value of this packet is questionable.

`dp_Arg2` represents a directory relative to which the path in `dp_Arg3` is interpreted.

`dp_Arg3` is the path of the object whose owner information is to be changed. This path shall be interpreted relative to `dp_Arg2`.

`dp_Arg4` is a *file system* specific owner information; the *dos.library* does not define its meaning. This argument is a verbatim copy of the second argument of `SetOwner()`.

Before replying to this packet, the *file system* shall set `dp_Res1` to a boolean result code. On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.6 Packets for Starting and Canceling Notification Requests

The packets in this section implement notification requests. Once a notification request has been registered, the file system informs a task through a signal or through a message send to a port. Notification requests are explained in section 6.5.

### 12.6.1 Registering a Notification Request

The ACTION\_ADD\_NOTIFY packet registers a notification request at a file system.

**Table 115:** ACTION\_ADD\_NOTIFY

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_ADD_NOTIFY (4097)
dp_Arg1	APTR to NotifyRequest structure
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `StartNotify()` function of the *dos.library*, registering a request at a *file system* to get informed on changes within the file system.

`dp_Arg1` is a C pointer<sup>10</sup> to a `NotifyRequest` structure that defines the object to be monitored, and the task, signal or message port to be triggered on such changes. This structure is specified in section 6.5.1.

<sup>10</sup>In [1] this argument is documented to be a BPTR, though this information incorrect.

The `nr_FullName` element of the `NotifyRequest` structure is already filled by an absolute path to the object to be monitored which may or may not yet exist. This path is filled in by the *dos.library* within the `StartNotify()` function from the `nr_Name` element and the current directory of the calling process, and the *file system* may depend on this path.

The *file system* should store this request in its internal structures, and then monitor the object identified by `nr_FullName` for changes. The following table lists the packets which shall or may trigger a notification request upon a monitored object:

**Table 116: Packets triggering a Notification**

Packet	Notes
<code>ACTION_WRITE</code>	After closing the file with <code>ACTION_END</code>
<code>ACTION_SET_FILE_SIZE</code>	After closing the file with <code>ACTION_END</code>
<code>ACTION_FINDOUTPUT</code>	After closing the file with <code>ACTION_END</code>
<code>ACTION_DELETE_OBJECT</code>	Immediately
<code>ACTION_SET_DATE</code>	Immediately
<code>ACTION_RENAME</code>	Immediately
<code>ACTION_SET_COMMENT</code>	Optionally
<code>ACTION_SET_PROTECT</code>	Optionally
<code>ACTION_SET_OWNER</code>	Optionally

If the `NRF_NOTIFY_INITIAL` flag is set in `nr_Flags`, the *file system* shall send a notification immediately after receiving this packet, regardless of whether or not the object has been modified already. If `NRF_WAIT_REPLY` is set, and a `NotifyMessage` has already been send out, it shall rather note the modification, though defer any further notification on the same object until the former `NotifyMessage` has been replied. This avoids queuing up too many notifications at the client port.

A notification event is either signalled through `Signal()` or by sending a message to a `MsgPort`:

If `NRF_SEND_MESSAGE` is set in `nr_Flags`, then a `NotifyMessage` is send to the port indicated in `nr_Msg.nr_Port`. This structure is also specified in section 6.5.1. Its `nm_Class` element shall be set to `NOTIFY_CLASS`, and its `nm_Code` element to `NOTIFY_CODE`, both are defined in `dos/notify.h`. In addition, `nm_NReq` shall point to the `NotifyRequest` structure through which the object is monitored. The elements `nm_DoNotTouch` and `nm_DoNotTouch2` may be used for internal administration of the *file system*.

If `NRF_SEND_SIGNAL` is set, then the *file system* should trigger a signal bit on the target task if the monitored object changes by

```
Signal(nr->nr_Signal.nr_Task, 1UL<<nr->nr_Signal.nr_SignalNum);
```

For this method, `NRF_WAIT_REPLY` is, of course, non-functional.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.6.2 Canceling a Notification Request

The `ACTION_REMOVE_NOTIFY` packet cancels a notification request and aborts monitoring the object in the `NotifyRequest` structure.

**Table 117:** ACTION\_REMOVE\_NOTIFY

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_REMOVE_NOTIFY (4097)
dp_Arg1	APTR to NotifyRequest structure
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `EndNotify()` function of the *dos.library* and terminates monitoring the object in `nr_FullName` element of the `NotifyRequest` structure.

`nr_Arg1` is a C-pointer to the structure that indicates which notification request shall be canceled. The `NotifyRequest` structure is specified in section 6.5.1.

If any notifications are still pending, e.g. because the monitored object has already been changed through a file handle though this file handle has not yet been closed, such pending notifications shall be canceled as well. The *file system* shall be aware that even after this packet has been replied, some `NotifyMessages` send out to clients may come back because the client is still working on them. In particular, the memory associated to such messages shall not be released upon receiving the `ACTION_REMOVE_NOTIFY` packet, but only after the `NotifyMessage` has been replied and was received again by the *file system*. The *dos.library* replies all `NotifyMessages` it finds still pending in the port of the client application, but clearly cannot handle those messages that are still being processed.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.7 Packets Operating on Entire Volumes

The packets in this section impact the volume mounted on a *file system* in total and do not interact with individual objects, such as files, directories or links on it.

### 12.7.1 Determining the Currently Inserted Volume

The packet `ACTION_CURRENT_VOLUME` determines from a *FileHandle* a BPTR to the `DosList` structure representing the volume on which the file is located.

**Table 118:** ACTION\_CURRENT\_VOLUME

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_CURRENT_VOLUME (7)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of a FileHandle or ZERO
dp_Res1	BPTR to DosList structure
dp_Res2	0

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, but it used by it when constructing an error requester through its `ErrorReport()` function. If an error is generated by a function taking a *FileHandle* as argument, this function is used to determine the `DosList` entry representing the volume. From there, the name is copied into the requester, for example to ask the user to insert it.

`dp_Arg1` shall be filled with a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of a `FileHandle` structure, or shall be ZERO. If a handle is provided, a BPTR to the `DosList` of the volume the handle is located on shall be provided in `dp_Res1`. In such case, the packet is safe as the volume entry cannot go away as long as the lock implicit to the handle uses it<sup>11</sup>.

<sup>11</sup>In [1], `dp_Arg1` is not mentioned, though providing it is important to avoid a race condition. The RAM-Handler is probably an exception as it only maintains a single volume that cannot go away during its lifetime.

If `dp_Arg1` is ZERO, a BPTR to the `DosList` of the currently inserted volume, or ZERO if no volume is inserted, shall be returned. Unfortunately, as the volume may be ejected any time, it is unclear whether the `DosList` entry provided in `dp_Res1` is still valid at the time it is interpreted by the issuer of this packet. In such a case, the issuer of the packet should lock the *device list* upfront, and should copy the name before the list is unlocked again, i.e.

```
char name[256];
struct DosList *dl;

LockDosList(LDF_VOLUMES|LDF_READ);
dl = (struct DosList *)BADDR(DoPkt0(port,ACTION_CURRENT_VOLUME));
if (dl) {
    /* dol_Name is always a 0-terminated BSTR */
    strncpy(name,dl->dol_Name + 1,sizeof(name));
    name[sizeof(name)-1] = 0;
} else name[0] = 0;
UnlockDosList(LDF_VOLUMES|LDF_READ);
```

The *file system* shall set `dp_Res1` to a BPTR to the `DosList` entry representing a volume, i.e. an entry on the device list whose `dol_Type` is `DLT_VOLUME` and whose `dol_Task` points to a `MsgPort` of this *handler*. In case no volume is inserted, `dp_Res1` shall be set to ZERO. This packet shall not fail, and `dp_Res2` is ignored by the *dos.library*. For practical purposes, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0 indicating that no error has been detected.

## 12.7.2 Retrieving Information on a Volume from a Lock

The `ACTION_INFO` packet retrieves information on a volume, given a lock on an object on the volume, and provides it in an `InfoData` structure.

**Table 119:** ACTION\_INFO

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_INFO</code> (26)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <code>FileLock</code>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	BPTR to <code>InfoData</code>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `Info()` function of the *dos.library* and provides information on the volume on which the locked object is located.

`dp_Arg1` is a BPTR to a lock, used to identify a volume from which information is to be requested. If the volume is not inserted, not validated or the lock is invalid, this packet will fail.

`dp_Arg2` is a BPTR to an `InfoData` structure as defined in section 5.2.4 into which information is provided such as the state of the volume, the number of errors detected on it, its capacity and the number of free blocks. Details on this structure are found in section 5.2.4.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator that includes the result of the validity test of the lock. If the lock is valid and information on the volume could be retrieved, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.7.3 Retrieving Information on the Currently Inserted Volume

The ACTION\_DISK\_INFO packet retrieves information on the volume currently mounted by the *file system* (if any) and provides this information in an InfoData structure.

**Table 120:** ACTION\_DISK\_INFO

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_DISK_INFO (25)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to InfoData
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is currently not exposed by the *dos.library* and must be issued through the packet interface. It is almost identical to ACTION\_INFO, except that it does not take a lock as argument. Therefore, it always refers to the currently inserted volume, and not to the volume the locked object is located on. Otherwise, the information provided by this packet and ACTION\_INFO is identical.

This packet is also used to retrieve console specific information from the Con-Handler, and is documented as such again in section 11.3. The elements of the InfoData are then interpreted in an alternative way.

dp\_Arg1 is a BPTR to an InfoData structure as defined in section 5.2.4 into which information is provided such as the state of the currently inserted volume, the number of errors detected on it, its capacity and the number of free blocks. Details on this structure are found in section 5.2.4.

Upon replying this packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0. On failure, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

### 12.7.4 Relabeling a Volume

The ACTION\_RENAME\_DISK packet changes the volume name of a medium.

**Table 121:** ACTION\_RENAME\_DISK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_RENAME_DISK (9)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to BSTR of new volume name
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the Relabel() function of the *dos.library* and changes the volume name of a medium. As such, it shall also change the name of the DosList representing the volume in the *device list*, i.e. adjust the dol\_Name element of the DosList structure. Unfortunately, there is no guarantee that the volume that is inserted in the drive or partition managed by the file system when this packet is issued by the client is identical to the volume in the drive when the file system receives it.

dp\_Arg1 is a BPTR to a BSTR of the new volume name. Relabeling shall be applied on the currently inserted volume.

Before replying this packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 shall be set to 0. On failure, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

---

### 12.7.5 Initializing a New File System

The ACTION\_FORMAT packet initializes a new file system on a disk, writing all administration information on it represting a blank volume. It therefore deletes all information stored previously on the medium, drive or partition.

**Table 122:** ACTION\_FORMAT

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_FORMAT (1020)
dp_Arg1	BPTR to BSTR of new volume name
dp_Arg2	Dos type or other private data
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `Format()` function of the *dos.library*. It performs a soft-initialization of the drive, medium or partition currently inserted into the drive. Note, however, that it does not perform a low-level formatting, such as creating sectors on a floppy disk or issuing a low-level SCSI command. If this is intended, it must be performed by a client application, e.g. the `Format` command of the workbench disk. This packet only writes administrative information on a volume representing it in empty state. This packet is probably the only one that should be used while a *file system* is inhibited and would usually refuse to alter any information on disk, see also section 12.9.2.

`dp_Arg1` is a BPTR to a BSTR of the volume name the medium, partition or drive shall be given<sup>12</sup>. Typically, this packet will be issued while the drive is inhibited, and thus the `DosList` structure representing the volume will be created or updated at the time the *file system* is uninhibited. Otherwise, if the handler also allows an ACTION\_FORMAT while not being inhibited, it should update the `DosList` immediately, in particular its `dol_Name`, to the name given by this argument.

`dp_Arg2` is *file system* specific information that may be used to define its flavour. For example, `dp_Arg2` carries for the FFS the `DosType`, which shall be one of the values documented in table 28 in section 7.1.3. If such a change of the `DosType` also happens, and the handler allows formatting while not being inhibited, the `de_DosType` in the environment vector linked through `dol_DosType` shall be updated as well. Otherwise, this update will happen when the *file system* is uninhibited. The `Format()` function will take `dp_Arg2` from its third argument.

Before replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.7.6 Make a Copied Disk Unique

The ACTION\_SERIALIZE\_DISK packet serializes a disk, that is, ensures that the disk is unique and distinguishable from other media available to the system.

**Table 123:** ACTION\_SERIALIZE\_DISK

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SERIALIZE_DISK (4200)
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

---

<sup>12</sup>The information in [1] that the new volume name is in `dp_Arg2` and the `DosType` is in `dp_Arg3` is incorrect.



This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*. The packet interface e.g. `DoPkt()`, needs to be used to issue it. The purpose of this packet is to ensure that the volume inserted in a drive is unique and distinguishable from other volumes. Along with `ACTION_FORMAT`, this packet should be issued while the file system is inhibited, see sections 7.7.4 and 12.9.2.

This packet does not take any arguments, it affects the currently inserted volume. The FFS implements this packet by setting the volume creation date to the system date; other file systems can include volume IDs or other means to uniquely label disks. The `DiskCopy` command of the workbench uses this packet after performing its job to ensure that the copy of a disk is distinguishable from its original.

Before replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.7.7 Write Protecting a Volume

The `ACTION_WRITE_PROTECT` packet enables or disables a software write-protection on the currently inserted medium, thus disallowing any write access through the file system on it.

**Table 124:** `ACTION_WRITE_PROTECT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_WRITE_PROTECT (1023)</code>
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	Write protection flag
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	Password hash
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is not exposed by any function of the *dos.library*, though the `Lock` command of the workbench uses it to enable or disable write protection on media. Optionally, write protection may be secured by a password of which only an integer hash key is provided to the file system. To re-enable write access, the file system shall check whether the password hash supplied matches the one when setting the write protection, and shall refuse to unblock it if the password hash keys do not match. How a password hash is computed is irrelevant to the file system, it only checks the keys for enabling and disabling the write protection for equality.

`dp_Arg1` is a boolean indicator that, if non-zero, enables write protection, and if `DOSFALSE` releases it. Any attempt to write data to the protected medium, device or partition shall fail with the error code `ERROR_DISK_WRITE_PROTECTED`, including an attempt to set a write protection on an already write protected file system, regardless of the password key used for re-protection.

`dp_Arg2` is an integer password hash key that is stored internally in the file system when the write protection is set, and compared against if it is to be released again. If the stored password hash is not equal to the original hash, attempting to release the protection shall fail with `ERROR_INVALID_COMPONENT_NAME`.

Before replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.8 Packets for Interactive Handlers

The packet types documented in this section are specific for handlers that interact with the environment of the computer system. Examples for interactive handlers are the `Con-Handler` interacting with the user through a window, the `Aux-Handler` which makes a console available through the serial port, and the `Port-Handler` which reads and writes data through the serial or parallel port and also makes the printer accessible to AmigaDOS.

### 12.8.1 Waiting for Input Becoming Available

The packet ACTION\_WAIT\_CHAR waits for characters becoming available on an interactive *handler*.

**Table 125:** ACTION\_WAIT\_CHAR

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_WAIT_CHAR (20)
dp_Arg1	Timeout in ticks
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `WaitForChar()` function of the *dos.library*. As such, it checks whether (interactive) input is available to satisfy a potential `Read()`. Note that this packet does not receive an indicator of a file handle, thus even if input is available, it is not specified which ACTION\_READ packet will receive the available data.

`dp_Arg1` provides the timeout in ticks, where a tick is 20ms long, see also section 3.

This packet instructs the handler to wait at most `dp_Arg1` ticks. If no input becomes available within this time period, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to 0.

If at least a single character of input becomes available, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE`. If the handler implements line buffering such as the Con-Handler, then `dp_Res2` shall be set to the number of lines available in the output buffer. This feature is, for example, used by the ARexx interpreter. If it does not implement line buffering, `dp_Res2` should be set to 0.

In case of an error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.8.2 Setting the Line Buffer Mode

The ACTION\_SCREEN\_MODE packet changes the buffer mode of an interactive console and disables or enables line buffering.

**Table 126:** ACTION\_SCREEN\_MODE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SCREEN_MODE (994)
dp_Arg1	Buffer mode
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet implements the `SetMode()` function of the *dos.library*. `dp_Arg1` is a copy of the second argument of this function.

The purpose of this packet is to adjust the buffer mode of a console. The CON-Handler, responsible for all types of consoles, serves both the CON:, the RAW: and (through an indirection layer) the AUX: device, all of which are incarnations of the same handler configured differently; the CON-Handler described in section 11.3.

In particular, CON: and RAW: interact with the user through a window of the graphical user interface; they are just two modes of the in total three modes of the console. With this packet, a CON: window can be converted into a RAW: window and vice-versa, and into a third type of window for which no distinct device name exists.

The same type of mode switch can also be performed for the serial terminal represented by the AUX: window, which also exists in three modes in total, though usually only one of them is exposed to the user as AUX: device. This packet makes two additional configurations available.

`dp_Arg1` defines the mode into which the console shall be switched. In total three modes are available, regardless whether the console is a graphical console in a window or a serial console on an external terminal. The modes are defined in table 12 in section 4.10.3.

Only values between 0 and 2 shall be provided in `dp_Arg1`; all other values are reserved for future use and may or may not correspond to modes that are currently not documented. The console does not generate an error if an invalid mode is requested, but may interpret this mode change request in an unexpected way.

Before replying this packet, the console shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0 in case the mode switch could be performed. Otherwise, if the mode switch is not possible, the console shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.8.3 Retrieving IORequest and the Window Pointer from the Console

The `ACTION_DISK_INFO` packet retrieves from a console pointers to its underlying resources.

**Table 127:** `ACTION_DISK_INFO`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_DISK_INFO</code> (25)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	BPTR to <code>InfoData</code>
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*; it is the same packet as the one introduced in section 12.7.3 and takes the same parameters. However, when applied to consoles, it returns additional information and is thus discussed here again.

The `id_DiskType` element of the `InfoData` structure (see section 5.2.4) pointed to by `dp_Arg1` provides information on the mode the console is in:

**Table 128:** `id_DiskType`

Value of <code>id_DiskType</code>	Console Mode
<code>'CON\0'</code>	Cooked or medium mode
<code>'RAW\0'</code>	Raw mode

Section 11.3 provides more information on console modes; they describe whether the console buffers entire lines and which key presses are reported how.

The `id_VolumeNode` element of the `InfoData` structure provided in `dp_Arg1` is filled with a pointer to the intuition window the console runs in. For a serial console, or a console running on any other device, this element remains `NULL`.

The `id_InUse` element is filled with a pointer to the `IORequest` structure (see `exec/io.h`) which is used to communicate with the device the handler operates on. For a graphical console, this is a `IORequest` to the `console.device`; for the `AUX:` console, it is an `IORequest` to the corresponding device the console runs on, e.g. of the `serial.device`. Other devices are also possible.

Even though this packet provides useful information to the caller, it has several drawbacks and its usage is discouraged. First, as it potentially provides information on the intuition window, a window opened in `AUTO` mode cannot be closed anymore, and neither can be iconified. This is because both operations would invalidate the window pointer provided by this packet.

Applications should inform the console by sending an `ACTION_UNDISK_INFO` packet at the time the window pointer or the `IORequest` is no longer required. Console windows then regain the `AUTO` and iconification capabilities. `ACTION_UNDISK_INFO` is specified in section 12.8.4.

---

Second, ACTION\_DISK\_INFO will not provide a window if the console is not running in an intuition window, but remotely over a serial line or any other device. The IORequest pointer then corresponds to the target device over which the console communicates with the user, and not the console.device.

Often, applications (mis-)use this packet to retrieve the current cursor position or the dimensions of the window in character positions, assuming that the IORequest pointer in id\_InUse is, actually, corresponding to a console.device and as such io\_Unit of the request is a pointer to a ConUnit. However, this assumption may not be true, and console dimensions and the cursor position cannot be obtained in general in this way.

The following algorithm provides an alternative by switching the console to RAW mode, and requesting the required information through CSI sequences. These sequences operate independent of the device and only require that the local or remote console implements a VT-100 compatible interface.

```
/* Retrieve the window dimensions in characters
** from a console connected to a file handle "file"
*/
void WindowSize(BPTR file, LONG *width, LONG *height)
{
    if (!ParsePosition(file, 'r', width, height)) {
        /* Provide a standard console size in
        ** case of failure.
        */
        if (width)
            *width = 80;
        if (height)
            *height = 24;
    }
}

/* Retrieve the cursor position from a console
** connected to a file handle "file"
*/
void CursorPosition(LONG *x, LONG *y)
{
    ParsePosition(stdOut, 'R', x, y);
}

/*
** Maximum time to wait for the console
** to respond in ticks. May require
** adjustment on slow connections.
*/
#define MAX_DELAY      200000

/* Generic CSI sequence parser for a VT-xxx
** console. Returns TRUE if the sequence could
** be parsed.
*/
BOOL ParsePosition(BPTR file, char answer, LONG *width, LONG *height)
{
    BOOL success;
    BOOL incsi, innum, negative, inesc;
```

---

```

LONG counter;
LONG args[5];
UBYTE in;

memset(args,0,sizeof(args));
SetMode(file,1);

success  = TRUE;
incsi    = FALSE;
inesc    = FALSE;
innum    = FALSE;
negative = FALSE;
counter  = 0;

/* Now send a window borders request to the stream */
if (answer == 'R') {
    Write(file,"\033[6n",4);
} else {
    Write(file,"\033[0 q",5);
}

/* Now parse an incoming string */
for(;;) {
    if (WaitForChar(file,MAX_DELAY) == FALSE) {
        success = FALSE;
        break;
    }

    if (Read(file,&in,1) != 1) {
        success = FALSE;
        break;
    }

    if (incsi) {
        if ((in<' ') || (in>'~')) { /* Invalid sequence? */
            incsi = FALSE;
        } else if ((in>='0') && (in<='9')) {
            /* Valid number? */
            if (innum == FALSE) {
                innum = TRUE;
                args[counter] = 0;
            }
            args[counter] = args[counter]*10+in-'0';
        } else {
            /* Abort parsing the number. Install its sign */
            if (innum) {
                if (negative)
                    args[counter] = -args[counter];
                innum = FALSE;
                negative = FALSE;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

if ((in>='@') && (in<='~')) { /* End of sequence? */
    /* Is it a bounds report? */
    if ((in=='r') && (answer=='r') && (counter==3)) {
        if (height)
            *height = args[2]-args[0]+1;
        if (width)
            *width = args[3]-args[1]+1;
        break;
    }
    /* Is it a cursor report? */
    if ((in=='R') && (answer=='R') && (counter==1)) {
        if (height)
            *height = args[0];
        if (width)
            *width = args[1];
        break;
    }
    incsi = FALSE; /* Abort sequence */
} else if (in==';') { /* Argument separator? */
    counter++;
    /* Do not parse more than 5 arguments,
    ** throw everything else away
    */
    if (counter>4) counter=4;
    innum = FALSE;
    negative = FALSE;
} else if (in=='-') {
    if (innum)
        incsi = FALSE; /* minus sign in the middle is invalid */
    negative = ~negative;
} else if (in==' ') {
    /* Ignore SPC prefix */
} else {
    /* Abort the sequence */
    incsi = FALSE;
}
}
} else if (inesc) {
    if (in == '[') {
        inesc = FALSE;
        incsi = TRUE; /* found a CSI sequence */
        innum = FALSE; /* but not yet a valid number */
        negative = FALSE;
        counter = 0;
        args[0] = args[1]=args[2]=args[3]=args[4] = 1;
    } else if ((in >= ' ') && (in <= '/')) {
        /* ignore the ESC sequence contents */
    } else {
        inesc = FALSE; /* terminate the ESC sequence */
    }
} else if (in == 0x9B) {

```

```

        incsi      = TRUE;    /* found a CSI sequence */
        innum      = FALSE;   /* but not yet a valid number */
        negative   = FALSE;
        counter    = 0;
        args[0]    = args[1]=args[2]=args[3]=args[4] = 1;
    } else if (in == 0x1B) {
        inesc      = TRUE;    /* found an ESC sequence */
    } /* Everything else is thrown away */
}

SetMode(file,0);
return success;
}

```

The above algorithm supports both 7-bit and 8-bit consoles and is aware of the 7-bit two-character equivalent of CSI.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

#### 12.8.4 Releasing Console Resources

The `ACTION_UNDISK_INFO` packet releases any resources obtained by `ACTION_DISK_INFO`.

**Table 129:** `ACTION_UNDISK_INFO`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_UNDISK_INFO</code> (513)
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, the packet needs to be issued through the `DoPkt()` function.

The purpose of this packet is to let the console know that the pointers to the window and the `IORequest` provided by `ACTION_DISK_INFO` are no longer needed and the console may close the window or release the `IORequest` if needed. This has the the practical consequence that AUTO windows can be closed again, and the console can also be iconified again.

To implement this packet, the console should keep a counter to track the number of times its resources have been provided to clients. An `ACTION_DISK_INFO` increments it, and `ACTION_UNDISK_INFO` decrements it. As long as the counter is non-zero, the window shall be open and the connection to the device implementing the console functionality shall be established. This includes that the window needs to be forced open on the first `ACTION_DISK_INFO` if it is closed, either by iconification or because it is an AUTO window that was closed by the user.

This packet does not take any arguments. Even though there is practically no reason why this packet could fail, the console handler shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0 on success. On an error, if such an error should be possible, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

#### 12.8.5 Stack a Line at the Top of the Output Buffer

The `ACTION_STACK` packet injects a line at the start of the output buffer of the console.

**Table 130: ACTION\_STACK**

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_STACK (2002)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of a FileHandle
dp_Arg2	APTR to characters
dp_Arg3	Size of the buffer in bytes
dp_Res1	Number of characters stacked
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, it rather needs to be issued through the packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`. This packet injects a line at the end of the output buffer of the console. This buffer keeps all lines entered by the user, and lines injected by ACTION\_STACK and ACTION\_QUEUE. The number of lines in this output buffer can be obtained through ACTION\_WAIT\_CHAR which delivers the line count in `dp_Res2`.

Lines from this buffer are provided to clients on ACTION\_READ packets that empty this buffer line by line. Thus, a line provided through this packet will be delivered to the next reading client, before any other buffered lines, but after user input.

Lines injected into the console output buffer are not echoed on the screen. Arexx uses this packet to employ the console as “external stack”. This packet places a line at the top of this stack.

`dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of a `FileHandle` structure interfacing to the console.

`dp_Arg2` is a C pointer (not a BPTR) to an array of characters to be injected into the output buffer of the console.

`dp_Arg3` is the size of the buffer in characters.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to the number of characters that could be stacked in the output buffer of the console, or to `-1` in case of failure. On success, `dp_Res2` shall be set to `0`, or to an error code on failure.

### 12.8.6 Queue a Line at the End of the Output Buffer

The ACTION\_QUEUE packet injects a line at the end of the output buffer of the console.

**Table 131: ACTION\_QUEUE**

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_QUEUE (2003)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of a FileHandle
dp_Arg2	APTR to characters
dp_Arg3	Size of the buffer in bytes
dp_Res1	Number of characters stacked
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, it rather needs to be issued through the packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`. This packet injects a line at the end of the output buffer of the console. This buffer keeps all lines entered by the user, and lines injected by ACTION\_STACK and ACTION\_QUEUE. The number of lines in this output buffer can be obtained through ACTION\_WAIT\_CHAR which delivers the line count in `dp_Res2`.

Lines from this buffer are provided to clients on ACTION\_READ packets that empty this buffer line by line. Thus, a line provided through this packet will be delivered to a reading client after all other buffered lines have been read from the console, including user input.



Lines injected into the console output buffer are not echoed on the screen. ARexx uses this packet to employ the console as “external stack”. This packet places a line at the end of this stack, i.e. queues them up.

`dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of a `FileHandle` structure interfacing to the console.

`dp_Arg2` is a C pointer (not a BPTR) to an array of characters to be injected into the output buffer of the console.

`dp_Arg3` is the size of the buffer in characters.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to the number of characters that could be stacked in the output buffer of the console, or to `-1` in case of failure. On success, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0, or to an error code on failure.

### 12.8.7 Force Characters into the Input Buffer

The `ACTION_FORCE` packet injects characters into the keyboard input buffer of the console, as if the user typed them.

**Table 132:** `ACTION_FORCE`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_QUEUE (2001)</code>
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	<code>fh_Arg1</code> of a <code>FileHandle</code>
<code>dp_Arg2</code>	APTR to characters
<code>dp_Arg3</code>	Size of the buffer in bytes
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Number of characters stacked
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, it rather needs to be issued through the packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`. This packet injects characters into the input buffer of the console, at the same place keystrokes are recorded. Such characters are echoed on the console, or executed in case of control sequences. E.g. this packet allows also to move the cursor left or right, or erase the current line by emulating the corresponding keystrokes.

Note that the keyboard input buffer is different from the line output buffer; lines entering the console through `ACTION_FORCE` qualify as keyboard input<sup>13</sup>. The main user of this packet is the Shell which injects TAB-expanded file names into the console. The `ConClip` command also uses this packet to insert the paths of icons dropped on the console.

`dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of a `FileHandle` structure interfacing to the console.

`dp_Arg2` is a C pointer (not a BPTR) to an array of characters to be injected into the output buffer of the console.

`dp_Arg3` is the size of the buffer in characters.

Upon replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to the number of characters that could be injected into the keyboard input buffer of the console, or to `-1` in case of failure. On success, `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0, or to an error code on failure.

### 12.8.8 Drop all Stacked and Queued Lines in the Output Buffer

The `ACTION_DROP` packet disposes all lines that have been injected into the output buffer and thus reverts any `ACTION_STACK` and `ACTION_QUEUE` packets.

<sup>13</sup>Even though the V40 CON-Handler already supported this packet, it is there implemented incorrectly and does not impact the keyboard buffer. This was fixed in V47.

**Table 133:** ACTION\_DROP

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_DROP (2004)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of a FileHandle
dp_Arg2	0
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*, it rather needs to be issued through the packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`. This packet removes any lines injected by ACTION\_STACK and ACTION\_QUEUE from the output buffer of the console and thus reverts their results. User keyboard inputs remain unaffected. Thus, this packet resets the line stack in the console. The intended purpose this packet is ARexx which, however, at the time of writing does not use it.

dp\_Arg1 is a copy of the fh\_Arg1 element of a FileHandle structure interfacing to the console.

dp\_Arg2 shall be 0. This element is reserved for future use as a priority and shall be zero-initialized for forwards compatibility.

Upon replying this packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 to 0 on success. On error, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

### 12.8.9 Bring the Console Window to the Foreground

The ACTION\_SHOWWINDOW activates the console window, if it is open, and brings it to the foreground.

**Table 134:** ACTION\_SHOWWINDOW

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_SHOWWINDOW (506)
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*. The packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`, is required to issue it. This packet brings the window associated console, should such a window exist, to foreground and activates it. If the console is a serial console or the console window is closed or iconified, no activity is performed and no error is reported. Unlike ACTION\_DISK\_INFO, it will not force the window open if the window is currently closed.

The primary user of this packet is the ConClip tool which sends this packet to make the window visible whenever an icon is dropped on it. The path of the icon is injected into the keyboard input buffer with ACTION\_FORCE.

Upon replying this packet, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSTRUE and dp\_Res2 to 0 on success. On error, dp\_Res1 shall be set to DOSFALSE and dp\_Res2 to an error code.

### 12.8.10 Change the Target Port to Receive BREAK signals

The ACTION\_CHANGE\_SIGNAL packet sets a MsgPort to whose task the console sends break signals generated by the Ctrl-C to Ctrl-F key combinations.

**Table 135:** ACTION\_CHANGE\_SIGNAL

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_CHANGE_SIGNAL (995)
dp_Arg1	fh_Arg1 of a FileHandle
dp_Arg2	APTR to MsgPort structure
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*. The packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`, is required to issue it. It defines a port to which break signals as generated by the `Ctrl-C` to `Ctrl-F` key combinations are send. Actually, this *break port* is not used as a target of a message, but only its `mp_Task` element to which the signal is send.

Despite this port, the console also sends break signals to the last process that issued an `ACTION_WRITE` request, provided this process is not a Shell process running in background. To avoid race conditions of applications forgetting to reset this port, the console resets this port whenever an `ACTION_CLOSE` is received from the *break port*, i.e. whenever the process to which this port belongs closes its connection to the console. Furthermore, the console also tests the validity of the *break port* by testing whether its `mp_Task` field is known to the exec scheduler.

This packet is, for example, used when a Shell is started in a console window, or a `NewShell` command creates another in an already open console window. In such a case, the `System()` function as part of the *dos.library* sends a `ACTION_CHANGE_SIGNAL` to the console to ensure that break signals are received by the new Shell just started, and not the Shell then running in the background. This packet is *not* send for executables placed by the `Run` command in the background. Even though `Run` also goes through `System()`, it uses different parameters.

`dp_Arg1` is a copy of the `fh_Arg1` element of a `FileHandle` structure that is opened to the console.

`dp_Arg2` is a pointer to a `MsgPort` to whose task break signals will be send. In addition to this port, the console also sends break signals to the last issuer of an `ACTION_WRITE` packet, provided it is not a background Shell process.

Before replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` on success, and `dp_Res2` the port that was previously installed as *break port*, or `NULL` if no such port was configured. On error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.9 Packets Controlling the Handler in Total

The packets in this section impacts file systems and handlers at global. They do not apply to a particular volume.

### 12.9.1 Adjusting the File System Cache

The `ACTION_MORE_CACHE` packet increases or decreases the number of file system buffers.

**Table 136:** ACTION\_MORE\_CACHE

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	ACTION_MORE_CACHE (18)
dp_Arg1	Buffer increment
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Buffer count or error code

This packet implements the `AddBuffers()` function of the *dos.library*. It increases or decreases the number of buffers the file system may use to cache data. How exactly a file system uses these buffers and how large these buffers are is specific to the file system implementation and its configuration.

The FFS uses these buffers to temporarily store administrative data such as blocks describing the directory structure or information on which blocks a particular file occupies on disk. Providing additional buffers (within limits) can thus help to improve the performance of a file system by reducing the number of times the underlying device needs to be contacted. The FFS also uses these buffers to store payload data if the source or destination buffer of the client is not reachable by the exec device driver. The `de_Mask` element of the environment vector is used to determine such incompatibilities, see section 7.1.3.

`dp_Arg1` is the increment (or decrement, if negative) of the number of buffers to be added (or removed) from the pool of cache buffers of the file system. File systems may clamp this value to guarantee that a minimum number of buffers are available, or limit the buffer count to a useful value.

If this packet succeeds, the file system shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to the number of buffers currently allocated. Thus, the current buffer count can be obtained by sending this packet with `dp_Arg1` set to 0. On an error, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.9.2 Inhibiting the File System

The `ACTION_INHIBIT` packet disables or enables access of the *file system* to the underlying device; once file system access is disabled, application programs such as `Format` may access the underlying device directly.

**Table 137:** `ACTION_INHIBIT`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_INHIBIT</code> (31)
<code>dp_Arg1</code>	Inhibit flag
<code>dp_Res1</code>	Boolean result code
<code>dp_Res2</code>	Error code

This packet implements the `Inhibit()` function of the *dos.library*. An inhibited file system is blocked from accessing its underlying medium for read and write access, with the exception of `ACTION_FORMAT` and `ACTION_SERIALIZE_DISK` which remain operational. An inhibited file system changes its disk type as reported by `ACTION_INFO` or `ACTION_DISK_INFO` in the `InfoData` structure to 'BUSY', see table 19 in section 5.2.4.

Once the file system is uninhibited again, it shall perform a validation of the medium, as if the medium was been re-inserted. This is necessary because an application bypassing the file system to access it directly could have changed the file system structure, the volume name or the date, or may have even written a completely new file system structure to it. This check thus implies checking the flavour of the file system, e.g. the `DosType` for the FFS, and potentially creating and inserting a `DosList` entry into the *device list* representing the volume. Thus, first inhibiting and uninhibiting a file system is equivalent to simulating a medium change; in fact, the `DiskChange` command enforces a medium change by first inhibiting and then uninhibiting the file system.

`id_Arg1` is a boolean indicator that defines whether the file system shall be inhibited or uninhibited. If `dp_Arg1` is `DOSFALSE`, the file system is uninhibited and a file structure check shall be performed. In all other cases, the file system shall be inhibited and, with the exception of `ACTION_FORMAT`, should refrain from accessing the medium, partition or device.

Before replying this packet, `dp_Res1` shall be set to a boolean success indicator. On success, it shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` shall be set to 0. On failure, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

### 12.9.3 Check if a Handler is a File System

The `ACTION_IS_FILESYSTEM` tests whether a handler is a file system.

**Table 138:** `ACTION_IS_FILESYSTEM`

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	<code>ACTION_IS_FILESYSTEM</code> (1027)
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Buffer count or error code

This packet implements the `IsFileSystem()` function of the *dos.library* and tests whether a particular handler provide sufficient services to operate as a *file system*. A file system shall be able to access multiple separate files, shall be able to support locks and shall also be able to examine directories. A file system may be either a flat or a hierarchical file system, i.e. a file system is not required to support multiple directories on a storage medium, device or partition.

This packet does not take any arguments. It shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0 in case the handler qualifies as a file system. In case the handler supports this packet but does not implement a file system, it shall set `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to 0.

If the handler sets `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to `ERROR_ACTION_NOT_KNOWN`, then this is an indication that the handler cannot interpret this particular packet. If this secondary result code is identified by the `IsFileSystem()` function, it falls back to a heuristic for determining whether a handler is a file system: It uses `Lock(":", SHARED_ACCESS)`, i.e. `ACTION_LOCATE_OBJECT` on the file system root. If such a lock can be obtained, then this heuristic assumes that the handler is, in fact, a file system.

### 12.9.4 Write out all Pending Modifications

The `ACTION_FLUSH` packet instructs the file system to write all pending or cached modifications out to disk<sup>14</sup>.

**Table 139:** `ACTION_FLUSH`

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	<code>ACTION_FLUSH</code> (27)
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library* and thus can only be send manually through the packet interface, e.g. `DoPkt()`. File systems may cache writes in order to improve their performance, and may defer any write operations an arbitrary amount of time. This packet instructs the file system to write out all modifications immediately.

This packet shall not be replied before all changes have been written and, if applicable, the drive motor has been turned off. However, FFS versions of V40 and before replied `ACTION_FLUSH` immediately and thus only established a write barrier. This was fixed in V43.

Even though it is unclear how clients could make use of the result code, file systems should set `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0 on success<sup>15</sup>. In case of error, file systems should set `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

<sup>14</sup>Users of unixoid systems may consider this as the AmigaDOS equivalent of `sync`.

<sup>15</sup>The official reference [1] only states that `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE`. This is probably what most AmigaDOS file systems implement, though the value of unconditionally indicating success is questionable.

### 12.9.5 Shutdown a Handler

The packet `ACTION_DIE` requests a file system or handler to unmount its volumes and terminate.

**Table 140:** `ACTION_DIE`

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	<code>ACTION_DIE</code> (5)
dp_Res1	Boolean result code
dp_Res2	Error code

This packet is not exposed through the *dos.library*; rather, the packet needs to be send through the packet interface, i.e. through `DoPkt()`. This packet requests the file system to release all resources, set the `dol_Task` elements of the `DosList` structures in the *device list* to `NULL`, and then terminate the process.

A file system may not exit as long as client programs cache copies of its `MsgPort`; this port is typically the `pr_MsgPort` of the handler process which is released by AmigaDOS as soon as the process exits, and thus will become unusable. A necessary, but unfortunately not sufficient condition for this is that all locks have been unlocked, all file handles have been closed and all notification requests have been canceled as these AmigaDOS objects include pointers to a `MsgPort` of the file system. It is not sufficient because a client program can request a handler message port via `GetDeviceProc()` or `DeviceProc()` any time for direct communication and buffer the returned port outside of the classical AmigaDOS objects. Thus, a handler has no direct control of whether it can safely terminate, which limits the utility of this packet to system debugging tools.

In case the file system can foresee that it cannot safely exit at the time the request is made, this packet shall fail by setting `dp_Res1` to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code, e.g. `ERROR_OBJECT_IN_USE`. In case termination is seemingly possible, the file system shall check for any pointers to its `MsgPort(s)` in the device list and replace them by `NULL`, thus requesting from the *dos.library* to create a new instance of the file system if needed. Then, this packet shall be replied by setting `dp_Res1` to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0.

After unmounting the volume and replying to this packet, the `MsgPort(s)` of this handler or file system used for packet communication may still contain packets that were submitted after `ACTION_DIE` has been received. In order to avoid a deadlock or a crash, the file system still needs to reply these packets, for example by the default result codes from table 61, see also section 11.2.3.

Some handlers do not initialize the `dol_Task` element of its `DosList` entrie(s) with an address of their port(s); handlers that are not file systems such as the Console-Handler are typical examples. Such handlers shall terminate themselves without requiring an `ACTION_DIE` when the last file has been closed, and the last lock has been unlocked — if locks are supported at all.

### 12.9.6 Do Nothing

The `ACTION_NIL` packet performs no activity.

**Table 141:** `ACTION_NIL`

DosPacket Element	Value
dp_Type	<code>ACTION_NIL</code> (0)
dp_Res1	<code>DOSTRUE</code>
dp_Res2	0

This packet is not exposed by the *dos.library*. It does not perform any activity. A handler or file system implementation should indicate success when replying this packet. Another reason why a seemingly

---

`ACTION_NIL` packet can appear at a handler `MsgPort` is because the startup package has its `dp_Type` set to 0, too, and thus identifies itself also as `ACTION_NIL`. While `ACTION_NIL` does not provide any arguments, the startup package does, see section 11.2.1.

There is no reason why this packet should actually fail, unless a handler implements startup handling through the packet type `ACTION_NIL`. On success, `dp_Res1` shall be set to `DOSTRUE` and `dp_Res2` to 0. On an error `dp_Res2` shall be set to `DOSFALSE` and `dp_Res2` to an error code.

## 12.10 Handler Internal Packets

The packets in this section shall never be sent to a handler or filesystem as part of an application request. Instead, these packets are only used internally within the handler, and are rather an implementation trick to uniform the handler event processing. While regular `DosPackets` are carried by an exec message, the packets listed here are instead linked to an `IORequest` (see `exec/io.h`). This allows using a shared port, typically the `pr_MsgPort` of the handler process, for receiving replied `IORequests` and incoming packets as both appear as `DosPackets`.

The `io_Message.mn_Node.ln_Name` points to the `DosPacket` structure, and its `dp_Link` elements points back to `qthe IORequest`. Handlers dispatch these `IORequest` to exec devices asynchronously with `SendIO()`, and continue to process requests while the exec device is busy with the requested input or output command. Due to its linkage to a `DosPacket`, a completed `IORequest` is received by the packet interface of the handler as one of the packet types listed here.

### 12.10.1 Receive a Returning Read

The `ACTION_READ_RETURN` packet is part of a returning `CMD_READ` or similar read `IORequest` sent to an exec device and indicates that reading data completed.

**Table 142:** `ACTION_READ_RETURN`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Link</code>	APTR to <code>IORequest</code>
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_READ_RETURN</code> (1001)

This packet does *not* constitute a request to the handler, it rather indicates that the `IORequest` pointed to by `dp_Link` completed and the requested data is now available. As such, this packet shall never be replied.

### 12.10.2 Receive a Returning Write

The `ACTION_WRITE_RETURN` packet is part of a returning `CMD_WRITE` or similar write `IORequest` sent to an exec device and indicates that writing data completed.

**Table 143:** `ACTION_WRITE_RETURN`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Link</code>	APTR to <code>IORequest</code>
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_WRITE_RETURN</code> (1002)

This packet does *not* constitute a request to the handler, it rather indicates that the `IORequest` pointed to by `dp_Link` completed and writing data completed. As such, this packet shall never be replied.

---

### 12.10.3 Receive a Returning Timer Request

The `ACTION_TIMER` packet is part of a returning `TR_ADDREQUEST`, a `timer.device` request to wait for a time period.

**Table 144:** `ACTION_TIMER`

DosPacket Element	Value
<code>dp_Link</code>	APTR to <code>IORequest</code>
<code>dp_Type</code>	<code>ACTION_TIMER</code> (30)

This packet does *not* constitute a request to the handler, it rather indicates that the `IORequest` pointed to by `dp_Link` completed and the requested time span passed. As such, this packet shall never be replied. The FFS uses this packet to turn off the drive motor after the last read or write operation, and interactive handlers such as the console use it to implement `ACTION_WAIT_CHAR`.



---

## Chapter 13

# The AmigaDOS Shell

The Shell is the command line interpreter of AmigaDOS and is a simple language of itself. User applications can use services of the shell by requesting it to interpret a shell script or launching a new shell in a user-provided console window, then interpreting commands entered by the user. The latter is called an *interactive* shell, the former is non-interactive.

The Shell is built into the ROM of the kickstart, even though AmigaDOS is flexible enough to allow custom shells and make them available to user applications. The Shell is also responsible for booting up the system by executing the `Startup-Sequence` script in the `S :` assign.

### 13.1 The Shell Syntax

The Shell reads commands along with its arguments line by line from the console or a script. Each line consists of at least one command upfront and its arguments, where the arguments amongst each other and the command are separated by spaces, tabulators or by equals-signs (“= ”) which separates keywords from its values. The command refers to a file within the *path*, a list of directories that can be adjusted by the user. It always contains the current directory and the `C :` assign, though additional directories can be added or removed with the `path` command any time.

The following sections describe the Shell syntax in detail. Even though it stems from the Tripos system, AmigaDOS added over the years features such as variable substitution, compound commands including pipes, backtick expansion and additional redirection operators.

#### 13.1.1 Input/Output Redirection

Commands receive from the shell an input and output stream, and a console handler to which commands can refer by the special file name `*`. Optionally, they can be provided with an error stream through which diagnostic messages are printed. The shell allows redirecting or creating these streams by operators on the command line that shall also be separated by the spaces or tabulators from the arguments and the command.

The shell supports the following redirection operators:

`>path` redirects the output of a command to a particular file, creating the file if it does not yet exist, or overwriting it if does.

`>>path` appends the output of a command to a file if the file already exists, or creates a the output file if it does not yet exist.

`<path` redirects the input of a command from an already existing file which must exist; otherwise, an error is indicated.

---

`<<ind` uses the current console or the shell script itself from which the command is run as input, line by line, until a line starting with `ind` is found. The indicator can be chosen arbitrarily. A typical choice is `EOF`. This avoids creating temporary files.

`<>path` redirects both the standard input and the standard output of the command to a path. The file must exist already, otherwise an error is indicated.

`*>path` redirects the error output of the command to the given path. If this path identifies an interactive stream (see section 4.6.1), such as a console, then the console process of the command is set to it as well. This will also redirect output of commands that prints errors to the `*` file that is contacted for this special file name.

`*>>path` appends the error output of a command to a file, or creates a new file for error output if it does not yet exist. If the target file is interactive, the console process of the command is also updated.

`*<>` creates a standard error stream and redirects it to the standard output. If none of the three above redirection operators are present, then (unlike in other operating systems) the command *does not* receive a standard error stream. What happens in such a case with error output is specific to the implementation of the command. The system error handling functions will still provide error output to the standard output as if an implicit `*<>` would be present.

Where the redirection is placed within a command line does typically not matter, e.g. whether it is directly following the command or placed at the end of the command line. There are, however, three exceptions the shell makes when parsing the command line:

For the `Alias` and `Run` command, redirections of the command itself shall be placed directly following the command. The same applies if the shell variable `oldredirect` is set to `on`. In the above cases, redirections placed at a later point of the command line will become part of the command line arguments. That is, for `Run`, the command run in back will redirect its streams rather than the streams of the `Run` command, and for `Alias`, the redirection will become part of the alias and will become active when the alias is expanded. The `oldredirect` variable will do likewise for all other commands, except that they will typically not interpret redirection requests in a useful way and will instead take the angle brackets as regular arguments.

### 13.1.2 Compound Commands and Binary Operators

The Shell allows combining multiple commands on the command line, then forming *compound* commands. The following operators go *between* commands such that the last argument of the first command is directly to the left of such an operator, and the next argument starts to the right. As for arguments, these operators need to be separated by arguments and commands with blank spaces or tabulators:

- | The vertical bar creates a pipe such that the standard output of the command to the left becomes the standard input of the command to its right. As some commands require an explicit file name they read data from, or they write data to, the pipe itself can be explicitly addressed through the `PIPE:` file name, both for the reading and the writing end. Pipes require the Queue-Handler, which is mounted by the Kickstart during the system startup.
- || Two vertical bars concatenate the output of two commands together into one common stream which can then be redirected to a common output<sup>1</sup>.
- && Sequences two commands, first executes the one to the left, and if its return value is below the `FailAt` value, continues to execute the command to its right.

---

<sup>1</sup>This syntax is different from the `bash` operator that looks similar.

---

The brackets “(” and “)” group commands and execute the grouped command in a separate process in a sub-shell. For this, both the opening and closing bracket shall be separated by commands and arguments by at least a single space or tabulator as otherwise the shell interprets them as part of the command or arguments. This provides logical grouping of commands into compound commands.

### 13.1.3 Unary Shell Operators

In addition, the Shell recognizes two unary operators that do not stand between commands, but only at their end or at the end of the command line.

- & The ampersand operator works similar to the `Run` command, it starts the command line within which it appears in background. The command will receive a new logical console, and its output and error streams will be redirected to this console, unless of course redirected explicitly to other files. Unfortunately, at this time, the ROM-based Console-Handler does not take advantage of this information and will simply merge the output of the process run back with that of the regular shell, though extended Console-Handlers use this information for job control and hold the output of the background process until made explicitly active.
- + The plus operator shall only appear at the end of a command line. If it is present, it injects a line-feed and the following line of the current input of the shell into the argument line of the command. It thus forms an argument string that consists of multiple lines. Only very few commands can actually process a line-feed as part of their argument line, most will ignore all characters behind the first line feed. One particular command that supports such argument lines is `Run`. It feeds its argument line unprocessed into a new non-interactive Shell as command stream, building it from a string using a technique similar to that explained in section 4.9.2. This sub-shell will thus receive a shell script as input which consists of multiple lines, and will execute the commands one after another.
- ; The semicolon ends a command line and starts a command. All characters beyond the semicolon are ignored.

### 13.1.4 Quoting and Escaping

To allow spaces, tabulators, equals-signs and the above operators as parts of command names and arguments, e.g. to handle file names containing such characters, the Shell allows quoting. Blank spaces, tabulators, semicolons and equals-signs within double quotes (“”) become part of the argument, and are not interpreted by the shell. A quote only starts a quoted argument or command and is thus a functional element of the Shell if it is preceded by a blank space or a tabulator, quotes *within* an otherwise unquoted argument are literals and stand for itself. A quote, however, does terminate a quoted string even if it is *not* followed by a blank space or tabulator.

Within quotes, the Shell recognizes the asterisk “\*” as an escape character, and only there. That is, the asterisk is a literal outside of double quotes; for example, it is the file name that identifies the current console, and as isolated character outside of quotes is not interpreted as escape character. The escape sequences supported by the Shell can be roughly broken up into two classes:

The first class, the legacy escape sequences, are recognized and interpreted by the Shell, but the actual substitution of the escape sequence by the escaped character is left to the executing program and thus happens *outside* of the Shell:

- \*N The newline character, ASCII 0x0a.
- \*E The ESC character, ASCII 0x1b. There is no escape sequence for the CSI control character 0x9b, but there is a 7-bit equivalent sequence all terminals support, namely \*E[. The Shell does not establish this equivalence, but the console does.

- 
- \* " The double quote; a double quote escaped as such does not terminate the quoted argument, but represents the quote itself as part of the argument.
  - \*\* The asterisk itself.

As the Shell does not perform substitutions for the above sequences, they can also appear within the command line of the executed program, which is then responsible to perform the above substitutions correctly itself.

Proper interpretation and escape sequence substitution is ensured if the command uses the `ReadArgs()` or `ReadItem()` functions of the *dos.library*. This distribution of responsibilities has the inconvenient side effect that some third-party argument parsers, e.g. the ones provided by some C compilers, do not fully support the (admittedly unorthogonal) quotation and escaping rules of the Shell and thus do not deliver the expected results.

The second class of escape sequences is transparently substituted by the Shell, and thus no additional burden arises for the executed program to handle them<sup>2</sup>. Unlike the above, the following sequences are *also* interpreted outside of quotes, everywhere on the command line:

- \*\$ The literal dollar sign. The non-escaped dollar sign is a syntax element that indicates variable expansion, see section 13.1.5.
- \*` The literal backtick. The non-escaped backtick is a syntactical element for command output substitution, see section 13.1.6.
- \*[ The literal opening square bracket. Square brackets are part of the alias syntax, see section 13.1.7, and this sequence inserts a bracket itself if it is part of an alias. This sequence can only be used within aliases, but has no special meaning outside of them.
- \*] The literal closing square bracket. Similar to the above, this sequence is only recognized during alias expansion and inserts a literal square bracket into the expanded alias.

### 13.1.5 Variables and Variable Expansion

The AmigaDOS shell supports variables, both local to the shell and system-global, and expands variables as part of the regular command line parsing. A variable is indicated by a string starting with a dollar-sign (“\$”) and followed by alpha-numerical characters, i.e. 0-9, A-Z and a-z. Variable names are case-insensitive. The 1st character that is outside this range terminates the variable name.

An equivalent but more flexible way of referring to a variable is by enclosing the variable name after the “\$” sign in braces, i.e. “\${name}” within which all other characters are allowed as components of the name as well.

Local variables are represented as entries in the `pr_LocalVars` list that is part of the process structure that represents the Shell, see section 9. When expanding variables, the Shell first checks there for a variable of a matching name. Only if that fails, the Shell tests for global variables. They are represented as files in the `ENV:` assign, which is typically an external link within the `RAM:` device copying elements from the `ENVARC:` assign. That is, local variables take priority over global variables.

Variables are substituted by the Shell *before* the resulting argument line is provided to the command, i.e. it is not necessary to expand variables within commands. The Shell does not attempt to generate pairs of double quotes to ensure that an expanded variable corresponds to a single argument. In fact, if a variable contains spaces, tabulators or equals-signs and it is not included in double quotes, it will be seen in the expanded command line as multiple arguments. However, if a variable contains asterisks or double quotes,

---

<sup>2</sup>This inconsistency can probably be only understood in historical contents as variable expansion and backtick substitution were later Amiga specific extensions to the original Tripos Shell.

---

and the variable appears within double quotes, such asterisks or double quotes are escaped by the Shell with an (additional) asterisk as escape character to ensure the resulting argument is represented appropriately.

If the variable name is started with “\$?” instead of “\$”, then the Shell will check whether the variable exists or not, and instead of inserting its value, it will substitute the name by a 1 if the variable exists, or by a 0 if it does not exist, i.e. is undefined. If a variable reference starts with “\$??”, the Shell checks whether the variable exists as *global* variable, and if so, expands the entire reference to 1, otherwise to 0. Finally, if the variable reference starts with “\$!”, the variable may contain control characters such as line feeds that are included in the expansion. This binary expansion is only applicable to global variables, and as potential control characters are injected into the Shell tokenizer, it is necessary to include such binary expanded variables in double quotes. This ensures that the Shell escapes the control characters properly and makes them accessible to commands and their argument parser.

### 13.1.6 Backtick Expansion

After variable expansion, the Shell checks the command line for backticks, (“`”). The characters within two terminating backticks form a command itself that is executed *before* interpretation of the containing command line continues, and the standard output of the enclosed commands is substituted for the command line within the backticks. As this output may include line feeds, these are furthermore substituted with blank spaces.

Note that the result of the executed commands may even contain functional syntax elements of the Shell, e.g. angle brackets as output of the command in backticks will become shell stream redirection operators which are then further interpreted by the shell. Needless to say, this can cause bad surprises.

The backticked sequence can itself be enclosed in double quotes. While this avoids the above surprise, it will necessarily only generate a single logical argument. Only in that case, namely a backticked sequence contained in another pair of double quotes, the Shell performs backwards escaping of asterisks and double quotes — same as for variable expansion. Each double quote or asterisk in the output of the quoted backticked command is escaped with (another) asterisk. This ensures that the resulting output string within double quotes retains its original value once interpreted through `ReadItem()` or `ReadArgs()`. Note that backwards-escaping does not take place without the additional layer of double quotes surrounding the backticked command, same as in variable substitution.

### 13.1.7 Alias Substitution

The next step in Shell processing is alias expansion. Aliases are simple macros that replace the alias with another command with the option of rearranging its arguments. The leftmost element of each compound command can potentially be an alias; the remaining arguments right to it do not go through alias expansion.

Aliases are always local to the executing Shell, AmigaDOS keeps them in the same database as local Shell variables. If the leftmost element fits a defined alias, this element is removed, and replaced by the contents of the alias. If this contents contains a pair of opening and closing square brackets, that is the sequence “[ ]”, then the brackets are replaced by all remaining arguments of the same component of the compound command. The result of alias expansion is another command that undergoes alias expansion again, except that the same alias cannot be used twice to avoid endless recursion.

### 13.1.8 Command Execution

After alias expansion, the Shell takes the leftmost element of each component of a compound command as a command to be executed. The Shell attempts to locate this command first on the list of resident commands, see section 13.6, but only if the command is not quoted. If no match is found there, or the command is quoted, then the Shell keeps looking in the current directory, and if it is not found there, in all elements of

---

the *path*, as set by the `path` command. If no matching file or directory is found there, the Shell finally looks into the `C:` directory<sup>3</sup>.

Once a matching file system object has been found, the Shell attempts to “execute” it and for that checks its type and contents. If this “command” turns out to be a directory, the Shell performs an implicit change to this directory by inserting a `CD` command upfront, and then triggers iteratively command execution again with this replacement.

If the `s` protection bit is set, see section 6.1, the Shell assumes that command is actually a script. If this script starts with the magic character sequence “/\*”, it is assumed to be a Rexx script and an implicit `RX` command is prepended to the command line. If the script starts with the two-character sequence “#!” or “; !”, then the remaining first line of the script file contains the path of the command interpreter which is injected into the Shell command line upfront the script file, and command interpretation starts again.

If none of the above conditions hold true and the `s` protection bit is set, the Shell assumes that this file is a Shell script prepends an `Execute` command upfront the script file name, thus interpreting it through the Shell itself — more on the `Execute` command in section 13.1.9.

If the `e` protection bit is set indicating an executable file, the Shell attempts to load the file through `LoadSeg()` and, after performing input, output and error stream redirection, transfers program execution to this binary through `RunCommand()`, passing it the remaining command line arguments.

If the `e` protection bit is *not* set, but the shell variable `$VIEWER` is set, then the Shell attempts to check whether the system *datatypes.library* knows anything about the file. If so, the Shell prepends the contents of this variable to the command line and then continues execution. By setting `$VIEWER` to the system program `MultiView`, the Shell can therefore display any system-known datatype by just typing its name.

Finally, if none of the above conditions is true, or `LoadSeg()` failed, the Shell indicates an error that the file is not executable.

### 13.1.9 The Execute Command

Unlike its name suggests, the `Execute` command does not actually perform interpretation Shell scripts and does not “execute” them directly. Instead, it performs argument substitution within an existing shell script through a simple interpreter, and then leaves the execution of the resulting script to the Shell itself by adjusting its command input stream. Thus, `Execute` does not actually execute anything, it rather prepares a script for execution through the Shell.

Argument substitution through `Execute` is controlled through additional syntax elements that are only implemented within `Execute` and that are unrelated, and even partially conflicting with the syntax elements of the Shell itself<sup>4</sup>.

Argument substitution and its syntax elements are controlled through “pseudo”-commands that are only interpreted though `Execute` but removed before the resulting script is fed back into the Shell. All these pseudo-command start by default with a dot (“.”), though even this character can be changed through a pseudo-command. Such pseudo-commands controlling the `Execute` syntax elements shall be placed at the top of scripts as the `Execute` one-pass interpreter needs to see them first. If none of these pseudo-commands are present, `Execute` bypasses argument substitution and feeds the script unaltered into the Shell, without further processing.

The following pseudo-commands are supported by the `Execute`:

.`dot` takes a single argument and changes the character by which all (following) pseudo-command start. This is by default a dot (“.”), and for the sake of simplicity, the following pseudo-commands are all shown with this default.

---

<sup>3</sup>Note that unlike under unixoid systems, the current directory is always an implicit first member of the path and cannot be removed from it.

<sup>4</sup>This is probably another historical accident from Tripos legacy

---

`.key` or `.k` defines which arguments a shell script takes. The argument is a `ReadArgs()` type template, defining the type of the command line arguments the shell script takes, and also the names of the formal parameters which will be substituted with the arguments provided during invocation of the script. Clearly, only a single `.key` pseudo-command shall be present within a script.

`.default` or `.def` defines defaults for arguments that are not present on the command line that invoked the script. It takes two arguments, first the key — the formal name of the parameter for which a default is to be provided — and the default value itself. Key and default value can be either separated by blank spaces, tabulators, or an equals-sign “(=)”. If no default value is provided, an empty string is used. One `.default` pseudo-command can be provided per formal parameter. Another mechanism to provide default parameters is through the “\$” character.

`.bra` defines the character that marks the beginning of a formal parameter that is to be substituted. A logical choice for such formal parameters would be to place them in local variables, and let the Shell perform the substitution<sup>5</sup>. However, `Execute` uses another syntax by which formal parameters are enclosed in pairs of characters, one starting the parameter, and one ending it. The initial character is by default the “<” sign, but the `.bra` pseudo-command can change it. As “<” also redirects the standard input of commands, this default is probably not a very wise choice, and it should be changed by `.bra`. Suggested alternatives are curly or square brackets.

`.ket` defines the character that marks the end of a formal parameter that is to be substituted. This is by default the “>” sign, i.e. formal parameters are enclosed in pairs of angle brackets. Unfortunately, this default is not a very wise choice as it makes output redirections in scripts impossible. To override this default, `.ket` should be used. A suggested alternative is a closing curly or square bracket.

`.dollar` or `.dol` defines the character that defines an alternative mechanism for providing defaults for formal parameters. Without this pseudo-command, this character is the dollar sign (“\$”). An optional “\$” sign, or its replacement defined through this pseudo-command, separates the formal parameter from its default value. The formal name, the “\$” sign, and its default are all enclosed in this order in the angle brackets, or the characters defined by `.bra` and `.ket`. Two “\$” signs in angle brackets expand to the Shell number and may be used as unique identifier, e.g. to generate a file name of a temporary file. Even though the “\$” sign as syntax element for default value separation is only active within `.bra` and `.ket`, it is still a bad choice as it conflicts with the Shell syntax which uses the same character to indicate Shell variables.

Formal argument substitution otherwise follows the same path as variable expansion, and `Execute` attempts to preserve the original command line arguments as good as possible. That is, if a formal parameter is enclosed within double quotes in the script, asterisks and double quotes are escaped properly. If the formal parameter included spaces or tabulators and thus was quoted on the command line, `Execute` generates suitable double quotes when substituting the formal parameter with its value, unless the formal parameter is already enclosed in double quotes. If a formal parameter takes multiple arguments, as indicated by a `/M` modifier in its template (see section 13.5.1), then `Execute` also expands it as multiple parameter in scripts.

The generated script after substitution of formal parameters is placed into the `T`: assign, its name in `cli_CommandFile` and the command input of the invoking Shell, namely `cli_CurrentInput` (see section 13.3), is redirected to a *file handle* to this temporary script. Thus, the shell continues execution of commands, but rather takes its input from the temporary file rather than its current input. As this construction would forbid the recursive execution of another Shell script within a Shell script, the Shell detects `Execute` as a special case for which it keeps a “stack” of script files and active redirections. Through that, it provides each recursive execution a “clean” environment<sup>6</sup> that allows redirection of its input. Once `cli_CurrentInput` exhausted, the Shell terminates execution there, closes the *file handle* stored there, deletes the temporary file whose name is stored in `cli_CommandFile` and, depending on how it was initiated and configured, continues execution from `cli_StandardInput`. The `System()` function with a

---

<sup>5</sup>This is another historical accident, likely.

<sup>6</sup>This is a major difference compared to previous versions of AmigaShell which instead resolved this situation by appending recursively executed scripts to each other. This construction had a series of bad side effects, one being that a script could not skip backwards over an `Execute` command.

---

non-NULL command argument will terminate after `cli_CurrentInput` runs out of data, otherwise the shell switches over to `cli_StandardInput`, see section 13.7.1.

## 13.2 Shell Process Control

The functions in this section create shell processes and run commands within them, or overlay a shell process with a command. AmigaDOS also keeps a process table of all active shell processes and each running shell is uniquely identified by its task number.

### 13.2.1 Execute Shell Scripts

The `System()` function creates a new Shell, and potentially executes a Shell script. Depending on parameters, it waits for the script to complete, or launches an interactive Shell in a console or a non-interactive Shell in the background. The same *dos.library* entry point exists under 3 names that only differ in how the code generator of a compiler provides parameters for it.

The `SystemTagList()` function is equivalent to the `System()` function and does not differ in arguments and call syntax. It is only present to harmonize function naming across all library entry points. It takes a pointer to a string containing a Shell script, possibly only a single command, and additional parameters encoded in a `TagItem` array as defined in *utility/tagitem.h*.

The `SystemTags()` function also receives this string, but provides the `TagItems` explicitly as one or multiple extra arguments to the function. Compilers typically build then the `TagItem` array on the stack and pass the pointer to the first item on the stack to the *dos.library* entry point.

```
error = SystemTagList(command, tags)
D0          D1          D2

LONG SystemTagList(STRPTR, struct TagItem *)

error = System(command, tags)
D0 D1          D2

LONG System(STRPTR, struct TagItem *)

error = SystemTags(command, Tag1, ...)

LONG SystemTags(STRPTR, ULONG, ...)
```

This function is the generic Shell execution function that creates a Shell in one or multiple modes, and executes the commands provided as first argument in that Shell. Hence, the first argument establishes a Shell script, encoded as a string, and multiple commands separated by newline characters may be provided that will be executed one after another. Argument substitutions as by the `Execute` command (see section 13.1.9) are *not* performed, but otherwise the entire Shell syntax, including variables, compound commands and pipes is available. If such mechanisms are necessary, `Execute` shall be called directly, receiving its input from a temporary file.

Depending on its arguments, this function is synchronous, i.e. waits for the completion of the called commands, or asynchronous and then detaches from the caller. By proper usage of arguments, this function can emulate (or is actually even used by) the `Run` and `NewShell` commands, and is also used by the system startup module to create the initial boot shell.

By default, the newly created Shell receives the input and output file handles of the caller, i.e. `pr_CIS` and `pr_COS` are copied from the calling process, see section 9 for the documentation of the process structure.



---

However, with suitable tags the caller can provide alternative input and output streams. Whether these file handles are closed upon termination of the shell depends on further arguments, but the default is not to close them when run synchronously, and to close them otherwise, even if they were the streams of the caller, so beware and provide suitable tags.

The input and output file handles provided to the Shell *shall be different*, i.e. it is not permissible to provide the same file handle as input and as output stream. If the input and output handle should go to an interactive stream such as the console, then only provide an input stream and set the output stream to `ZERO` by `SYS_Output`, see the list of tags below. The *dos.library* will in that case create an output file handle by opening another stream to the console through the `*` file name.

The newly created Shell will receive a copy of the path, the local shell variables, the prompt, the current directory and the stack size of the shell of the caller, if such shell exists, i.e. `pr_CLI` is non-`ZERO`. Otherwise, a default path containing only the `C:` directory and the current directory will be created, no local variables will be defined, the prompt will be set to `"%N> "` and the current directory to `"SYS:"`.

By default, the executing shell will be the system shell, whose segment is available as a system segment of the name `"BootShell"` in the list of resident modules, see section 13.6. Other shells can be provided by their name, and the list of resident segments will be scanned for a match then. Section 13.7 provides more information on how to implement a custom shell.

The tags this function tags are documented in `dos/dostags.h` and consist of the `SYS_` tags and a subset of the `NP_` tags.

**SYS\_Input** This tag takes a BPTR to a file handle as argument which becomes the input stream of the new shell. If this tag is not provided, the input stream of the calling process (`pr_CIS`) will be used.

**SYS\_InName** This tag takes a string as argument. This string will be used as argument to `Open()` to create a stream that will be used as input stream to the newly created shell. This stream will always be closed when done, regardless of other tags. This tag is mutually exclusive to `SYS_Input`.

**SYS\_Output** This tag defines a BPTR to a file handle which will be used as output stream of the new shell. This handle *shall be different* than the handle provided by `SYS_Input`. If this tag is not present, the output stream of the calling process (`pr_COS`) will be used for shell output. If this stream is explicitly set to `ZERO`, then AmigaDOS will attempt to re-open a console through the `"*"` file name. If an input stream is present and interactive, and `command` is non-`NULL` or `SYS_Async` is non-zero, then the handler of the input stream is used to open the replacement output stream. Otherwise, the handler provided through the `NP_ConsoleTask` or the console task of the caller if the former tag is not present is used to open `"*"`. If opening the console fails, AmigaDOS will instead provide a handle to `NIL:` as output stream, thus disregarding any output. Any stream implicitly provided by the *dos.library* by the above mechanism rather than explicitly through a non-`ZERO` argument to `SYS_Output` will also be closed transparently upon termination of the shell.

**SYS\_OutName** provides an output file name that will be opened by the *dos.library* and used as output stream for the newly created shell. This file will always be closed when the shell terminates. This tag is mutually exclusive to `SYS_Output`.

**SYS\_CmdStream** provides a BPTR to a file handle from which commands are read, i.e. a shell script is supplied as stream, and not as a string. This tag is only used if the `command` argument is `NULL` and then provides an alternative (stream-based) source for the script to be executed. This stream is *always* closed on exit, and closure cannot be prevented by any other tag. If `SYS_Async` is set and `command` is `NULL`, then the Shell first reads commands from `SYS_CmdStream`, and once this stream reaches an EOF, it is closed and the shell continues reading from `SYS_Input` until this stream also reaches an EOF, or an `EndCLI` command. Thus, the configuration of providing a `SYS_CmdStream` and setting `SYS_Async` is equivalent to the `newshell` command.

**SYS\_CmdName** provides a file name of a shell script whose contents is interpreted. This tag is mutually exclusive to `SYS_CmdStream` and only used if the `command` argument is `NULL`. This stream will always be closed on exit.

---

**SYS\_Asynch** If the argument to this tag is non-zero, the shell is detached from the calling process and executes concurrently with the calling process; setting this tag also implies that the streams provided by **SYS\_Input** and **SYS\_Output** are always closed. It is thus necessary to explicitly provide **SYS\_Input** or **SYS\_InName** and **SYS\_Output** or **SYS\_OutName**, as otherwise the input or output streams of the calling process will be closed. For legacy reasons, setting the **command** argument to **NULL** also enforces asynchronous execution, independent of the value of tag.

**SYS\_UserShell** If this boolean tag is set to non-zero, then the “user shell” is launched. This corresponds to the segment “Shell” on the resident list of AmigaDOS. The default of this tag is **DOSFALSE**, indicating that the boot shell is to be used. This corresponds to the “BootShell” segment on the resident list. Upon system startup, and in all typical configurations of AmigaDOS, both correspond to the AmigaDOS shell. Users can, however, replace both shells with custom segments, see section 13.7.

**SYS\_CustomShell** this tag provides the name of a custom shell to be used instead. The AmigaDOS list of resident segments is scanned for a fitting name, and the fitting segment is then used as shell.

The following tags defined for **CreateNewProc()**, see section 9.1.1, are also recognized:

**NP\_StackSize** defines the stack size in bytes for the shell to be created and the stack size the shell will allocate for its clients. The default is 4096 bytes for the shell itself; for the shell clients, the stack size is taken by default from the shell of the calling process, or 4096 bytes if the caller is not a shell process.

**NP\_Name** is the name of the shell process to be created. The default is “Background CLI”.

**NP\_Priority** is the priority of the shell process to be created. The default priority is 0.

**NP\_ConsoleTask** provides a pointer to the **MsgPort** of the console handler that is used for opening the **\*** and **CONSOLE:** files, which will be copied to **pr\_ConsoleTask**. This tag is only used if the input stream of the new shell is not interactive, and otherwise overridden by the process **MsgPort** port of the input file handle.

**NP\_CopyVars** is a boolean tag that specifies whether local shell variables are copied into the new shell. The default is to copy the variables.

**NP\_Path** contains a linked list of directory locks that establish the path of the newly created shell. The structure of this path is specified in section 13.3. The path provided by this tag *is not* copied for the new shell, but directly used *and released* by it when it exits. Thus, callers should make a copy of the path upfront as it will be released by the created shell.

**NP\_ExitCode** and **NP\_ExitData** define a function that is called when the shell process exits. This mechanism is described in more detail in section 9.1.1.

The return code of the **System()** and related functions is **-1** in case creating the shell failed. In such a case **IoErr()** delivers an error code providing more details on the cause of the failure. Otherwise, if the commands were executed synchronously, the return code is the result code of the last command in the shell executed, and **IoErr()** is set to the error code set by the last command executed. If an asynchronous shell was created, the result code is 0 on success, and **IoErr()** will be set to 0.

This function is used to implement a couple of essential system functionalities, and all Shell commands and system functions that create a Shell go through this function. This includes the **NewShell** and **Run** shell commands and the **Shell** icon on the workbench. The initial CLI interpreting **S:Startup-Sequence** is also created through the **System()** function.

The **Run** command creates a new shell process by the following:

```
System(NULL, SYS_Input, instream, SYS_Output, Output(),
        SYS_UserShell, TRUE, TAG_DONE);
```

where the input stream **instream** is a string stream (see section 4.9.2) containing the commands to be executed; they are taken from the input arguments of the command.

---

Even though `SYS_Asynch` is not set, the `System()` function detaches the created shell because its first argument is `NULL`, see above. Surprisingly, it is the `System()` call and not the `Run` command that prints the CLI number of the created shell on the console in this particular case.

The `NewShell` command uses `System()` as follows:

```
System(NULL, SYS_InName, window_arg,
      SYS_CmdStream, Open(from_arg, MODE_OLDFILE),
      SYS_Asynch, TRUE, SYS_UserShell, TRUE,
      NP_Name, "Shell Process", TAG_DONE);
```

where the `window` argument and the `from` argument are coming from the command line arguments of `NewShell` of the same names. That is, `System()` receives a console as new input file handle, and a command stream which is by default `"S:Shell-Startup"`. Setting `SYS_Asynch` to `TRUE` ensures that the shell continues to read commands from its input file handle as soon as the command file depletes.

The `Execute()` function described in section 13.2.2 is equivalent to

```
System(NULL, SYS_CmdStream, cmd,
      SYS_Input, in, SYS_Output, out, SYS_UserShell, FALSE,
      NP_Priority, 0, TAG_DONE) ? DOSTRUE : DOSFALSE;
```

where `cmd` is a string stream (see section 4.9.2) containing the commands to be executed, constructed from the first argument of `Execute()`, and `in` and `out` are its second and third argument. The difference of `System()` and `Execute()` is only the result code, but internally run into the same code.

### 13.2.2 Execute Shell Scripts (Legacy)

The `Execute()` function creates a new AmigaDOS shell, which then executes commands from a string, and continues executing commands from an input stream. This function is obsolete, and should be replaced by `System()` which is more flexible.

```
success = Execute( commandString, input, output )
D0      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL Execute(STRPTR, BPTR, BPTR)
```

This function is a deprecated function to create AmigaDOS shells and interpret shell scripts that has been superseded by `System()`, see section 13.2.1.

The first argument is a string containing a shell script. If this argument is `NULL` and thus no command string is present, a new shell is created and run asynchronously in the background, i.e. `Execute()` returns then immediately. The new shell receives its input, and thus its commands from the file handle provided as second argument. The output of the commands go to the stream provided as third argument if non-ZERO, or to a console cloned by opening `"*`" from the console task of caller if possible, or to a `NIL:` handle if this fails.

If the first argument is non-`NULL`, the `Execute()` command is synchronous and will not return until the shell completed its job. It first reads commands from the the command string, and once this depletes, switches over to the stream provided by `input`. If this does not exist, it returns at that point. Otherwise, it continues reading from `input` until this stream reaches its EOF, or an `EndCLI` command. The output of the shell goes through the output stream provided as third argument. If the third argument is `ZERO`, and the input stream is interactive, AmigaDOS opens `"*`" from the input stream handler if it is interactive, or otherwise disregards all output by providing a `NIL:` handle as output.

Unlike `System()`, this function returns `DOSTRUE` on success and `DOSFALSE` in case creating the shell failed. It also always executes commands through the boot shell, and not through a custom or user shell.

---

Except for the similarity in name, the `Execute()` function has nothing in common with the `Execute` command described in section 13.1.9. One does not depend on the other, i.e. `C:Execute` is not necessary for `Execute()`, and `Execute` does not run into `Execute()` either, but rather modifies the current input stream of the Shell. Under AmigaDOS version 1.3 and below, `Execute()` depended on the `Run` command, but this dependency has been removed long since. As of the latest version of AmigaDOS, `Run` depends on the `System()` function.

### 13.2.3 Run a Command Overloading the Calling Process

The `RunCommand()` runs a shell command from a process, and overloads the process with the command.

```
rc = RunCommand(seglist, stacksize, argptr, argsize)
D0                                D1          D2          D3          D4
```

```
LONG RunCommand(BPTR, ULONG, STRPTR, ULONG)
```

This function runs a command from the calling process, and provides for this command its own stack, and its own arguments. It does not create a new process nor a new shell, but executes the command as part of the caller. The AmigaDOS Shell uses this function to execute loaded commands within its context.

The `seglist` argument is a `BPTR` to the first segment of the executable to start, for example as returned by `LoadSeg()` for disk-based commands, or `FindSegment()` for resident commands.

The `stacksize` argument is the size of the stack in bytes to be provided to the command; this has to be provided by the caller as this function does not attempt to identify the minimum stack size necessary. The Shell takes the stack size from `cli_DefaultStack`, see section 13.3, and multiplies it by 4. It additionally searches the `seglist` for the stack cookie, see section 10.4.2, and from that potentially increases the size.

The `argptr` and `argsize` arguments provide command line arguments that are passed to the command. They are provided through several mechanisms: First, the CPU register `a0` is loaded with `argptr` and register `d0` is filled with `argsize`. Second, the `pr_Arguments` element of the process is temporarily replaced by `argptr`, see also section 9, and thus the arguments are made available to `GetArgStr()`. Third, a buffer for the input file handle `pr_CIS` of the caller is allocated and filled with a copy of the argument line; more on the file handle structure is in section 4.9.1. Thus, buffered I/O operations as those listed in section 4.8 will retrieve the arguments. This step is necessary to make the arguments available to `ReadArgs()`, the AmigaDOS argument parser.

The `ReadArgs()` function, and probably many other parsers require that the argument is terminated by a newline, hex `0x0a`. While it is possible to provide an argument string containing more than one newline character, `ReadArgs()` will ignore all arguments behind the first newline. However, some commands such as `Run` will make use of the entire string.

All changes performed by `RunCommand()` on the caller and its resources, namely the stack, the modifications of the input file handle and storage of the arguments and the modified stack are reverted when the called command returns.

As the program name *is not* part of the command line arguments, it is advisable to set the path and file name of the loaded program `SetProgramName()` upfront, more on this function in section 13.3.4. The startup code of many C compilers will construct `argv[0]` from it.

This function returns the result code of the called command, or `-1` if it failed to allocate resources such as the input file handle buffer or the stack. `IoErr()` remains its value from the called command, or is set to `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE` if resources could not be allocated.

### 13.2.4 Checking for Signals

The `CheckSignal()` function tests whether particular signals, as for example those to break process or a shell script, are set in the process of the caller.

```
signals = CheckSignal(mask)
D0                                     D1
```

```
ULONG CheckSignal(ULONG)
```

This function tests those signals that are set in the `mask` and returns their state. Typical signals to check for are defined in `dos/dos.h` and include those bits that are set by `Ctrl+C` through `Ctrl+F` console key combinations. The function returns a mask of all signals set in the process, and clears those signals that are set in the mask. A typical example is

```
if (CheckSignal(SIGBREAKF_CTRL_C)) {
    break; /* abort the command */
}
```

which checks whether the user pressed `Ctrl+C`, and also clears this bit. This function does not alter `IoErr()`.

### 13.2.5 Request a Function of the Shell

The `DoShellMethod` function requests from the shell of the calling process a specific function. The `DoShellMethodTagList()` function belongs to the same entry point of the *dos.library*, though uses a different calling convention that receives the tag list as an explicit pointer instead of a variably sized argument list.

```
ptr = DoShellMethodTagList(method, tags)
D0                                     D0      A0
```

```
APTR DoShellMethodTagList(ULONG, struct TagItem *)
```

```
ptr = DoShellMethod(method, Tag1, ...)
```

```
APTR DoShellMethod(ULONG, ULONG, ...)
```

This function requests the from the shell of the calling process the execution of a function identified by `method`. The arguments to the shell are provided in the tag list, or by a list of tags terminated by `TAG_DONE`. The return value of the shell is provided in `ptr`, a secondary return code is provided in `IoErr()`.

The AmigaDOS Shell supports the following methods defined in `dos/shell.h`:

`SHELL_METH_METHODS` returns a `const` array of methods the shell supports. This is an array of `ULONGs` that is terminated by a `0L`, each containing a method ID that may be provided to `DoShellMethod()`. Every shell shall support this method.

`SHELL_METH_GETHIST` is a method of the AmigaDOS Shell that provides read-only access to the history. It does not take any arguments. The returned pointer is a `MinList` structure, see `exec/lists.h`. Each node in this list consists of a `HistoryNode` structure, defined in `dos/shell.c`:

```
struct HistoryNode {
    struct MinNode  hn_Node;
    UBYTE          *hn_Line;
};
```

The `hn_Line` is a pointer to a command in the history of the shell. This command is *not* terminated by a newline, but only by a `NUL`. The caller *shall not* alter this list.

---

`SHELL_METH_CLRHIST` erases the entire history of the AmigaDOS Shell. This method does not take any arguments.

`SHELL_METH_ADDHIST` adds an entry to the newest end of the AmigaDOS Shell history and make it accessible to the user through the cursor keys. This method takes a single tag, namely `SHELL_ADDH_LINE`. The argument of this tag is a `UBYTE *` to a NUL-terminated string, namely the entry to add to the history. The Shell copies the provided string, and may strip initial or trailing spaces. It may also limit the size of the history buffer by releasing the oldest entry or entries. This method returns a non-zero result on success, or `NULL` on error.

`SHELL_METH_FGETS` retrieves a single line from the console the shell runs in, while offering access to TAB expansion and access to the history. The difference between this method and the `FGets()` function is that the latter provides elementary line editing functions of the console, but does not have access to Shell internal states such as the path of the caller required for TAB expansion<sup>7</sup>.

This method takes a single optional boolean tag, `SHELL_FGETS_FULL`, defined in `dos/shell.h`. If this tag is `DOSFALSE`, which is the default, then the Shell is instructed to read a string from the console that corresponds to a path or multiple paths relatively to the current directory of the caller. TAB expansion will only scan the current directory for matches. This mode is useful for requesting a file or multiple files from the user, and it is for example used by the AmigaDOS argument parser, `ReadArgs()`, when the input is a question mark (“?”) and more input is required from the user.

If `SHELL_FGETS_FULL` is non-zero, then a full command line is requested from the shell. This implies that the first argument of the input requested from the console is a command, and is thus located somewhere on the *path* of the caller. Thus, when performing TAB expansion within the first argument, the entire path is scanned, and not just the current directory.

This method returns a pointer to a NUL-terminated string as result; as this string is kept within Shell internal buffers, the caller shall make a copy of the string before calling another method of the Shell.

If `DoShellMethod` is called from a process that is not part of a shell, it returns `NULL` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_WRONG_TYPE`.

### 13.2.6 Find a Shell Process by Task Number

The `FindCliProc()` function finds a process by its task number.

```
proc = FindCliProc(num)
D0                                D1

struct Process *FindCliProc(ULONG)
```

This function returns a process given its task number. Note, however, that AmigaDOS only assigns task numbers to shells and commands run within or from shells and not to other processes, such as those started from the workbench, handlers, file systems or device drivers. Thus, this function is not quite as useful as it seems.

The `num` is the task number that identifies the process to locate. It is stored in the `pr_TaskNum` element of the process structure, see section 9.

This function returns a pointer to the process structure, see section 9 whose task number is `num`. If no such process exists, this function returns `NULL`. However, even if it returns a non-`NULL` result code, it is possible that the process has already exited and no longer exists when the function returns or an attempt is made to access its process structure. Furthermore, the *dos.library* does not attempt to protect its process table within this function, and there is no semaphore protecting it. Therefore, this function *shall only be called*

---

<sup>7</sup>Readers beware: TAB expansion and the history are *not* console features, but Shell features.

---

while task switching is disabled with `Forbid()` and its return value is only valid as long as task switching is disabled.

This function does not alter `IoErr()`, even if no process is found.

### 13.2.7 Retrieve the Size of the Process Table

The `MaxCli()` function returns the size of the process table.

```
number = MaxCli()  
D0
```

```
LONG MaxCli(void)
```

This function returns the number of entries the process table may hold. However, this information is of limited value for various reasons: First, this information does *not* correspond to the number of running processes, but only describes the number of entries the process table is able to hold. Second, only shells and commands run within or from shells are recorded in the process table, and other processes as those started from the workbench, or handlers, file systems or device drivers do not enter this table. Third, the size of this table changes dynamically depending on how many shell processes are active, even under the feed of the caller. Thus, this function should be avoided.

As the *dos.library* does not protect the process table from modifications, this function *shall only be called* while task switching is disabled with `Forbid()`, and its value is only valid as long as the task switching remains disabled.

## 13.3 The CLI Structure

The `CommandLineInterface` structure is the public interface of an AmigaDOS shell. Every command started from a shell has access to this structure through the `pr_CLI` BPTR in its process structure, see section 9, which is actually the process structure of the shell calling the program, see section 13.2.3.

The functions listed in this section provide accessor functions to this structure which should be preferred to access and alter properties of the calling shell.

### 13.3.1 Obtaining the Name of the Current Directory

The `GetCurrentDirName()` function copies the current directory of the shell into the provided buffer if such a shell exists, or retrieves the current directory of the calling process instead.

```
success = GetCurrentDirName(buf, len)  
D0                      D1    D2
```

```
BOOL GetCurrentDirName(STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function checks whether the caller is a shell command. If so, it copies what the shell believes to be its current directory into the supplied buffer. That is, the function then copies `cli_SetName` into `buf`, see section 13.3. If the current directory path fits into `len` bytes including a terminating NUL byte, then this function returns `DOSTRUE` and sets `IoErr()` to 0. Otherwise, it truncates the name, returns `DOSFALSE` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`, but still returns `DOSTRUE`.

The shell itself does not update `cli_SetName`, namely the field this function depends upon, itself. Rather, the `CD`, `SwapCD`, `PushCD` and `PopCD` commands attempt to keep it consistent. However, if a command changes `pr_CurrentDir` without updating `cli_SetName`, or calls `SetCurrentDirName()`

---

without updating the current directory of its processes, then the string supplied by this function may not correspond to the current directory the shell actually uses.

If the caller is not a shell command, then the function uses the lock representing the current directory of the calling process, namely `pr_CurrentDir`, and converts it to a string by `NameFromLock()`. This function, see section 6.3.1, also truncates its result to `len` bytes and, if truncation was performed, sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG` and returns `DOSFALSE` if the directory name does not fit into `len` bytes. On success, the function returns a non-zero result code, but it does not set `IoErr()` consistently then.

### 13.3.2 Set the Current Directory Name

The `SetCurrentDirName()` sets the buffer within which the shell keeps the string representing the current directory. It does not update the current directory itself.

```
success = SetCurrentDirName(name)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BOOL SetCurrentDirName (STRPTR)
```

This function updates `cli_SetName` of the shell the caller is part of, if such a shell exists. In such a case, it copies the supplied string into `cli_SetName` and potentially truncates it to the size of the shell-internal buffer. Even if the string is truncated, the function returns `DOSTRUE`. It does not update `IoErr()` in either case. For some legacy reasons, the size of this buffer is rather small, and thus may not reflect the full directory name supplied.

If the caller is not a shell command, this function returns `DOSFALSE` without setting an error code.

This function does not attempt to synchronize `pr_CurrentDir` of the calling process to the supplied directory. If the two are not consistent, the path the shell could print as part of the prompt would be incorrect. Thus, any attempt to change `cli_SetName` through this function *shall also* call `CurrentDir()` to make this change consistent to the Shell.

### 13.3.3 Obtaining the Current Program Name

The `GetProgramName()` function copies the name of the currently executed program into a buffer.

```
success = GetProgramName(buf, len)
D0                                     D1    D2
```

```
BOOL GetProgramName (STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function fills `buf` with the what the Shell assumes to be the name of the currently executed command. This name is taken from `cli_CommandName`, see section 13.3, where the shell deposits it before executing a program. If the program name including NUL termination requires more than `len` bytes, this function first truncates it and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`. If the name including a terminating NUL byte fits into `len` bytes, the name is copied and the function sets `IoErr()` to 0. In either case, even if the program name is truncated, the function returns `DOSTRUE`.

If this function is not called from a shell command, the function installs an empty string in `buf` if `len` is at least 1 and returns `DOSFALSE` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_WRONG_TYPE`.

The Shell buffer that keeps the current command name is unfortunately due to legacy reasons quite limited in size, and at present shorter than the 106 character limit imposed by the `FileInfoBlock` structure, see section 6.1. Even though the Shell uses internally a longer buffer and thus is not limited in the file name size of commands it executes, the ability of the Shell to communicate such long command names to the caller is restricted, and thus the command name retrieved from this function may not reflect the correct file name.



---

### 13.3.4 Set the Current Program Name

The `SetProgramName()` sets the name the shell assumes the currently executing program has.

```
success = SetProgramName(name)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BOOL SetProgramName(STRPTR)
```

If this function is called from a shell command, it installs the supplied string as program name into `cli_CommandName`, section 13.3, and returns `DOSTRUE`. If the supplied string does not fit into the Shell internal buffer, it is truncated without this function indicating failure.

If this function is not called from a shell command, it returns `DOSFALSE`. This function does not change `IoErr()` in any case.

### 13.3.5 Obtaining the Shell Prompt

The `GetPrompt()` function copies the prompt format string with all formatting instructions into a caller supplied function.

```
success = GetPrompt(buf, len)
D0                                     D1    D2
```

```
BOOL GetPrompt(STRPTR, LONG)
```

If this function is called from a shell command, it copies the prompt format string including a terminating NUL into `buf` if it fits into `len` bytes, potentially truncating it if it does not. If truncation was performed, `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG`, otherwise to 0. In either case, even if the string was truncated, the function returns `DOSTRUE`.

If this function is not called from a shell command, an empty string is copied into `buf` if `len` is at least 1, and `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_OBJECT_WRONG_TYPE` and the function returns `DOSFALSE`.

The shell prompt provided by this function is the unexpanded prompt including format strings as it is provided by the `Prompt` command, and not the expanded prompt currently printed by the shell.

### 13.3.6 Setting the Shell Prompt

The `SetPrompt()` sets the Shell prompt format string.

```
success = SetPrompt(name)
D0                                     D1
```

```
BOOL SetPrompt(STRPTR)
```

If called from a shell command, this function updates the shell prompt format string to `name`, potentially truncating it to the size of the Shell internal buffer. It returns `DOSTRUE` even if the prompt is truncated.

If this function is not called from a shell command, it returns `DOSFALSE`. It does not change `IoErr()` in any case.

The Shell prompt provided to this function may contain all format strings described in 13.3, such as `%S` for the current path, or Shell variables and backticks to construct a prompt dynamically. The shell-internal buffer size for the prompt is unfortunately quite limited. If longer prompts are required, they could be placed in a local shell variable which is expanded in the prompt.

---

### 13.3.7 Retrieving the CLI Structure

The `Cli()` function returns a pointer to the `CommandLineInterface` structure describing the shell within which the calling process is executing, or `NULL` in case the process is not run from a shell.

```
cli_ptr = Cli()  
D0
```

```
struct CommandLineInterface *Cli(void)
```

This function returns a pointer to the `CommandLineInterface` structure that describes properties of the shell the calling process runs within. The function returns `NULL` if the caller is not part of a shell process. This structure, defined in `dos/dos.h`, looks as follows:

```
struct CommandLineInterface {  
    LONG    cli_Result2;  
    BSTR    cli_SetName;  
    BPTR    cli_CommandDir;  
    LONG    cli_ReturnCode;  
    BSTR    cli_CommandName;  
    LONG    cli_FailLevel;  
    BSTR    cli_Prompt;  
    BPTR    cli_StandardInput;  
    BPTR    cli_CurrentInput;  
    BSTR    cli_CommandFile;  
    LONG    cli_Interactive;  
    LONG    cli_Background;  
    BPTR    cli_CurrentOutput;  
    LONG    cli_DefaultStack;  
    BPTR    cli_StandardOutput;  
    BPTR    cli_Module;  
};
```

The elements of this structure are as follows:

`cli_Result2` is the `IoErr()` the last executed command of the shell left, or the Shell created itself when failing to interpret or execute a command line. This element is for example used by the `why` command to print a textual description of the error. The shell also copies this value into the `$Result2` Shell variable.

`cli_SetName` is a `BPTR` to a `BSTR` containing the path of the current directory. This string is used to generate a shell prompt; the AmigaDOS shell substitutes the “%S” format directive of the prompt by the string stored here. The `CD` command and its `PushCD`, `PopCD` and `SwapCD` variants update this element.

`cli_CommandDir` contains a linked list of directories that are scanned for commands. It is a `BPTR` to the following (undocumented, but trivial) structure:

```
struct PathComponent {  
    BPTR pc_Next;  
    BPTR pc_Lock;  
};
```

where `pc_Next` is the `BPTR` to the next directory in the path or `ZERO` for the end of the list, and `pc_Lock` is a lock of the directory that will be scanned for a matching command file.

The current directory is always the first component of the path and thus checked first for matching files, even if `cli_CommandDir` is `ZERO`. The `C:` directory is always the last component of a path and neither explicitly included in the linked list.

---

The `Path` command is used to print and adjust the path stored in this list.

`cli_ReturnCode` is the return code of the last executed command, i.e. the value the command left in the `d0` CPU register when existing to the Shell. The shell also copies this value to the `$RC` Shell variable.

`cli_CommandName` is a BPTR to a BSTR containing the name of the currently executing command. It is placed here by the shell before calling in.

`cli_FailLevel` contains the threshold at which executed commands will cause an abortion of its containing shell script. The value is deposited here by the `FailAt` command. If a command exits with return code larger or equal than the `cli_FailLevel`, this will cause termination of the currently executing script.

`cli_Prompt` contains a BPTR to BSTR that is used by the shell to print the command prompt on interactive shells. The AmigaDOS Shell recognizes the following strings:

%S Replaced by the path of the current directory, namely the contents of `cli_SetName`.

%N Substituted with the CLI number, which is the closest analogon of a process ID AmigaDOS has to offer. This is taken from `pr_TaskNum` of the process running the shell, see also section 9.

%R Represents the return code of the last executed command as contained in `cli_ReturnCode`.

%% The percent (“%”) sign itself.

The AmigaDOS Shell also expands variables as described in section 13.1.5 in the prompt, executes commands backticks, see section 13.1.6, and injefts its output into the printed prompt. Any “%” sign included in expanded variables or backticks is *not* a formatting command but stands for itself.

`cli_StandardInput` is a BPTR to a file handle that represents the primary source of commands. This file handle typically corresponds to a console window within which the shell is executed. The `Run` command will deposit here a string stream (see section 4.9.2) containing the command or commands to be run in background. The file handle provided through the `SYS_Input` or `SYS_InName` tags of the `System()` function will be placed here. Once this stream is exhausted, the Shell terminates.

`cli_CurrentInput` is a BPTR to a file handle from which the shell is currently executing commands. This stream is either coming from the `SYS_CmdStream` or `SYS_CmdIn` tags of the `System()` function, or a string stream constructed from its first argument. Also, the `Execute` command, see section 13.1.9, places here the file handle of the original or processed shell script that is to be executed. Once this file is exhausted, the Shell will close it. This happens, for example, if a script reaches its end of file or is aborted by the `Exit` command. Depending on how the shell was created and configured, see section 13.7.1, the shell then sets this BPTR to `cli_StandardInput` and continues execution, or in other configurations, terminates.

`cli_CommandFile` is a BPTR to the BSTR of a temporary shell script that is currently being executed. The only reason why its path is stored here is to allow the Shell to clean up such temporary scripts. Whenever the `Execute` command requires processing a script for argument substitution, it creates a temporary script in `T:` whose name is stored in `cli_CommandFile`. Once its execution completes, the Shell ensures that this temporary script is deleted again. For details on how `Execute` actually works see section 13.1.9.

`cli_Interactive` is a boolean flag that indicates whether the Shell is interactive, i.e. requesting data from the console. If this boolean is non-zero and `cli_Background` is `DOSFALSE`, a prompt is printed before attempting to read a command from `cli_CurrentInput`. If the shell is executing a script, this element is `DOSFALSE` and the Shell then checks for a `Ctrl-D` signal to potentially abort a running script.

`cli_Background` is a boolean that indicates whether the Shell runs in background. This flag is set for shells that are started asynchronously or are equipped with a non-interactive (non-console) output stream. If this flag is cleared, then the shell also prints a message when its input stream reaches its EOF, indicating that the shell terminates.

---

`cli_CurrentOutput` is currently not used by the Shell. It is currently initialized with the same file handle as `cli_StandardOutput`.

`cli_DefaultStack` is the minimum stack in long-words the Shell allocates for commands before executing them. The Shell also checks the command for a stack cookie, see section 10.4.2, that may enlarge the stack further. This element is set by the `Stack` command. Note that this element is *not* the stack size of the shell process itself, but a lower limit of the stack size for its clients.

`cli_StandardOutput` is the file handle the shell provides as default output handle to its clients, and to which it prints output. This handle is copied from the `SYS_Output` or `SYS_OutName` tags of the `System()` function if they are provided.

`cli_Module` is a BPTR to the first segment of the command currently executed. The Shell also uses this BPTR to release loaded, non-resident commands. This BPTR is either filled with the segment provided by `LoadSeg()` in section 10.2.1, or an element of the list of resident segments, see section 13.6. A common technique for load and stay resident commands is to set this BPTR to `ZERO` to prevent the shell from releasing the loaded program and thus keep it in memory.

Even though the `CommandLineInterface` structure is typically constructed by AmigaDOS, e.g. through the `System()` function, it is sometimes necessary to create it manually. Allocation of this structure shall happen only through `AllocDosObject()` as this structure contains some Shell-internal elements for extended Shell features. These extended features are instead accessible through the `DoShellMethod()` function specified in section 13.2.5.

This function does not change `IoErr()`.

## 13.4 Access Shell Variables

The functions in this section provide access to local and global shell variables, get and set them, or check whether a particular variable is defined.

### 13.4.1 Read a Shell Variable

The `GetVar()` function reads the contents of a global or local shell variable or alias and copies its contents to a buffer.

```
len = GetVar( name, buffer, size, flags )
D0          D1      D2      D3      D4
```

```
LONG GetVar( STRPTR, STRPTR, LONG, ULONG )
```

The `name` argument is the name of the variable to retrieve; this name may contain one or multiple forward slashes (“/”) which structure variables hierarchically similar to directories on file systems. It is not case-sensitive. For global variables, this hierarchy is mapped to subdirectories within the `ENV:` assign. There variables are represented as files that may also be accessed through the file system functions of the *dos.library*. Unless specified otherwise, this function first checks for local shell variables, but if no matching variable is found, it checks for a global variable of the name provided.

The `buffer` and `size` arguments specify a buffer and its length into which the contents of the variable, if it exists, is copied. It is advisable to store only printable characters in variables, in which case any NUL or line feed character truncates the contents of the variable. However, variables may also contain binary data; such binary data is, however, only copied if it is requested explicitly. If a variable does not fit into the buffer, it is truncated without setting an error code, but non-binary variables are always NUL-terminated. The `size` argument includes the byte necessary for termination.

---

The `flags` argument determines the type of variable to access, and whether binary contents of the variable is made accessible. The following flags are defined in `dos/var.h`:

The lowest 8 bits of `flags` identify the nature of the variable. If set to `LV_VAR`, this function reads variables, if set to `LV_ALIAS`, it reads aliases. Aliases are always local to the shell and cannot be global.

If the `GVF_GLOBAL_ONLY` flag is set, then this function only returns contents of global variables, and local variables are ignored. Aliases are never global.

If the `GVF_LOCAL_ONLY` flag is set, then this function only returns contents of local variables and ignores any global variables.

If the `GVF_BINARY_VAR` flag is set, then copying the contents of variables into the supplied `buffer` does not stop at newline (`0x0a`) or NUL characters, but attempts to transfer the entire variable into the buffer, potentially truncating it if necessary. It is, however, NUL terminated, unless `GVF_DONT_NULL_TERM` is set.

If the `GVF_DONT_NULL_TERM` flag is set along with `GVF_BINARY_VAR`, then this function does not attempt to NUL-terminate the supplied buffer. Rather the entire variable, if possible, is copied into `buffer`.

On success, this function returns the size of the supplied variable after truncation is applied if necessary. The size does not include the terminating NUL, if one is included. On success, this function sets `IoErr()` to the entire size of the variable in the database, including any bytes beyond a terminating newline or NUL.

On error, `-1` is returned and `IoErr()` is set to an error code; it is set to `ERROR_BAD_NUMBER` if `len` is 0, or `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the variable could not be found. Any other error code resulting from reading from `ENV:` is also forwarded to the caller through `IoErr()`.

### 13.4.2 Setting a Shell Variable

The `SetVar()` assigns a value to a local or global shell variable or an alias, potentially creating a new variable, or potentially deleting it.

```
success = SetVar( name, buffer, size, flags )
D0              D1      D2      D3      D4
```

```
BOOL SetVar(STRPTR, STRPTR, LONG, ULONG )
```

This function assigns the value in `buffer` to the variable named `name`, possibly creating it if it does not exist, or deleting it if `buffer` is `NULL`.

The `name` argument is the name of the variable to create, update or delete. It is not case-sensitive. The `name` may contain one or multiple slashes (“/”) which corresponds to a hierarchy of variables that work similar to directories and paths on regular file systems; this hierarchy is represented by directories in `ENV:` for global variables, but is also available for local variables. This function potentially creates levels in the hierarchy, i.e. subdirectories for global variables, if necessary.

The `buffer` and `size` arguments are the contents of the variable and the size of the contents. It is generally advisable to only include printable characters in variables, even though they may include also binary data which can be retrieved by setting the `GVF_BINARY_VAR` for `GetVar()`. If `size` is `-1`, then the `buffer` contains a NUL-terminated string and this function determines the string size internally. The terminating NUL of such a string *does not* become part of the variable value.

If `buffer` is `NULL`, then a matching variable is deleted. It is then equivalent to `DeleteVar()`.

The `flags` argument determines the type of the variable to be set or created. The following flags are defined in `dos/var.h`:

`LV_VAR` sets, creates or deletes a regular shell variable, local or global.

`LV_ALIAS` sets, creates or deletes an alias. Aliases can only be local. This is mutually exclusive to the above.

If `GVF_GLOBAL_ONLY` is set, then a global variable is created, deleted or updated. This flag *shall not* be combined with `LV_ALIAS`. If this flag is *not* set, and `buffer` is not `NULL`, this function only updates or creates local variables; it even creates a local variable if a global variable of the same name already exists. If this flag is *not* set, and `buffer` is `NULL`, it first attempts to delete a local variable, and if none is found, attempts to delete a global variable of the matching name.

If `GVF_LOCAL_ONLY` is set, then only a local variable is created, deleted or updated. This flag only makes a difference if `buffer` is `NULL` as all other operations default to local variables anyhow.

This function returns a non-zero return value in case of success. `IoErr()` is then not set consistently. On error, this function returns `DOSFALSE` and `IoErr()` is set to an error code. If a variable is to be deleted by setting `buffer` to `NULL`, and this variable does not exist, this function will set `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND`.

### 13.4.3 Finding a Shell Variable

The `FindVar()` locates a local shell variable or alias of the calling process.

```
var = FindVar( name, type )
D0 D1      D2
```

```
struct LocalVar * FindVar(STRPTR, ULONG )
```

This function finds the administration structure corresponding to a local shell variable or alias of the calling process. It does not provide access to global variables which are represented as files in the `ENV:` assign.

The `name` argument specifies the name of the local variable or alias to locate. It is not case-sensitive. This name may contain forward slashes (“/”) to structure variables in hierarchies.

The `type` argument defines whether a local shell variable or alias is to be found. The following types from `dos/var.h` are available:

`LV_VAR` requests the function to locate a local shell variable.

`LV_ALIAS` request the function to find an alias. This is mutually exclusive to the above.

Only the least significant bits of `type` are relevant, all other bits, in particular `GVF_GLOBAL_ONLY`, are ignored.

If a matching variable or alias is found, a pointer to a `LocalVar` structure, defined in `dos/var.h` is returned:

```
struct LocalVar {
    struct Node lv_Node;
    UWORD      lv_Flags;
    UBYTE      *lv_Value;
    ULONG      lv_Len;
};
```

This structure shall never be allocated by the caller as it may grow in future releases. Instead, creation of variables shall only be created through `SetVar()`. The elements of this structure are as follows:

`lv_Node` is a node structure as defined in `exec/nodes.h`. It chains all local variables and aliases of a process in the `pr_LocalVars` element of the process structure, see section 9. The `lv_Node.lv_Name` element is the full path to the variable, including all directory elements and its name, separated by forward slashes (“/”). The type of the node, namely `lv_Node.lv_Type` identifies whether this structure describes a variable or an alias. It can be either `LV_VAR` or `LV_ALIAS`.

---

`lv_Flags` contains flags. Currently, only a single flag is used here, and that is `GVF_BINARY_VAR`. If this flag is set, then a non-printable text was set as contents of the variable. However, this flag is currently only set, but never used by AmigaDOS; instead, the `flags` argument of `GetVar()` determines whether the variable contents is interpreted as text or as binary value.

`lv_Value` is a pointer to the value of the variable. This value is *not* a NUL-terminated string, but rather an array of bytes whose size is found in `lv_Len`.

On success, this function does not alter `IoErr()`. If no matching variable or alias is found, this function returns `NULL` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND`.

### 13.4.4 Deleting a Shell Variable

The `DeleteVar()` deletes a global or local shell variable or alias.

```
success = DeleteVar( name, flags )
D0                                D1    D2
```

```
BOOL DeleteVar(STRPTR, ULONG )
```

This function removes a shell variable or alias from the local or global pool of shell variables. This function is equivalent to `SetVar(name, NULL, 0, flags)`.

The `name` argument is the name of the variable or alias to remove. It is not case-sensitive. This name may contain slashes (“/”) that work similar to path separates. This allows variables to form a hierarchy similar to a file system. Without additional flags, this function first attempts to find a local variable and then deletes it if it exists. If no such variable exists, the function attempts to find a global variable of the same name and attempts to delete it. It does not delete directories of variables.

The `flags` argument provides information on which type of variables or alias are to be deleted. The following flags are honored:

`LV_VAR` deletes a regular shell variable.

`LV_ALIAS` deletes an alias. Aliases can only be local. This is mutually exclusive to the above.

If `GVF_GLOBAL_ONLY` is set, then only a global variable is to be deleted; the function then does not attempt to find a local variable of the given name.

If `GVF_LOCAL_ONLY` is set, then only a local variable is to be deleted.

This function returns a non-zero return value in case of success. `IoErr()` is then not set consistently. On error, this function returns `DOSFALSE` and `IoErr()` is set to an error code. This function will set `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if an attempt is made to delete a non-existing variable or alias.

## 13.5 Command Line Argument Parsing

The functions in this section support applications in parsing command line arguments. While programs are free to use custom algorithms instead, the functions in this section have the advantage that they are aware of the delicate syntax of the AmigaDOS shell and its quoting and escaping rules as laid out in section 13.1.4 and integrate a simple help system for command line tools.

### 13.5.1 Parsing Command Line Arguments

The `ReadArgs()` function parses one or multiple arguments from the command line of the caller using a template, and writes them into a user-supplied array.

```
result = ReadArgs(template, array, rdargs)
D0          D1          D2          D3
```

```
struct RDArgs * ReadArgs(STRPTR, LONG *, struct RDArgs *)
```

This function is the generic argument parser of AmigaDOS, and highly recommended for all command line tools as it provides a consistent interface to shell commands. The arguments a command expects is encoded in a human-readable template supplied as first parameter, and parsed arguments are placed into array. If `rdargs` is `NULL`, then `ReadArgs()` retrieves its input from the buffer of the standard input of the calling process. Other sources are possible, and the function is not restricted to streams. Currently, this function requires that the command line is terminated by a newline character (`0x0a`).

The `template` parameter specifies the arguments the parser attempts to pull from its input. It describes their name and type, whether they are optional or mandatory, and whether the name is required on the command line to fill the argument, or whether it can also be matched by position.

Each command line argument consists of a keyword, and an optional abbreviation that is separated from the full keyword by an equals-sign ("`=`"), e.g. `QUICK=Q`. Additional options may follow the keyword, and are separated from it and additional options by a forwards slash ("`/`"). Such options describe whether a particular argument is mandatory, optional, numerical, whether the keyword is required to match an argument or whether arguments are filled by position left to right, etc. For example, `QUICK=Q/S` would indicate a boolean switch matching the keyword `QUICK` or `Q` on the command line, the `/S` indicates that it is a switch. The keywords are separated by commas ("`,`") from each other.

This function performs parsing by matching keywords on the command line to keywords in the template; the keyword either stands for itself for boolean tags, or is followed by its value, either separated by spaces, tabulators or an equals-sign ("`=`"), i.e. `FROM=org` or `FROM org` on the command line assign to the keyword `FROM` in the template the value `org`. If no keyword is present, then remaining arguments that do not explicitly require the keyword are filled left to right from the command line.

Upon return, each argument is placed in one of the elements of `array`, the first argument into the first element, the second into the second, in the order they appear in the template. While formally this an array of `LONGs`, the actual type of an element depends on the nature of the argument as specified through the options, and may be a `UBYTE *`, a `UBYTE **` or a `LONG *` casted to `LONG` instead. The `array` shall be created and zero-initialized upfront by the caller of the function, and it shall be large enough to hold one entry per command line argument in the template.

The following options are supported:

- `/S` The argument is a boolean switch. The corresponding entry in `array` will be set to 0 if the keyword is not present on the command line, and set to a non-zero value if it is present at least once.
- `/T` The argument is a boolean toggle. The corresponding entry in `array` is set to 0 if the keyword does not appear, and changes from 0 to non-zero and back each time the keyword is detected on the command line. That is, if the keyword appears an odd number of times, the element in `array` is non-zero, otherwise it becomes 0.
- `/K` This argument is only filled in if its keyword appears on the command line, arguments without `/K` are also matched by position. For example, if the template is `FROM/K`, then its element in `array` is not filled in unless `FROM` appears on the command line. Remaining command line arguments are filled to non-`/K` keyword slots left to right.
- `/A` This argument is required. If it is not present on the command line, `ReadArgs()` returns an error.
- `/N` The argument is a number. If the argument is present on the command line, then the corresponding element in `array` is filled with a *pointer* to a `LONG`. If the argument is not present, the element in `array` remains `NULL`. This allows the caller to identify non-specified command line arguments.



---

`/M` This keyword matches multiple strings. Any command line argument that could not be matched to the template will be associated to this keyword. Clearly, at most one `/M` keyword may be specified in a template. The corresponding entry in `array` consists of a pointer to an array of `UBYTE *`s, each of them contains one of the matching arguments of the command line. The last entry in this array is `NULL`, indicating its end. For example, if the template is `FROM/M, TO`, then a command line such as `a b c to d` will fill the second element of `array` with `d`, but the first 3 will match `FROM`. Thus, the first element of `array` will be a pointer to an array of 4 pointers, the first of which will point to `a`, the second to `b`, the third to `c` and the forth will be `NULL`.

If there are also `/A` keywords in the template, i.e. arguments that are required, and some of them are not yet matched to anything from the command line, then `ReadArgs()` will fill them from the end of the `M` keywords. This allows templates such as `FROM/A/M, TO/A` where the final, last argument on the command line fills the `TO` keyword even without the keyword explicitly appearing on the command line.

`/F` The entire rest of the command line is matched to this argument, even if keywords appear in it. The corresponding entry in `array` is filled with a single pointer to a string. Such templates are used, for example, by the `Alias` command as the rest of the command line can form a command by itself and can contain keywords.

Without any option, the keyword is a non-required string argument that is matched from the command line either by the keyword or by position. The corresponding entry in `array` is in that case a `UBYTE *`, that is a pointer to a NUL-terminated string that is filled in if the argument is present, or remains `NULL` if the argument is not found on the command line.

The `rdargs` parameter provides a source of the arguments, and is also used for internal resource management of `ReadArgs()`. If `NULL` is passed in here, this function will allocate and initialize it, and the command line to be parsed will be taken from the buffer of the input file handle of the calling process, i.e. `pr_CIS`.

For a custom command line source, an `RDArgs` structure as documented in `dos/rdargs.h` shall be allocated through `AllocDosObject()`. This structure looks as follows:

```
struct RDArgs {
    struct CSource RDA_Source;      /* Select input source */
    LONG    RDA_DAList;             /* PRIVATE. */
    UBYTE   *RDA_Buffer;           /* Optional buffer. */
    LONG    RDA_BufSiz;            /* Size of RDA_Buffer (0..n) */
    UBYTE   *RDA_ExtHelp;          /* Optional extended help */
    LONG    RDA_Flags;             /* Flags for any required control */
};
```

Its most relevant part is the `RDA_Source` structure, which allows to provide an alternative source for the string to be parsed. It is also documented in `dos/rdargs.h` and is defined as following:

```
struct CSource {
    UBYTE   *CS_Buffer;
    LONG    CS_Length;
    LONG    CS_CurChr;
};
```

In this structure, `CS_Buffer` points to the string representing the command line to be parsed, and `CS_Length` is the size of this string in characters. The `CS_CurChr` element is the index of the first element in the string to be considered for parsing. This element is typically set to 0 upfront, but if `ReadArgs()`

---

is used for parsing a longer string buffer in multiple calls, this element may be carried over from a previous parse.

The `RDA_DAList` element of the `RDArgs` structure is private to `ReadArgs()` and shall not be read or written to. This element is initialized to `NULL` by `AllocDosObject()`.

The `RDA_Buffer` element contains a buffer which will be used by `ReadArgs()` to keep parsed-off data. This buffer space will be used to store parsed arguments, pointers to parsed numbers for the `/N` option, or arrays of pointers to the parsed arguments for the `/M` option. If `RDA_Buffer` is `NULL`, then `ReadArgs()` will supply one instead. The size of this buffer in bytes is in `RDA_BufSiz`. `ReadArgs()` will allocate more buffers itself if the initially supplied buffer is not large enough, or none is provided. Typically, callers would leave the allocation of the buffer to `ReadArgs()` unless memory allocation should be avoided altogether and the size of the supplied command line is known to be limited.

The `RDA_ExtHelp` string is an optional extended help string that is printed over the output stream of the calling process if the command line to be parsed consists of a single question mark. If not present, the template parameter of `ReadArgs()` is printed. Following displaying the help string, `ReadArgs()` then attempts to retrieve another command line from the shell through the input stream. This feature allows users to request help on the called command.

The `RDA_Flags` element allows callers to further refine the functionality of `ReadArgs()`. The available flags are also defined in `dos/readargs.h` and are as follows:

`RDAF_STDIN`: This flag is defined, but not in use.

`RDAF_NOALLOC`: If this flag is set, it instructs `ReadArgs()` to never allocate or extend its buffer. Only the buffer supplied through `RDA_Buffer` will be used. If this buffer overflows, parsing aborts and `IoErr()` is set to `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE`.

`RDAF_NOPROMPT`: If this flag is set, the single question mark as request for help is not honored but taken as a literal argument on the command line, that is, command line help through the supplied template parameter or `RDA_ExtHelp` is not provided.

On success, this function returns a `RDArgs` structure, either the same as passed in through `rdargs`, or one that was created by this function; as this structure administrates the resources acquired by `ReadArgs()`, it shall be released by `FreeArgs()` once all arguments have been interpreted and worked on. Note that the strings and string arrays pointed to by the `array` are part of the resources released by `FreeArgs()`.

On failure, this function returns `NULL`. All resources such as buffers allocated through `ReadArgs()` will be released. If a custom `rdargs` structure was provided by the caller as `rdargs` parameter, then this structure is *not* released; instead `FreeDosObject()` shall be called to dispose a user provided structure.

Amongst errors related to input and output operations, the following additional error codes can be returned in `IoErr()`:

`ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE` indicates that either the function failed to allocate storage for its buffers, or extending its buffer was explicitly disabled through the `RDAF_NOALLOC` flag and the supplied buffer space was not large enough.

`ERROR_KEY_NEEDS_ARG` indicates that the template required a particular argument to be present, namely through the `/A` option, though the supplied command line did not define a value for this argument.

`ERROR_LINE_TOO_LONG` indicates that the supplied command line was too long and could not be processed. This happens for example if a `M` (multi-argument) keyword is present in the template and too many arguments are supplied.

## 13.5.2 Releasing Argument Parser Resources

The `FreeArgs()` function releases all resources allocated by `ReadArgs()`.

---

```
FreeArgs (rdargs)
        D1
```

```
void FreeArgs (struct RDArgs *)
```

This function releases all resources acquired by the AmigaDOS argument parser given an `RDArgs` structure. This includes temporary buffers, and — unless a custom `RDArgs` structure was passed into `ReadArgs()` — also the `RDArgs` structure itself. If a custom allocated `RDArgs` structure was provided to `ReadArgs()`, then this structure shall be disposed manually by `FreeDosObject()`, it is not released by `FreeArgs()`.

The `rdargs` argument is a pointer to a `RDArgs` structure whose resources, including potentially itself, shall be released. It is safe to pass in `NULL`, in which case this function does nothing.

This function shall be called once all arguments of a `ReadArgs()` call have been processed. Its only argument is either the result of `ReadArgs()`, or the `rdargs` structure passed into it. This function potentially releases all elements of the array argument of `ReadArgs()`, and thus its contents is no longer usable after calling `FreeArgs()`.

### 13.5.3 Reading a Single Argument from the Command Line

The `ReadItem()` reads a single item from the command line or from a provided `CSource` structure.

```
value = ReadItem(buffer, maxchars, input)
D0                D1                D2                D3
```

```
LONG ReadItem(STRPTR, LONG, struct CSource *)
```

This function reads a single argument from the command line, i.e. the buffer of the input file handle of the calling process, or the supplied `CSource` structure. This structure is defined in `dos/rdargs.h` and specified in section 13.5.1.

An argument is delimited by spaces, tabulators, or equals-signs (“=”), unless they are enclosed in double quotes. A newline, semicolon (“;”) or EOF always terminates an argument. Section 13.1 provides more details on the shell syntax. The `ReadItem()` function handles some escaping rules, namely the first class of escape sequences listed in section 13.1.4. This includes the sequences `*`, `*E`, `*N` and `**`. Once an argument delimiter is found, `ReadItem()` terminates, but places the terminator back into its source such that the caller is able to identify it.

The `buffer` argument provides a user-supplied buffer into which the parsed off argument is copied. This buffer has a capacity of `maxchars`; if this buffer overflows, this function aborts parsing and returns `ITEM_ERROR`. It does not attempt to allocate an extension buffer, unlike `ReadArgs()`.

The `input` argument provides an alternative source for the command line to be parsed; this source consists of a buffer pointer, a character count and an offset in the form of a `CSource` structure explained in section 13.5.1.

This function returns the following result codes defined in `dos/dos.h`:

`ITEM_EQUAL`: an equals-sign (“=”) was found as terminator.

`ITEM_ERROR`: the supplied user buffer is too small or the source run out of data before matching a closing quote was found for an opening double quote.

`ITEM_NOTHING`: no argument could be retrieved because the source run into the end of the command line, i.e. either a newline, semicolon or EOF.

`ITEM_UNQUOTED`: an unquoted item was found and retrieved from the command line.

`ITEM_QUOTED`: a quoted item was found and retrieved.

This function does not set `IoErr()`.

---

### 13.5.4 Find an Argument in a Template

The `FindArg()` function finds the index of a keyword in a `ReadArgs()` compatible template.

```
index = FindArg(template, keyword)
D0          D1          D2
```

```
LONG FindArg(STRPTR, STRPTR)
```

This function scans a template as those provided to `ReadArgs()` for a specific keyword and returns the (zero-based) count of the keyword within the template. See section 13.5.1 for how templates look like.

The `template` argument a pointer to a NUL-terminated C string that contains the template; the syntax of the template is specified in section 13.5.1.

The `keyword` argument provides a keyword that is to be found in the template. It is provided as a pointer to a NUL-terminated C string. Searching is case-insensitive.

This function returns a zero-based index which argument in the template matches the supplied keyword matches, i.e. 0 for the first keyword, 1 for the second and so on. It returns `-1` if no matching argument is found in the template. `IoErr()` is not touched.

## 13.6 Resident Segments

AmigaDOS keeps a list of resident segments that are available immediately without requiring them to load from disk. This list of segments include resident commands, but also ROM-resident system segments that have been placed there during initialization of AmigaDOS through the System-startup module.

This list of resident segments should not be confused with the exec list of resident modules kept in `SysBase->ResModules`, even though its purpose is quite similar<sup>8</sup>.

Segments enter this list in multiple ways: First, commands whose `p` protection bit (see section 6.1) is set may be added to this list explicitly through the `Resident` command. This bit indicates that the command is “pure”, which means that it does not alter its code or data, and its code can be executed from several processes at once. Unfortunately, AmigaDOS makes no attempt to verify these requirements but only depends on this bit. The AmigaDOS Shell scans the list of resident commands, and if the requested command is not found there, searches the *path* instead to load the command from disk.

Second, if a command has the `p` and `h` protection bits set, it is automatically added to the list of resident segments. The `h` stands for “hold”, meaning that a command will be held resident once used.

Third, the AmigaDOS Shell adds its built-in commands during its initialization to this list. This includes elementary commands such as `CD` or `Execute` that do not need to be loaded from disk.

Fourth, some segments are added to the list during initialization of AmigaDOS through System-Startup. These include the Console-Handler, the RAM-Handler, the FFS which is named “FileHandler” there, and — finally — the Shell.

The Shell is even added three times to this list. First, as `shell`, which is the the shell that is used by default by the `Shell` icon and the `System()` function. A user shell may replace this entry and thus make it available by default to the entire system. Second, as `BootShell`, which shall remain unchanged. It always refers to the shell that booted the system, and is also the shell that is used by the `Execute()` function. Third, as `CLI`, which is only present for legacy reasons and not used by the system at all, unless requested explicitly by the `SYS_CustomShell` tag of the `System()` function, see section 13.2.1.

A resident segment is described by the `Segment` structure defined in `dos/dos.h`:

---

<sup>8</sup>This duplication of structures is again a historic accident due to the origin of AmigaDOS.

```

struct Segment {
    BPTR  seg_Next;
    LONG  seg_UC;
    BPTR  seg_Seg;
    UBYTE seg_Name[4];
};

```

This structure shall never be allocated by a user program, it is created by `AddSegment()` instead. Its elements have the following function:

The `seg_Next` element is a BPTR to the next segment in the list of resident segments; it is ZERO for the last resident segment. This BPTR shall not be modified by the user.

The `seg_UC` element is a use counter. It is incremented every time the segment is used, e.g. when the shell locates a command in the resident segment list, and decremented once the segment is not used anymore, e.g. if the resident command terminates execution. It is confusingly initially 1 (not 0) if the segment is unused. Resident commands with a `seg_UC` counter larger than 1 cannot be unloaded as they are currently in use<sup>9</sup>.

Despite these regular entries used for disk-based commands made resident, the following special values for `seg_UC` exist. They are also defined in `dos/dosextens.h`:

The value `CMD_INTERNAL` indicates a command that is available for execution, but whose code is part of the ROM. The AmigaDOS Shell adds these commands to the resident list during its initialization.

Segments indicated by `CMD_SYSTEM` are not commands that could be executed, but rather segments of system components. The RAM-Handler, the Console-Handler and the FFS aka FileHandler are indicated as system segments. These segments cannot be executed and are not found by the Shell when scanning the resident list for commands.

Segments with a `seg_UC` smaller or equal than `CMD_DISABLED` are neither found by the Shell; they are rather marked as temporarily disabled. This type is created if a built-in command or a system segment is “removed” by the `Resident` command.

The `seg_Seg` element is a BPTR to the actual segment list corresponding to the loaded or resident command or system segment. It is a segment list as those loaded through `LoadSeg()`.

The `seg_Name` is, actually, not only 4 characters long as indicated, but a variable length field. It contains the name of the command or system segment as BSTR.

### 13.6.1 Finding a Resident Segment

The `FindSegment()` locates a resident segment by name.

```

segment = FindSegment(name, start, system)
D0                      D1      D2      D3

```

```

struct Segment *FindSegment(STRPTR, struct Segment *, LONG)

```

This function locates the segment named `name` in the list of resident segments, scanning either the entire list if `start` is NULL, or at all segments behind the segment pointed to by `start`. This allows continuing a scan for another segment of the same name. It returns the resident segment found, or NULL in case no matching segment is found.

The `system` flag indicates whether the function scans for regular segments or system/internal segments. If `system` is `DOSFALSE`, only regular entries with a positive `seg_UC` counter are located. If `system` is `DOSTRUE`, only system or built-in segments whose `seg_UC` value is negative are found. In the latter case,

<sup>9</sup>The `Resident` command prints `seg_UC - 1` instead of `seg_UC`.

---

the above function does not attempt to filter out disabled segments; if required, this must be done by the caller.

This function neither increases the use counter of a found resident segment and thus, it cannot guarantee that the segment will be unloaded by another process at the time the function returns. Thus, this function should be called while a `Forbid()` is active, and the caller shall increment `seg_UC` for non-system segments it attempts to use them before calling `Permit()`.

Unlike regular segments, system segments cannot go away, they can only be marked as `CMD_DISABLED`, and thus `seg_UC` need not to be altered by the caller.

This function does not alter `IoErr()` on success, but it sets it to `ERROR_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` in case no matching segment could be found.

### 13.6.2 Adding a Resident Segment

The `AddSegment` adds a segment to the list of resident segments and makes it available to other processes.

```
success = AddSegment(name, seglist, type)
D0                      D1      D2      D3
```

```
BOOL AddSegment (STRPTR, BPTR, LONG)
```

This function adds the segment `seglist`, e.g. as returned by `LoadSeg()`, under the given name to the list of resident segments. The `seg_UC` type and use counter is initialized to the value `type`.

The `name` is copied and may be released after the function returns, but the segment becomes part of the system database of resident segments.

The value of `type` shall be selected as follows: For regular pure executables that are made resident and by that available to other processors, `type` shall be set to 1<sup>10</sup>.

For system segments that are not commands, `type` shall be set to `CMD_SYSTEM`; this value is defined in `dos/dosextends.h`. Note that such segments cannot be safely unloaded anymore and remain resident for the lifetime of the system.

While other values such as `CMD_INTERNAL` and `CMD_DISABLED` are possible, they do not serve a practical use. The first one indicates commands that are provided by the AmigaDOS Shell, and this value shall only be used by the ROM shell. The second value indicates system segments or built-in commands that are currently disabled. It is only used by the `Resident` command on an attempt to remove system or internal segments.

On success, this function returns a non-zero value and does not alter `IoErr()`. On error, it returns `DOSFALSE` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE`.

### 13.6.3 Removing a Resident Segment

The `RemSegment()` function removes a resident segment from the system database of resident segments and makes it unavailable to other processes. It also releases all resources associated to this segment.

```
success = RemSegment(segment)
D0                      D1
```

```
BOOL RemSegment (struct Segment *)
```

---

<sup>10</sup>The official autodocs and [1] are wrong in this regard, they suggest 0, but this value is incorrect and not even valid.

---

This function attempts to remove the resident segment provided as argument from the AmigaDOS database of resident commands. If an attempt is made to remove a system segment, an internal command or a regular resident command that is currently in use, `DOSFALSE` is returned and the resident segment is left in the list. Otherwise, the segment is removed, and all its resources are released, including the segment list associated to the resident segment which is purged through `UnLoadSeg()`.

The resident segment to be removed is typically acquired by `FindSegment()`. However, any other process can attempt to unload the same resident segment at the same time, causing a race condition. Therefore, a caller should first stop multitasking with `Forbid()`, then locate the segment with `FindSegment()`, and if this function succeeds, unload the found segment with `RemSegment()`. Then, finally, `Permit()` should be called to re-enable multitasking.

If segment passed in cannot be removed because it is in use or a system segment, this function returns `DOSFALSE` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_OBJECT_IN_USE`. On success, it returns `DOSTRUE`<sup>11</sup>.

## 13.7 Writing Custom Shells

AmigaDOS allows adding custom shells to the system that may optionally also replace the AmigaDOS default shell, the “boot shell”. A shell is a resident system segment, see section 13.6, similar to the Console-Handler or the RAM-Handler on the same list. When launching a shell with the `System()` function, a custom shell may be requested by providing the name of its resident segment to the `SYS_CustomShell` tag. A custom shell may even replace the AmigaDOS Shell it by making it resident under the name “shell”. On the AmigaDOS Shell, the following command will perform the necessary steps:

```
resident shell MyShell replace system
```

where `MyShell` is the file name of your shell. However, a shell is not a regular program otherwise and shall be implemented according to the following guidelines:

First of all, AmigaDOS supports a BCPL shell under the name “CLI” which will be initialized as BCPL programs using the BCPL runtime binding protocol explained in section 10.4.3. AmigaDOS also supports C and assembler based shells under the names “shell” and “BootShell”. A user shell replacing the “shell” entry in the resident segment list will thus follow C or assembler binding.

Regardless of whether the Shell is run as BCPL or C program, it receives a startup-package in the form of a `DosPacket` structure similar to handlers and file systems. The startup code from section 10.4.3 provides a minimal interface for the BCPL runtime binding, and is also safe to use for C shells. For the following example code, it is assumed that this startup code is the first segment of the shell code, and that its `main()` function is called through this minimal interface. AmigaDOS, in its current incarnation, initializes the shell startup packet as follows:

If `dp_Type` is non-zero, and `dp_Res1` and `dp_Res2` are both 0, this is a regular shell startup, and this is the only startup type that still exists. If, deriving from the above, `dp_Type` is zero, then this indicated the creation of the “Initial CLI”, and if `dp_Res1` is non-zero, this used to indicate the creation of a shell through `NewShell`. These two startup types no longer exist and are no longer in use. All other startup packet types are not used by AmigaDOS.

In addition, the current AmigaDOS Shell launches instances of itself as new processes, for example to implement pipes or the run-back operator (“&”), see sections 13.1.2 and 13.1.3, and to indicate this private startup mechanism, the AmigaDOS Shell uses an even different combination of values in these three elements. As this is a shell-internal mechanism that is not imposed by AmigaDOS, it will not to be documented here. Custom shells may use whatever mechanism they seem fit if they need to start instances of itself, provided it does not conflict with the above identification of AmigaDOS startup packet.

---

<sup>11</sup>Due to a defect in the current version of the *dos.library* it unfortunately *also* sets `IoErr()` to the same error code.

Next, the shell shall allocate all system resources it requires, and if this step fails, the startup code shall set the `dp_Res1` element of the startup packet to 0, place an error code in `dp_Res2`, and then reply the packet by sending it back to its origin.

If this first initialization succeeds, the segment array of the calling process in `pr_SegList` needs to be reorganized. The regular process startup code of AmigaDOS places the segment list of the process in index 3 of this array, though commands executed by the shell will require this entry themselves, and thus the shell shall move its own segment from entry 3 to entry 4.

Initialization continues with the *dos.library* function `CliInitRun()` which extracts parameters from the startup packet and from that initializes the `CommandLineInterface` structure representing the shell. This structure keeps the publicly accessible status of the shell, see section 13.3.7.

The `CliInitRun()` function returns a `LONG` that identifies whether the initialization of the CLI structure was successful. If bit 31 is clear, and `IoErr()` is equal to the pointer to the shell process, i.e. to `FindTask(NULL)`, initialization failed, and the packet was already replied<sup>12</sup> by `CliInitRun()`. In this case, the shell shall release all its resources and exit immediately.

If no failure was reported from `CliInitRun()`, its return value configures the shell, and the further handling on the startup packet, namely when exactly to send it back to the caller. More on this in section 13.7.1. At this point, the shell is initialized as far as AmigaDOS is concerned and can start its work.

The following code implements minimal shell startup handling:

```
void __asm main(register __a0 struct DosPacket *pkt)
{
    struct Library *DOSBase;
    struct Library *SysBase = *(struct ExecBase **) (4L);
    struct Process *proc = (struct Process *) (FindTask(NULL));

    /* C startup needs to wait for the */
    /* startup packet manually          */
    if (pkt == NULL) {
        struct Message *msg;
        WaitPort(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        msg = GetMsg(&proc->pr_MsgPort);
        pkt = (struct DosPacket *) (msg->mn_Node.ln_Name);
    }

    /* check the packet for validity */
    if (pkt->dp_Type == 0 || pkt->dp_Res2 || pkt->dp_Res1) {
        /* Some other form of startup, not from the Os */
        /* In worst case, run into Alert()              */
        ...
    } else {
        LONG fn;
        BPTR segs;
        /* Perform shell initialization, here an example */
        DOSBase = OpenLibrary("dos.library", 47);
        if (DOSBase == NULL) {
            /* Initialization failed, return a meaningful */
            /* error by replying the packet                */
        }
    }
}
```

<sup>12</sup>This communication protocol is surely needlessly bizarre, and this case a legacy of Kickstart 2.0 and not part of the Tripos shell startup.



```

    pkt->dp_Res1 = 0;
    pkt->dp_Res2 = ERROR_INVALID_RESIDENT_LIBRARY;
    PutMsg(pkt->dp_Port, pkt->dp_Link);
    /* Done with it */
    return;
}
/* fixup the segment array */
segs = BADDR(process->pr_SegList);
/* move shell's seg list to the next slot */
if (segarray[4] == NULL) {
    segarray[4] = segarray[3];
    segarray[3] = NULL;
}
/* Perform system initialization through */
/* the dos.library */
fn = CliInitRun(pkt);
/* Was this an error? */
if (fn > 0 && IoErr() == (LONG)proc) {
    /* An error, release resources and die */
    CloseLibrary(DOSBase);
    /* The Packet is already replied */
    return;
}
/* Main function continues */
...
}

```

When the shell replies the startup packet and when it terminates depends on the flags returned by `CliInitRun()`. This is described in the following section.

### 13.7.1 Initializing a new Shell

The `CliInitRun()` function initializes a process and its `CommandLineInterface` structure from a shell startup package.

```

flags = CliInitRun( packet )
D0                                A0

LONG CliInitRun( struct DosPacket * )

```

This function is part of the shell initialization. The packet is the `DosPacket` the shell received as startup information; the function initializes from it all elements of the `CommandLineInterface` structure stored in the `pr_CLI BPTR` of the calling process.

The arguments of the packet are intentionally not documented here, and AmigaDOS may change or extend the packet in the future.

This function returns a collection of flags packet in a 32-bit `LONG` value. Unfortunately, these flags are not defined in any of the official AmigaDOS headers; instead, names for these bits are suggested here:

**Table 145: CliInitRun() flags**

Acronym	Bit Number	Notes
---------	------------	-------

FN_VALID	31	indicates that remaining bits are valid
FN_ASYNC	3	asynchronous execution intended
FN_SYSTEM	2	shell terminates on EOF of cli_CurrentInput
FN_USERINPUT	1	if 0, close cli_StandardInput on exit
FN_RUNOUTPUT	0	if 1, close cli_StandardOutput on exit

If bit FN\_VALID flags is 0 and IoErr() equals pointer to the pointer of the process structure of the caller, then initialization failed. At this point, the passed in packet has already been replied, and the shell shall only release the resources it acquired so far and exit. In all other cases, packet has not yet been returned to the caller yet.

If the bit FN\_VALID of flags is 0 and IoErr() does *not* equal the pointer to the process structure of the caller, then initialization was successful. In such a case, the startup packet shall only be replied after the first command executed by the shell, leaving the dp\_Res1 and dp\_Res2 unaltered from the values left by CliInitRun(). When the shell terminates, the shell shall close the cli\_StandardOutput and the cli\_StandardInput file handles of the CommandLineInterface structure. This type of startup is typically used when the shell is instructed to execute commands in the background, e.g. by the Run command, and if System() is called with NULL as its first argument, see section 13.2.1.

The reason for delaying the startup packet after execution of the first command is to avoid unnecessary head movements of floppies as otherwise two processes could attempt to access the disk simultaneously: the shell starting a command with Run, and the command that executes in the background.

If the bits FN\_VALID and FN\_ASYNC are set, then asynchronous command execution is requested. The shell shall then reply the startup packet immediately, leaving dp\_Res1 and dp\_Res2 unaltered from the values left by CliInitRun(). If FN\_VALID is set and FN\_ASYNC is not set, then the startup packet shall only be replied when the last command of the shell returned. Then, dp\_Res1 shall be set to the return code of this command as found in cli\_ReturnCode, and dp\_Res2 shall be set to the error code the command left in cli\_Result2. The FN\_ASYNC bit reflects the value of SYS\_Asynch of the System() call.

If bits FN\_VALID and FN\_SYSTEM are set then the shell shall terminate if the cli\_CurrentInput runs into an EOF and there is no higher level script to continue executing from. This corresponds to the case where the first argument of System() is non-NULL. In such a case, the commands from this string are executed, and once done, the shell stops and returns. Shells created this way are never interactive, i.e. cli\_Interactive shall always be DOSFALSE.

If the FN\_VALID flag is set and FN\_SYSTEM is reset, then the shell continues to read commands from cli\_StandardInput once cli\_CurrentInput depletes and there is no higher level script to continue executing from. Only if the two input streams are equal and EOF condition is detected, the shell terminates. This corresponds to the case where the the shell was initiated through Execute(), or System() with a NULL command string.

If bits FN\_VALID and FN\_USERINPUT are set, then the shell *shall not* close cli\_StandardInput when terminating. If FN\_VALID is set and FN\_USERINPUT is reset, then cli\_StandardInput shall be closed on exit.

If the bits FN\_VALID and FN\_RUNOUTPUT are set, then cli\_StandardOutput shall be closed when the shell process terminates. Otherwise, if FN\_VALID is set and FN\_RUNOUTPUT is reset, then the cli\_StandardOutput shall remain open. Note that the FN\_RUNOUTPUT logic is the inverse of the FN\_USERINPUT logic.

A successful startup with FN\_VALID reset is thus approximately equivalent to the bit combination of FN\_RUNOUTPUT and FN\_ASYNC, except that the elements of the CommandLineInterface structure are initialized differently.

Historically, two additional functions existed to initialize a shell. CliInit() had to be called by the Initial CLI and not only initialized the shell to read from the S:Startup-Sequence, it also

---

initialized the *dos.library* and mounted all ROM-resident handlers. These tasks are now taken over by a kickstart module of its own, *System-Startup*, which in its final step, creates the Initial CLI through the `System()` function.

The second function to initialize a shell was `CliInitNewShell()` which was exclusively used by a shell created by the `NewShell` command. In the latest version of AmigaDOS, `NewShell` also calls through `System()` and thus only depends on `CliInitRun()`.



---

## Chapter 14

# Miscellaneous Functions

In this section, miscellaneous functions are specified that logically do not belong into any other section. These are constructor and destructor functions for AmigaDOS objects, checking for signals or retrieving error strings and generating error requesters.

### 14.1 Object Constructors and Destructors

AmigaDOS objects should not be allocated manually through `AllocMem()` or other generic memory allocation functions as they do not initialize the objects correctly nor are they aware of undocumented internal extensions to such objects. Thus, the `sizeof` operator of the C language does not necessarily reflect the number of bytes to be allocated as AmigaDOS placed undocumented elements at the end of the officially documented structures.

#### 14.1.1 Allocating a DOS Object

The `AllocDosObject()` function constructs instances of various types used by the *dos.library* and its components. The functions listed in this section all take a `type ID` that describes the type of the object to be created, and additional arguments that are used to initialize this object. They all correspond to the same entry in the *dos.library* and only differ in the calling convention.

The `AllocDosObject()` and `AllocDosObjectTags()` functions are identical and provide parameters in the form of a tag list. The second function only exists to following naming conventions and to allow tools to automatically generate prototypes for the third.

The `AllocDosObjectTags()` function receives the tag list in the form of a variably sized argument list. The compiler takes these arguments, and passes it as a tag list into the entry point of the *dos.library*.

```
ptr = AllocDosObject(type, tags)
D0          D1      D2

void *AllocDosObject(ULONG, struct TagItem *)

ptr = AllocDosObjectTagList(type, tags)
D0          D1      D2

void *AllocDosObjectTagList(ULONG, struct TagItem *)

ptr = AllocDosObjectTags(type, Tag1, ...)
```

```
void *AllocDosObjectTags(ULONG, ULONG, ...)
```

The above functions all create objects used by the *dos.library* and initializes them according to additional arguments. The `type` argument provides the type of the object to be constructed; types are defined in `dos/dos.h`:

**Table 146: AllocDosObject() type IDs**

Type	Description
DOS_FILEHANDLE	construct a <code>FileHandle</code> structure, as in 4.9.1
DOS_EXALLCONTROL	construct a <code>ExAllControl</code> structure, see 6.1.4
DOS_FIB	construct a <code>FileInfoBlock</code> structure, see 6.1
DOS_STDPKT	construct a <code>StandardPacket</code> structure, as in 11.1.2
DOS_CLI	construct a <code>CommandLineInterface</code> structure, see 13.3
DOS_RDARGS	construct a <code>RDArgs</code> structure, as defined in section 13.5.1

The `DOS_FILEHANDLE` type creates a `FileHandle` structure. This structure describes an open file and shall only be created through this function as it contains some hidden elements. This type takes one parameter, namely `ADO_FH_Mode` defined in `dos/dostags.h`, which is the mode in which the file is to be opened. This tag takes an argument from table 9 which corresponds to the second argument of the `Open()` function specified in section 4.4. It defaults to `ACTION_FINDINPUT`, i.e. a file that is opened nonexclusively for reading.

The `DOS_EXALLCONTROL` type creates an `ExAllControl` structure used to iterate over directory contents, see section 6.1.4; no additional tags are required.

The `DOS_FIB` type creates a `FileInfoBlock` structure as defined in section 6.1. This structure may also be manually constructed as it does not contain any hidden elements. However, the structure shall be aligned to long word boundaries. The macro `D_S()` in section 2.3 should be used if the memory for this structure is to be taken from the stack. This macro ensures the required alignment. No further tags are necessary.

The `DOS_STDPKT` creates a `StandardPacket` structure used for communication between clients and handlers or file systems. It is an aggregate of a `Message` and a `DosPacket` structure that are chained correctly to each other. There is no need to use exactly this structure for handler communication provided the `DosPacket` is aligned to a long-word boundary and linked to a `Message`, see section 11.1.2. This function does actually not return a pointer to the `StandardPacket` itself, but rather to its `DosPacket` element. This constructor does not take any additional tags.

The `DOS_CLI` structure creates a `CommandLineInterface` structure as defined in section 13.3. No additional tags are recognized. While it was possible to construct these structures manually in the past, this is no longer the case with the current version of AmigaDOS as this structure has been extended. A shell which is equipped with a manually constructed `CommandLineInterface` structure will not offer the full functionality of a regular AmigaDOS shell.

The `DOS_RDARGS` structure creates a `RDArgs` structure used by the `ReadArgs()` function for command line argument parsing, see section 13.5.1. This constructor is also called internally by the *dos.library*, but if a custom `RDArgs` structure is required to parse, for example, from an alternative source and not the standard input, `AllocDosObject()` shall be used to create one. No tags are defined for this object.

This function returns on success the pointer to the constructed object. Note that for `DOS_STDPKT` this is a pointer to a `DosPacket` structure and not to the `StandardPacket` structure. It does not touch `IoErr()` on success. On error, this function returns `NULL` and sets `IoErr()` to `ERROR_NO_FREE_STORE`.

### 14.1.2 Releasing a DOS Object

The `FreeDosObject()` function destroys an AmigaDOS object and releases the resources associated to it.

```
FreeDosObject(type, ptr)
               D1   D2
```

```
void FreeDosObject(ULONG, void *)
```

This function destroys an object created by `AllocDosObject()`. The `type` argument is one of the types from table 146 in section 14.1.1, and `ptr` is a pointer to the object to be destroyed. In case `type` is `DOS_STDPKT`, the `ptr` argument is a pointer to the `DosPacket` element of the `StandardPacket` aggregate.

Passing `NULL` as `ptr` performs nothing, the function exits in this case without performing any action. This function does not set `IoErr()`.

## 14.2 Reporting Errors

While AmigaDOS identifies errors by a unique ID returned by `IoErr()`, only printing a number as error report is not very helpful. The *dos.library* provides multiple functions to generate human readable error messages, either to be printed on the console, or by creating a requester with a message on a screen.

### 14.2.1 Display an Error Requester

The `ErrorReport` function creates an error requester based on an error code and a file system object such as a file handle or a lock and waits a the response of the user who may either abort or retry an activity.

```
status = ErrorReport(code, type, arg1, device)
D0                      D1   D2   D3   D4
```

```
BOOL ErrorReport(LONG, LONG, ULONG, struct MsgPort *)
```

This function creates an error requester either on the workbench screen, or on a screen that is given by the `pr_WindowPtr` of the calling process. If `pr_WindowPtr` is `-1`, then no requester is shown and the function returns immediately with a non-zero return code, indicating that cancelation of the activity is desired. This function is typically called by AmigaDOS handlers attempting to generate an error requester, or the *dos.library* itself. However, user code may also use this function to generate an AmigaDOS standard requester.

The `code` argument is an error identifier returned by `IoErr()`. Only a subset of the error identifies listed in section 9.2.9 are supported by this function; they are defined in the include files `dos/dos.h` and `dos/dosextends.h`. Table 147 lists them:

**Table 147: Errors supported by ErrorReport()**

Error	Description
ERROR_DISK_NOT_VALIDATED	Reports that a disk is corrupt and not validated
ERROR_DISK_WRITE_PROTECTED	Reports that a disk is write protected
ERROR_DISK_FULL	Reports that a volume is full
ERROR_DEVICE_NOT_MOUNTED	A particular handler or file system is not mounted
ERROR_NOT_A_DOS_DISK	A volume does not carry a valid file system
ERROR_NO_DISK	No physical medium is inserted in a drive
ABORT_DISK_ERROR	Reports that a medium has a physical read/write error
ABORT_BUSY	Requests to insert a particular medium into a drive

The `type` argument provides the type of the AmigaDOS object passed in as `arg1`; it provides an additional source of information used to generate the error requester. This information is used for example to

include a device or volume name in the requester. The following types, defined in `dos/dosextens.h` are supported by this function:

**Table 148: Error sources supported by `ErrorReport()`**

Type	Description
REPORT_STREAM	<code>arg1</code> is a BPTR to a <code>FileHandle</code> structure
REPORT_LOCK	<code>arg1</code> is a BPTR to a <code>FileLock</code> structure
REPORT_VOLUME	<code>arg1</code> is a BPTR <sup>a</sup> to a <code>DosList</code> structure
REPORT_INSERT	<code>arg1</code> is a <i>regular</i> pointer to a path separated at “:”

<sup>a</sup>Unlike what the official documentation says, this is a BPTR, not a regular pointer.

The `REPORT_INSERT` type shall be a pointer to an absolute path name containing a colon (“:”) from which a volume or device name is extracted.

The device argument is a (regular) pointer to a `MsgPort` structure that is only used if `type` is `REPORT_LOCK` and `arg1` is `ZERO`. This port is assumed to be a `MsgPort` of a file handler that is contacted to learn about the name of the currently inserted volume. This could be the `pr_FileSystemTask` of the calling process which contains the `MsgPort` of the file handler responsible for the `ZERO` lock.

This function returns a boolean indicator whether the currently ongoing operation should be aborted or retried. If the result code is `DOSFALSE`, the operation should be retried. On return, this function also sets `IoErr()` to the error identifier in `code`.

### 14.2.2 Generating an Error Message

The `Fault()` function fills a buffer with an error message from an error code and an initial string.

```
len = Fault(code, header, buffer, len)
D0          D1      D2      D3      D4
```

```
LONG Fault(LONG, STRPTR, STRPTR, LONG)
```

This function fills the `buffer` that is `len` bytes long with an optional `header`, followed by a colon (“:”) followed by a string generated from the error code given as first argument.

If `header` is non-NULL, it is first copied into the `buffer` followed by a colon and a space (“: ”). The colon and space are not copied if `header` is NULL. This is followed by a (localized) error message created from `code`. If `code` is 0, the buffer is left untouched and nothing is inserted into the `buffer`. If no localized error message is available, the numeric value of the error is inserted instead.

The `len` of `buffer` shall not be 0. It includes the NUL byte terminating the string created in `buffer`.

Unlike documented, the return value of this function is *not* the number of characters inserted into the buffer and is thus not usable. As a workaround, to find the length of the inserted string, use `strlen()` on the buffer if `code` is non-zero:

```
if (code) {
    Fault(code, header, buffer, len);
    len = strlen(buffer);
} else {
    len = 0;
}
```

Note that `buffer` remains unchanged for a 0 argument of `code`, and thus `strlen()` does not return a reliable result in this case.



---

### 14.2.3 Printing an Error Message

The `PrintFault()` function prints an error message consisting of a header and a description of an error code over the error output channel of the calling process.

```
success = PrintFault(code, header)
D0                      D1      D2
```

```
BOOL PrintFault(LONG, STRPTR)
```

This function implements elementary error reporting by printing an error message over the error output `pr_CES` of the calling process. If that stream does not exist, the error is reported over the standard output stream `pr_COS` of the caller.

If `header` is non-NULL, this string is printed first, followed by a colon and a space (“: ”). If a textual description of the error code `code` is available, it is printed behind it. Otherwise, just a generic error message with the error value is printed.

If `code` is 0, nothing is printed at all. Otherwise, this function sets `IoErr()` to `code`.

This function returns a boolean success code. It currently is, however, always non-zero indicating success, and thus not particularly helpful.

### 14.2.4 Printing a String to the Error Stream

The `PutErrStr()` function writes a string to the error output stream of the calling process.

```
error = PutErrStr(str)
D0                      D1
```

```
LONG PutErrStr(STRPTR)
```

This function writes the NUL terminated string `str` over the error output `pr_CES` of the calling process. If this stream does not exist, this function writes the string over the standard output `pr_COS` of the caller.

This function returns 0 on success, or `ENDSTREAMCH` on an error. The latter constant is defined in `dos/stdio.h` and equals to -1. The error code `IoErr()` is only adjusted if the buffer of the used file handle is flushed.



---

## Chapter 15

# The DOS Library

This chapter documents the *dos.library* base structure and structures linked from it. These structures should not be accessed directly as the library provides accessor and manipulator functions for their elements.

### 15.1 The Library Structure

The *dos.library* base structure is documented in `dos/dosextens.h` and looks as follows:

```
struct DosLibrary {
    struct Library dl_lib;
    struct RootNode *dl_Root;
    APTR    dl_GV;
    LONG    dl_A2;
    LONG    dl_A5;
    LONG    dl_A6;
    struct ErrorString *dl_Errors;
    struct timerequest *dl_TimeReq;
    struct Library    *dl_UtilityBase;
    struct Library    *dl_IntuitionBase;
};
```

The elements of this library are as follows:

The `dl_lib` element forms a regular exec library as it is defined in `exec/libraries.h`.

The `dl_Root` pointer points to the `RootNode` structure documented in section 15.2. Most useful information can be reached from there.

The `dl_GV` is the pointer to the (fake) BCPL *global vector* which contains a table of (BCPL compiled) functions the *dos.library* provides to (legacy) BCPL components. Today, nothing should depend on this vector anymore as all AmigaDOS components have been rewritten in C or assembler.

The `dl_A2`, `dl_A5` and `gl_A6` elements are the initializers for the BCPL runtime system. They are not relevant nowadays anymore. `dl_A2` is a pointer to global vector and thus identical to `dl_GV`. `dl_A5` is a function pointer to the BCPL function caller, and `dl_A6` is a pointer to the BCPL “return from subroutine” function.

The `dl_Errors` pointer provides (localized) strings for all messages the *dos.library* generates, including error messages. This element is private and shall not be accessed. Instead, localized error messages can be retrieved by the `Fault()` function of section 14.2.2 which accesses this string.

---

The `dl_TimeReq` element is a private pointer to a `timerequest` structure the *dos.library* uses for functions such as `Delay()` in section 3.1.3. It shall not be used by clients.

The `dl_UtilityBase` element provides a pointer to the *utility.library* the *dos.library* uses for parsing tag lists.

The `dl_IntuitionBase` is the pointer to the *intuition.library* that is used to generate requesters.

## 15.2 The Root Node

The `RootNode` structure is accessible from the `dl_Root` pointer in the `DosLibrary` structure and provides global information of the library. It is also defined in `dos/dosextens.h`:

```
struct RootNode {
    BPTR    rn_TaskArray;
    BPTR    rn_ConsoleSegment;
    struct  DateStamp rn_Time;
    LONG    rn_RestartSeg;
    BPTR    rn_Info;
    BPTR    rn_FileHandlerSegment;
    struct  MinList rn_CliList;
    struct  MsgPort *rn_BootProc;
    BPTR    rn_ShellSegment;
    LONG    rn_Flags;
};
```

The `rn_TaskArray` element is a `BPTR` the (legacy) Tripos process table, and is part of the complete table reachable through `rn_CliList`. Instead of going through these elements, the `FindCliProc()` function specified in section 13.2.6 shall be used. This first array consists of a long-word that indicates the size of the first part of the table, all remaining entries are pointers to `Process` structures (see section 9) or `NULL`. This array is indexed by the CLI number, though only processes that are associated to a shell are listed here.

The `rn_ConsoleSegment` is the pointer to the BCPL entry point of the shell. Even though this pointer is initialized, it is no longer used. Instead, the shell is located on the resident segments with `FindSegment()` of section 13.6.1. The corresponding resident segment has the name “CLI”.

The `rn_Time` contains the current time of the system, it is updated every time `DateStamp()` (see section 3.1.1) is called, and this is also the recommended way of obtaining the time instead of copying it from here.

The `rn_RestartSeg` is obsolete and no longer in used. This used to be a BCPL program that performed validation of inserted disks and restarted the file system. Today, this function is integrated into the file system itself.

The `rn_Info` element is a `BPTR` to the `DosInfo` structure described in section 15.3. It contains further global information.

The `rn_FileHandlerSegment` element is the `BPTR` to the segment of the ROM default AmigaDOS file system. This element is no longer in use today. This element is filled from the resident segment “File-Handler”, and is also updated if a newer version of the FFS is found in the RDB of the booting disk. Today, file systems are found through the “FileSystem.resource” and not through this `BPTR`.

The `rn_CliList` contains the full process table containing all shell processes accessible through `FindCliProc()`. This element is a `MinList` structure as defined in `exec/lists.h`. Each node on this list keeps a consecutive number of shells and looks as follows:

```

struct CliProcList {
    struct MinNode cpl_Node;
    LONG cpl_First;
    struct MsgPort **cpl_Array;
};

```

This structure *shall not* be allocated by the user; instead, it is potentially created by the *dos.library* if the current process table is too small when creating a new shell through `System()` or `Execute()`.

The `cpl_Node` is a `MinNode` structure that queues all `CliProcList` nodes in the `rn_CliList`.

The `cpl_First` element is the CLI number of the first shell in this node, and thus the process number kept in `cpl_Array[1]`.

The `cpl_Array` element contains pointers to the `Process` structures of the shell, except that the `cpl_Array[0]` entry is the number of shell processes administered in this node. The actual process pointers start from the second entry onwards.

The `cpl_Array` of the first `CliProcList` structure is also accessible through `rn_TaskArray`, and the nodes kept here are part of an extension that overcomes the limitation of at most 10 shells in AmigaDOS 1.3 and before.

The `rn_BootProc` element is a pointer to the `MsgPort` of the file system that booted the system. This is not necessary the file system whose segment is recorded in `rn_FileHandlerSegment`. It is different if the booting file system is not the ROM-based FFS neither an updated version of it from the RDB. This pointer is used to initialize the `pr_FileSystemTask` of all processes AmigaDOS creates, and thus the file system responsible for the `ZERO` lock.

The `rn_ShellSegment` is a pointer to the `C` entry point of the shell. This pointer is also not used anymore, but still initialized. It corresponds to the resident segments “shell” and “BootShell”, where the former may be replaced by a custom user-provided shell and the latter is always the shell that booted the system. Today, the shell segment is located via `FindSegment()` instead.

The `rn_Flags` element contains flags that configure AmigaDOS. There is currently only one publicly accessible flag defined here, namely `RNF_WILDSTAR`. If this flag is set, the pattern matcher discussed in section 8 supports “\*” as a synonym for “#?”, i.e. the pattern that matches a sequence of arbitrary characters. While this seemingly brings AmigaDOS closer to other contemporary operating systems, it is a rather bad choice as the asterisk is also the file name of the current console and the escape character of the AmigaDOS Shell. It is therefore recommended *not* to set this flag.

## 15.3 The DosInfo Structure

The `DosInfo` structure is pointed to by the `rn_Info` element of the `RootNode`. It contains the *device list* structure discussed in section 7 and the resident segments from section 13.6.

```

struct DosInfo {
    BPTR    di_McName;
    BPTR    di_DevInfo;
    BPTR    di_Devices;
    BPTR    di_Handlers;
    APTR    di_NetHand;
    struct  SignalSemaphore di_DevLock;
    struct  SignalSemaphore di_EntryLock;
    struct  SignalSemaphore di_DeleteLock;
};

```

---

Unlike what the official includes suggest, `di_McName` is *not* the list of resident segments. It is instead unused.

The `di_DevInfo` element is a BPTR to the first entry of the *device list* introduced in section 7. This is a BPTR to a `DosList` structure which form a singly linked list whose head is here. However, client programs should not access this BPTR directly, but rather go through the functions provided in section 7.3.

The `di_Devices` and `di_Handlers` elements are Tripos legacies and not in use.

The `di_NetHand` element contains the resident segments, despite its name. This element is neither an APTR as the official includes suggest, but is rather a BPTR. It points to a `Segment` structure as introduced in section 13.6, and all resident segments are queued here in a singly linked list. This list of resident segments should not be accessed through this element, but through the functions in section 13.6.

The `di_DevLock`, `di_EntryLock` and `di_DeleteLock` semaphores are private to the *dos.library*. They are used by the `LockDosList()` function of section 7.3.1.

---

# Bibliography

- [1] Commodore-Amiga Inc: *AmigaDOS Manual, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition* Random House Information Group (1991)
- [2] Motorola MC68030UM/AD Rev. 2: *MC68030 Enhanced 32-Bit Microprocessor User's Manual, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed.* Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J. 07632 (1990)
- [3] Motorola MC68040UM/AD Rev. 1: *MC68040 Microprocessor User's Manual, revised ed.* Motorola (1992,1993)
- [4] Motorola MC68060UM/AD Rev. 1: *MC68060 Microprocessor User's Manual.* Motorola (1994)
- [5] Motorola MC68000PM/AD Rev. 1: *Programmer's Reference Manual.* Motorola (1992)
- [6] Yu-Cheng Liu: *The M68000 Microprocessor Family.* Prentice-Hall Intl., Inc. (1991)
- [7] Dan Baker (Ed.): *Amiga ROM Kernal Reference Manual: Libraries. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed.* Addison-Wesley Publishing Company (1992)
- [8] Dan Baker (Ed.): *Amiga ROM Kernal Reference Manual: Devices. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed.* Addison-Wesley Publishing Company (1992)
- [9] Dan Baker (Ed.): *Amiga ROM Kernal Reference Manual: Includes and Autodocs. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed.* Addison-Wesley Publishing Company (1991)
- [10] Ralph Babel: *The Amiga Guru Book.* Ralph Babel, Taunusstein (1993)

---

# Index

\* (file name), *16*

NameFromLock(), *254*

AbortPkt(), *158*

ACCESS\_READ, *40*

AChain, *95*

ACION\_DISK\_INFO, *225*

ACTION\_ADD\_NOTIFY, *217*

ACTION\_CHANGE\_MODE, *202*

ACTION\_CHANGE\_SIGNAL, *232*

ACTION\_COPY\_DIR, *199*

ACTION\_COPY\_DIR\_FH, *200*

ACTION\_CREATE\_DIR, *201*

ACTION\_CURRENT\_VOLUME, *219*

ACTION\_DELETE\_OBJECT, *214, 218*

ACTION\_DIE, *236*

ACTION\_DISK\_INFO, *221, 229, 234*

ACTION\_DROP, *231*

ACTION\_END, *194*

ACTION\_EXAMINE, *204*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_ALL, *205, 206, 207*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_ALL\_END, *206, 206*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_FH, *207*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_NEXT, *204, 204, 205, 206*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_OBJECT, *203, 204, 205, 207*

ACTION\_EXAMINE\_OJBECT, *204*

ACTION\_FH\_FROM\_LOCK, *194*

ACTION\_FINDINPUT, *192, 193*

ACTION\_FINDOUTPUT, *193, 218*

ACTION\_FINDUPDATE, *193*

ACTION\_FLUSH, *235*

ACTION\_FORCE, *231, 232*

ACTION\_FORMAT, *172, 222, 223*

ACTION\_FREE\_LOCK, *202*

ACTION\_FREE\_RECORD, *197*

ACTION\_INFO, *220, 221, 234*

ACTION\_INHIBIT, *173, 234*

ACTION\_IS\_FILESYSTEM, *235*

ACTION\_KEY, *194*

ACTION\_LOCATE\_OBJECT, *198*

ACTION\_LOCK\_RECORD, *197*

ACTION\_MAKE\_LINK, *208*

ACTION\_MORE\_CACHE, *172, 233*

ACTION\_NIL, *160, 236*

ACTION\_PARENT, *200*

ACTION\_PARENT\_FH, *200*

ACTION\_QUEUE, *230*

ACTION\_READ, *230*

ACTION\_READ\_LINK, *209, 209*

ACTION\_REMOVE\_NOTIFY, *218*

ACTION\_RENAME, *218*

ACTION\_RENAME\_DISK, *221*

ACTION\_RENAME\_OBJECT, *214*

ACTION\_SAME\_LOCK, *201*

ACTION\_SCREEN\_MODE, *224*

ACTION\_SEEK, *196*

ACTION\_SERIALIZE\_DISK, *222*

ACTION\_SET\_COMMENT, *216, 218*

ACTION\_SET\_DATE, *216, 218*

ACTION\_SET\_FILE\_SIZE, *196, 218*

ACTION\_SET\_OWNER, *217, 218*

ACTION\_SET\_PROTECT, *215, 218*

ACTION\_SHOWWINDOW, *232*

ACTION\_STACK, *229*

ACTION\_UNDISK\_INFO, *229*

ACTION\_WAIT\_CHAR, *224, 238*

ACTION\_WRITE, *195, 218*

ACTION\_WRITE\_PROTECT, *223*

AddBuffers(), *73, 89, 234*

AddDosEntry(), *84*

AddPart(), *58*

AddSegment(), *267, 268*

AllocDosObject, *263*

AllocDosObject(), *6, 30, 53, 157, 258, 264, 275, 275, 276, 277*

AllocDosObjectTags(), *275*

AllocMem(), *6*

AllocVec(), *6*

AnchorPath, *95*

Assign, *17, 18*

AssignAdd(), *87, 88*

AssignLate(), *88*



---

AssignList, 70  
 AssignPath(), 87  
 AttemptLockDosList(), 80, 84, 85  
 Automatic Link Vector (ALV), 148, 148  
  
 BADDR(), 6  
 BCPL stack frame, 103  
 BPTR, 6, 6, 7  
 BSTR, 7  
  
 ChangeMode(), 202  
 CheckSignal(), 250  
 Cli(), 256  
 CliInit(), 272  
 CliInitNewShell(), 273  
 CliInitRun(), 270, 271, 271, 272, 273  
 Close(), 21, 132, 135, 194  
 CommandLineInterface, 103, 253, 256  
 CompareDates(), 10  
 Console, 15  
 console, 8, 16  
 CONSOLE (device), 17  
 CreateDir(), 201  
 CreateNewProc(), 103, 104, 104, 107, 126, 248  
 CreateProc(), 103, 104, 107, 107  
 CurrentDir(), 41, 63, 67, 110, 110, 254  
  
 DateStamp, 9, 10, 51, 57  
 DateStamp(), 9, 282  
 DateTime, 10  
 DateToStr(), 11  
 Default file system, 8, 19  
 Delay(), 10, 282  
 DeleteFile(), 55, 215  
 DeleteVar(), 259, 261  
 Device List, 16  
 Device list, 18, 47, 220  
 Device name, 16  
 DeviceProc(), 78, 111, 236  
 DevProc, 76, 77  
 Directory, 19  
 DoPkt(), 103, 156, 158, 223, 229–233, 235, 236  
 DosEnvec, 71  
 DoShellMethod(), 251, 251, 252, 258  
 DoShellMethodTagList(), 251  
 DosInfo, 283  
 DosLibrary, 5  
 DosList, 46, 67, 80, 81, 192  
 DupLock(), 40, 77, 105, 199  
 DupLockFromFH(), 43, 200  
 DupLockFromFile(), 43  
  
 EndNotify(), 63, 65, 219  
 EOF, 15, 16, 24  
 ERROR\_NO\_FREE\_STORE, 87, 88  
 ERROR\_OBJECT\_EXISTS, 87, 88  
 ERROR\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND, 192  
 ErrorOutput(), 104, 109  
 ErrorReport(), 103, 219, 277  
 ExAll(), 49, 53, 55, 113, 205, 206  
 ExAllControl, 53  
 ExAllData, 53  
 ExAllEnd(), 54, 55, 206  
 Examine(), 49, 51, 52, 56, 203  
 ExamineFH(), 52, 207  
 EXCLUSIVE\_LOCK, 40, 41, 47  
 Execute(), 249, 249, 250, 266, 283  
 Exit(), 103, 104, 107  
 ExNext(), 52, 53, 55, 113  
  
 Fault(), 281  
 FGetC(), 29  
 FGets(), 29, 252  
 File, 7, 15  
 File System, 16, 21  
 FileHandle, 30, 78, 192–194  
 FileInfoBlock, 49, 51, 52, 56, 94, 96  
 FileLock, 46, 78, 192  
 FilePart(), 59, 59  
 FileSysStartupMsg, 71, 160  
 FindArg(), 266  
 FindCliProc(), 252, 282  
 FindDosEntry(), 68, 79, 80, 81  
 FindSegment(), 250, 267, 269, 282, 283  
 FindVar(), 260  
 Flush(), 27, 27  
 Format(), 222  
 FPrintf(), 33  
 FPutC(), 28  
 FPuts(), 28  
 FRead(), 25, 26, 33  
 FreeArgs(), 264, 264, 265  
 FreeDeviceProc(), 77  
 FreeDosEntry(), 86, 86  
 FreeDosNode(), 85  
 FreeDosObject(), 264, 265, 276  
 FSkip(), 32  
 FWrite(), 26, 26  
 FWritef(), 34  
  
 GetArgStr(), 115, 115, 250  
 GetConsoleTask(), 77, 78, 114  
 GetCurrentDir(), 110  
 GetCurrentDirName(), 253

---

GetDeviceProc(), 63, 67, 76, 77–79, 81, 84, 85, 89–91, 143, 236  
 GetFileSysTask(), 78, 114  
 GetProgramDir(), 115  
 GetProgramName(), 254  
 GetPrompt(), 255  
 GetVar(), 258, 259, 261  
 Global Vector, 34, 35, 102, 108, 133, 144  
  
 Handler, 15  
 handler, 22  
 Handlers, 21  
 HUNK\_BREAK, 119, 133  
 HUNK\_BSS, 121  
 HUNK\_CODE, 121  
 HUNK\_DATA, 121  
 HUNK\_DEBUG, 125  
 HUNK\_DRELOC16, 151  
 HUNK\_DRELOC32, 150  
 HUNK\_DRELOC8, 151  
 HUNK\_END, 126  
 HUNK\_EXT, 124, 125, 149, 153  
 HUNK\_HEADER, 119, 120, 129, 132, 147  
 HUNK\_INDEX, 153  
 HUNK\_NAME, 123, 148  
 HUNK\_OVERLAY, 120, 129, 130  
 HUNK\_RELOC16, 147  
 HUNK\_RELOC32, 122, 148, 149  
 HUNK\_RELOC32SHORT, 122  
 HUNK\_RELOC8, 148  
 HUNK\_RELRELOC32, 123, 147, 148  
 HUNK\_SYMBOL, 124, 149, 150  
 HUNK\_UNIT, 147  
 HUNKB\_ADVISORY, 119  
  
 Info(), 44, 220  
 InfoData, 44  
 Inhibit(), 91, 234  
 Input(), 102, 108  
 InternalLoadSeg(), 127, 128, 132, 133, 135  
 InternalUnLoadSeg(), 128, 128, 131, 135  
 IoErr(), 26, 28, 34, 36–38, 40–43, 46, 52, 55, 56, 58, 63, 65, 77, 78, 87–91, 99–102, 110, 114, 126, 128, 133, 158, 161, 248, 250–256, 258–261, 264–266, 268, 276, 277, 279  
 Ioerr(), 255  
 IsFileSystem(), 22, 235  
 IsInteractive(), 22, 30  
  
 Level (overlay), 130  
 LoadedSegment, 117  
  
 LoadSeg(), 113, 117, 118, 126, 127, 133, 134, 142, 144, 159, 244, 250, 258, 267, 268  
 LoadSegFuncs, 127  
 Lock, 8, 39, 198  
 Lock (Exclusive), 39  
 Lock (Shared), 39  
 Lock(), 39, 47, 52, 199  
 LockDosList(), 79, 80, 81, 84, 161, 284  
 LockRecord, 36  
 LockRecord(), 37, 197  
 LockRecords(), 37  
 LockRegion(), 38  
 LockRegions(), 38  
  
 MakeDosEntry(), 84–86, 86, 87  
 MakeDosNode(), 84, 86  
 MakeLink(), 62, 208  
 MatchEnd(), 98  
 MatchFirst(), 94, 97, 98  
 MatchNext(), 97, 97, 98  
 MatchPattern(), 99  
 MatchPatternNoCase(), 99  
 MaxCli(), 253  
 MKBADDR(), 6  
 MODE\_NEWFILE, 21, 43  
 MODE\_OLDFILE, 20, 43, 192  
 MODE\_READWRITE, 21, 43  
 Mount, 17  
  
 NameFromFH(), 58  
 NameFromLock(), 58  
 NewLoadSeg(), 113, 126  
 NextDosEntry, 80  
 NextDosEntry(), 80, 80  
 NIL, 16  
 NotifyMessage, 65  
 NotifyRequest, 63  
 NULL, 7  
  
 Open(), 20, 30, 126, 128, 129, 135, 160, 192, 193, 247, 276  
 OpenDevice(), 71  
 OpenFromLock(), 43, 194  
 Ordinate (overlay), 130  
 OutPut(), 28  
 Output(), 103, 109  
 OVTAB, 132  
  
 ParentDir(), 40, 43, 200  
 ParentOffFH(), 43, 201  
 ParsePattern(), 94, 98, 99  
 ParsePatternNoCase(), 53, 94, 99, 205

---

Path, 15  
 path, 7  
 PathPart(), 59  
 PrintFault(), 279  
 Process, 8, 15–19, 101  
 PROGDIR, 18  
 PutErrStr(), 279  
 PutStr(), 28  
  
 RawDoFmt(), 34  
 Read(), 22, 30, 90, 195  
 ReadArgs, 265  
 ReadArgs(), 31, 104, 107, 111, 115, 116, 242, 243, 245, 250, 252, 261, 262–266, 276  
 ReadItem(), 111, 242, 243, 265, 265  
 ReadLink(), 61, 62, 112, 113, 209  
 RecordLock, 37  
 Relabel(), 221  
 RemAssignList(), 89  
 RemDosEntry(), 85  
 RemSegment(), 268  
 Rename(), 56, 61, 214  
 ReplyPkt(), 158  
 Root Directory, 19  
 RootNode, 282  
 Run, 31  
 RunCommand(), 107, 126, 244, 250  
 Runtime Binder, 144  
  
 SameDevice(), 42  
 SameLock(), 42, 89  
 ScanStackToken(), 144  
 Seek, 32  
 Seek(), 23, 89, 112, 133, 134, 196  
 SelectError(), 104, 109, 109  
 SelectInput(), 102, 108, 108  
 SelectOutput(), 103, 109, 109  
 SendPkt(), 157  
 SetArgStr(), 115  
 SetComment(), 56, 216  
 SetConsoleTask(), 103, 114  
 SetCurrentDirName(), 253, 254  
 SetFileDate(), 57, 216  
 SetFileSize(), 24, 112, 196  
 SetFileSysTask(), 103, 110, 114  
 SetIoErr(), 26, 27, 29, 114  
 SetMode(), 35, 165, 168  
 SetOwner(), 57, 217  
 SetProgramDir(), 115  
 SetProgramName(), 250, 255  
 SetPrompt(), 255  
 SetProtection(), 56, 215  
  
 SetVar(), 259, 260  
 SetVBuf(), 25, 26, 28  
 SHARED\_LOCK, 40, 41, 42, 47  
 Shell, 144  
 Small Data Model, 149  
 Small data model, 148  
 SplitName(), 59  
 StandardPacket, 157  
 StartNotify(), 63, 217  
 Startup-Sequence, 18  
 String, 7  
 StrToDate(), 12  
 System(), 31, 104, 233, 245, 246, 246, 248–250, 257, 258, 266, 269, 272, 273, 283  
 SystemTagList(), 246  
 SystemTags(), 246  
  
 Task, 8  
  
 UnLoadSeg(), 128, 131, 132, 135, 269  
 UnloadSeg(), 126, 127  
 UnLock(), 110, 202  
 UnLockDosList(), 80  
 UnLockRecord(), 37, 198  
  
 VFPrintf(), 33  
 VFprintf(), 34  
 VFwrite(), 34  
 Volume, 16  
 Volume name, 17  
 VolumeRequestHook(), 91  
  
 WaitForChair(), 224  
 WaitForChar(), 23, 169  
 WaitPkt(), 158  
 Write, 23  
 Write(), 90, 195  
 WriteChars(), 26  
  
 ZERO, 7